



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



5,00

A GRAMMAR
OF THE
ARABIC LANGUAGE

A GRAMMAR
OF THE
ARABIC LANGUAGE

BY

The Rev. R. STERLING M. A., M. B., B. S.,
Missionary of the Church Missionary Society,
Gaza, Palestine.

Howard McSherry

LONDON
KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & Co. LIMITED
Dryden House, Gerrard St. W.
1904

Univ. Library, UC Santa Cruz 1989

Printed by E. J. BRILL. — LEIDEN (Holland).

PJ
6/11
SC

CONTENTS

PART I

ORTHOGRAPHY

	Page
The Alphabet	1
The Vowels	6
Other Orthographical Signs.	7
The Pause.	10
The Accent	11
Anomalies in Writing	11

ETYMOLOGY

Parts of Speech	13
Servile Letters	13
Measures of Words	14
The Verb.	16
The Annexed Pronouns	19
Simple Form of the Triliteral.	20
The Six Measures of the Triliteral	21
Observations on the Derived Forms.	22
Rules for the Formation of the Verb	23
The Quadriliteral Verb	26
Table of Derived Forms.	27
Changes of the Weak Letters.	28
Assimilation	30
Forms of the Verb in respect to its Root Letter	32
Changes peculiar to each Form	33
The Corroborative نُونٌ	38
The نُونٌ of Precaution	40
Tables of Triliteral Verbs	41
Meanings of the Derived Forms.	47
The Derivative Nouns	61
The Primitive Noun	85
The Gender of Nouns	85
Feminine Nouns	86
Number.	91

	Page
The Dual	91
The Plural	92
The Regular Masculine Plural	92
The Regular Feminine Plural	94
The Irregular or broken Plural	96
The Noun of Relation	98
The Diminutive	102
The Numerals	107
The Pronouns	112
The Article	119
Collective Nouns	122
Classification of Nouns	123

PART II

SYNTAX

Declension	125
Indeclension	125
Regents	126
Cases	127
Division of the Signs of Declension	128
Implied Signs of Declension	131
The Nunation	132
States of the Noun in Declension and Indeclension	133
Imperfectly Declined Nouns	134
Indeclinable Nouns	137
Definite Nouns	138
The Sentence	140
The Nominative Case	140
The Verbal Sentence	141
The Subject of a Passive Verb	144
The Nominal Sentence	146
Words which affect the Subject and Predicate	158
The Accusative Case	180
The Genitive Case	197

THE PREPOSITION

NOUNS IN CONSTRUCTION

The Appositives	214
Moods of the Verbs	226
The Subjunctive Mood. Accusative Particles	226
The Conditional and Imperative Moods. Apocopative Particles	229
The Conditional Particles <i>لَمَّا</i> , <i>لَوْمَآ</i> , <i>لَوْلَا</i> , <i>لَوَّ</i> , <i>أَمَّا</i>	233
Tenses of the Verb	235

CONTENTS

XI

	Page
The Negative Particles	238
The Particles <i>قد</i> , <i>سوف</i> , <i>س</i>	238
The Letter <i>نون</i>	239
Verbs of Wonder	240
Verbs of Praise and Blame.	241
Derived Nouns which govern as Verbs	243
Appendix	245
Tables of Derived Forms of the Verb	247
Triliteral Verbs arranged according to their medial radical	247
Derived Verbs	258
Nouns of Action Triliteral.	281
Adjectives.	298
Nouns of Excess	306
Nouns of Instrument	309
Irregular Plurals	314
(a). Paucity	315
(b). Multitude	320
(c). of Plurals	337



PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

THE ALPHABET.

The alphabet **أَلْحُرُوفُ الْهَجَائِيَّةُ** contains twenty-eight letters which are all consonants.

They are written and read from right to left.

Their forms are modified in accordance with their position in a word, whether at the beginning, middle, or end, and whether single or joined to others.

Their names, forms, numerical value and approximate pronunciation are given in the following table.

Numerical Value.	Numerical Order.	Final.	Medial.	Initial.	Detached.	Name.
١	١	ا	..	ا	ا	ألف Aleph
٢	٢	ب	ب	ب	ب	باء Ba
٣	٣	ت	ت	ت	ت	تاء Ta
٤	٤	ث	ث	ث	ث	ثاء Tha
٥	٥	ج	ج	ج	ج	جيم Jim
٦	٦	ح	ح	ح	ح	حاء Ha
٧	٧	خ	خ	خ	خ	خاء Kha

Numerical Value.	Numerical Order.	Final.	Medial.	Initial.	Detached.	Name.
۱	ا	ا	ا	ا	ا	دَال Dal
۲	ب	ب	ب	ب	ب	ذَال Dhāl
۳	ج	ر	ج	ر	ر	رَاءَ Ra
۴	د	ز	د	ز	ز	زَايَ Zain
۵	هـ	س	هـ	س	س	سَيْنَ Sin
۶	و	ش	و	ش	ش	شَيْنَ Shrn
۷	ز	ص	ز	ص	ص	صَادَ Ṣād
۸	ح	ض	ح	ض	ض	ذِصَادَ Dhād
۹	ط	ط	ط	ط	ط	طَاءَ Sa
۱۰	ث	ظ	ث	ظ	ظ	ظَاءَ Dha
۱۱	ج	ع	ج	ع	ع	عَيْنَ 'Ain
۱۲	د	غ	د	غ	غ	غَيْنَ Gh(r)ain
۱۳	هـ	ف	هـ	ف	ف	فَاءَ Fa
۱۴	و	ق	و	ق	ق	قَافَ Kāf
۱۵	ز	ك	ز	ك	ك	كَافَ Kaf
۱۶	ح	ل	ح	ل	ل	لَامَ Lam
۱۷	ط	م	ط	م	م	مِيمَ Mim
۱۸	ث	ن	ث	ن	ن	نُونَ Nūn
۱۹	ج	هـ	ج	هـ	هـ	هَاءَ Ha
۲۰	د	و	د	و	و	وَاوَ Wāw
۲۱	هـ	ي	هـ	ي	ي	يَاءَ Ya

ا preceded by ل has the form لا and is reckoned a letter of the alphabet by the native grammarians being called Lām-Aleph. It serves to distinguish the long vowel ا (ā) from آ; and follows the letter و.

These letters except Aleph, all end in a bold stroke when detached or terminating a word; when joined to the following letter this stroke is replaced by a small upward curve.

The letters ز, ذ, د, ر, ز are not joined to the left.

The Numerical Order of the letters is represented by the mnemonic words **أَبْجَدُ هَوَزٌ حُطَي كَلِمُنْ سَقْفُض قُرْشَتٌ** **تُخَذُ ضَطْعٌ**. Their employment as numerals is confined to mathematical works, and the record of historical events.

For ordinary use the decimal system of numeration is employed **الرَّقْمُ الْهِنْدِيّ** in the same way as in all Indo-Aryan languages, viz.

• ١ ٢ ٣ ٤ ٥ ٦ ٧ ٨ ٩ ١٠ ١١ ١٢ ١٩٠٢.

0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 1902.

PRONUNCIATION. **الْفَظُّ**

ا is (I) a weak aspirate depending for its sound on the accompanying vowel, as for instance *almanack*, *illusion*, *ulterior*, (II) a sound resembling the glottal catch, (III) a sign lengthening of the vowel.

ب is b.

- ث is a soft dental, softer than our *t*.
- ث as *th* in *theory*, *thin*. (Classical pronunciation).
- ج as *s* in *measure*. (In Egypt *g* in good).
- ح is a strong and smooth pectoral sound produced by the forcible expulsion of the breath through an almost closed glottis as in a deep sigh.
- خ is a vibratory guttural sound produced on expiration by the oscillation of the appendages of the throat as in the Scotch word *loch*, and the German *ch* as in *ich*.
- د is a soft dental.
- ذ is like *th* in *that*, *than*, *these*. (Classical pronunciation).
- ر is as *r* (English) distinctly articulated in all positions.
- ز is as *z* distinctly articulated.
- س is as *s* but with more of a hissing sound as in *kiss*.
- ش is as *sh* in *sherbet*.
- ص is a 'lispings' *s* pronounced somewhat as in *sod*.
- ض is extremely difficult to pronounce correctly, the tongue is rolled against the cheek; it is an aspirated د strongly pronounced.
- ط has a broader and more open sound than *t*.
- ظ has the same affinity to ط as ث has to ذ having a broad and open sound something like *th* in *this*.
- ع is a strong guttural produced by quick and forcible closure of the wind-pipe with the emission of the breath.

غ is a strong guttural produced as in the effort of gargling and sounds similar to "ghr" in English.

ف as *f*.

ق is a strong guttural *k* produced as in the cawing of a crow.

ك ه ن م ل و as our *k. l. m. n. h. w.*

ي as *y*.

The pronunciation of these letters as a whole, can only be adequately acquired from the lips of Arabic speaking people.

Special attention however should be given to the letters الْأَخْرُفُ الْمَفْتَحَةُ خ ر ص ط ظ غ ق which have a broad sound when vowelled by َ, also the name of God اللَّهُ when preceded by َ or ِ.

The other letters are called الْأَحْرُفُ الْمُرْتَبَّةُ.

It may be observed that the only letter having a nasal sound is the ن when preceding مَن أَحَبَّ أَنْ يَ يَاؤَدَّ فَلْيَأْتِ.

This sound is called غَنَّة (having the nasal sound).

The letters are further regarded as:

I. Strong صَوِيحَّة (Sound).

II. Weak (مُعْتَلَّة).

The latter are ا و ي and resemble vowels in pronunciation and use, the rest are all strong.

The Aleph (Hemzeh) resembles the weak letters in admitting of change, الْأَعْلَالُ.

The Weak Letters when unvowelled are called **أَحْرُفٌ لَيِّنٌ** (soft) but should they be preceded in this state by a homogeneous vowel they are called **أَحْرُفٌ مَدَّةٌ** *letters of prolongation*.

The letters are sub-divided according to their place of utterance (**مَخْرَجٌ**) into:

- I. Gutturals **أ ح خ ع غ ه ق ك ي**.
- II. Linguals **ر ز س ش ص ض**.
- III. Dentals **ث ت ج د ذ ط ظ ل ن**.
- IV. Labials **ب ف م و**.

The Linguals and Dentals except **ج** are also called Solar letters (**الْأَحْرُفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ**) because one of their number begins the word **الشَّمْسُ** The Sun.

When the article (**الْ**) precedes any of the Solar letters its **ل** is elided in pronunciation, and the symbol **ـَـ** is placed over the initial letter of the word to indicate that it is doubled.

The remaining letters are called Lunar letters for a similar reason **الْقَمَرُ** The Moon. (**الْأَحْرُفُ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ**).

THE VOWELS. **الْأَحْرُفُ الْوَعْدِيَّةُ**

The vowels are three in number and are only diacritical signs and written above or below the consonants to which they belong, **الضَّمَّةُ** ُ. **الْفَتْحَةُ** َ. **الْكَسْرَةُ** ِ.

They are also used as terminations of inflection **الْإِعْرَابُ** in nouns and the moods of verbs.

With an Indefinite Noun the case endings are doubled
 ة ِ َ and form the Nunation التَّنْوِينُ which has
 the force of the Indefinite Article.

- ِ ة represents the Nominative Case الرَّفْعُ.
 ِ ِ ,, ,, Accusative Case النَّصْبُ.
 ِ ِ ,, ,, Genitive Case الْخَفْضُ.

The Nunation in the Accusative Case requires an Aleph
 except when the noun ends in هَ or حَيَاةٌ . سَيَاءٌ .

OTHER ORTHOGRAPHICAL SIGNS. الضَّوَابِطُ

- (1) ِ سُكُونٌ .
- (2) ِ مَدَّةٌ .
- (3) ِ شِدَّةٌ .
- (4) ِ هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ .
- (5) ِ هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ .

(1) ِ السُّكُونُ .

The symbol ِ السُّكُونُ is placed over an unvowelled
 letter as مِنْ or قَدْ, the ن or د is called ساكِنَةٌ .

The م or هَ is vowelled مُتَحَرِّكَةٌ . It is not usual to
 place ِ over a letter of prolongation.

(2) ِ الْمَدَّةُ .

Hemzeh ِ followed by Aleph ِ is written ِ آمِنَ = آمِنَ .
 The sign is called الْمَدَّةُ .

It is also used in ِ الْأَسْمَاءِ الْمَبْدُودَةِ to indicate that an
 Aleph of prolongation is followed by a Hemzeh as صَحْرَاءُ .

(3) = الشَّدَّةُ .

The symbol = signifies that the letter over which it is placed is doubled in pronunciation.

The first letter is silent, and the second has the vowel upon the =.

(4) الَّهْمَزَةُ (Compression).

It is of two kinds هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ and هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ .

(5) هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ (Conjunction).

The sign = is placed over the initial أ when not directly beginning a sentence, to indicate that the Aleph is elided, and the preceding vowel joined to the following consonant.

This Elision occurs in:

- I. The Article, as أَخُو الْمَلِكِ "The brother of the king".
- II. In the Imperative of the Trilateral Verb أَسْرِعْ وَأَنْزِلْ .
- III. The Preterite (both voices), Imperative, and the Nouns of Action of the Derived Forms, from the sixth onwards.

IV. In the Nouns:

Two	إِثْنَانِ	Son	إِبْنِ
Man	إِمْرًا	Name	إِسْمِ
Woman	إِمْرَأَةً	Son	إِبْنِ
Oath	أَيْمَانِ	Daughter	إِبْنَةَ
Anus	إِسْتِ	Two	إِثْنَانِ

Its vowel at the beginning of a sentence is = except in 1 the Article **أَلْ**;

II the Imperative of the Trilateral, the middle letter of which in the Imperfect tense has 2 **أُنْضُرْ**.

To help **نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ**

When the letter which precedes the **أ** is silent it takes =.

Exceptions are **مِنْ**, **يَ**, **يَا**, and the Imperative of Doubled verbs which take = when preceding **أَلْ**.

مُدْ, **أَنْتُمْ**, **هُمْ**, **كُمْ**, **مُدْ** take 2.

The **أ** is omitted in the following instances:

I. The introductory formula **بِسْمِ اللَّهِ** (**بِاسْمِ**). (In the name of God).

II. In the word **إِبْنِ** when used in a genealogical series between two proper nouns, the first of which is the name of the son, and the second the name of the father.

III. In the **أَلْ** when preceded by **لِ** and after **أ** the Particle of Interrogation **لِلرَّجُلِ** (**لِلرَّجُلِ**). To the man.

Is thy son ? **أَأَبْنُكَ** **أَبْنُكَ**.

Is the water ? **أَأَمَاءُ** **أَمَاءُ**.

THE POINT OF DISJUNCTION. (١) **هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ** 2

هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ is the hiatus which is felt before the vowel which it introduces is uttered, and unlike **هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ** it occurs as a root letter not only in the beginning but in the middle and end of a word.

It takes any vowel and is always pronounced, as
 أَكْرَمَ أَبَاكَ وَإِلَهُ إِتْرَاهِيمَ وَإِسْحَاقَ.

In the beginning of a word it is written with the chair
 (كُرْسِي) ا (Aleph). إِصْبَعَ. أُنْمِدَ. أَكَدَ.

In the middle of a word when followed by an ا or
 when silent it takes the chair homogeneous to the vowel
 of the preceding letter, as رَأْسٌ. بِئْسَ. سُؤَالَ.

If vowelled and not followed by ا the hemzeh takes
 the chair homogeneous to its own vowel, as لَوْمٌ. سُئِلَ. سَأَلَ.

In the end of a word if preceded by a vowel, it
 takes the chair homogeneous to the preceding vowel as
 قَرَأَ. طَمِسَ. مَرَرٌ. but when not preceded by a vowel it
 is written without a chair, شَيْءٌ. جُزْءٌ. صَوَةٌ.

Many words are not written according to these rules,
 as مَسْئَلَةٌ.

The expression أَخَطُّ الْهَجَاءَ "I write out the alphabet"
 contains all the vowels and orthographical signs.

THE PAUSE. الْوَقْفُ

In reading, the following changes are to be observed
 when a pause occurs.

I. The final short vowels and the Nunation are dropped
 except in the case of ِ the final نُونٌ only is dropped
 and is replaced in pronunciation by the Aleph.

II. ى with or without the Nunation is pronounced ى.

THE ACCENT. **النَّبْرَةُ**

In all other respects Arabic is pronounced as it is written; long vowels as such, and short vowels as such.

The first syllable is accentuated in words whose vowel sounds are all long or all short; where a long vowel succeeds a short one, it receives the accent.

When a letter is doubled by **ـ** both letters must be distinctly pronounced.

ANOMALIES IN WRITING. **اقَامَةُ الْهَجَاءِ**

ما "What" when used interrogatively and preceded by certain prepositions drops its **ا** as:

With what shall I come before the Lord? **بِمَ أَتَقَدَّمُ**
إِلَى الرَّبِّ.

What do you desire? **فِيمَ تَرْغَبُ**.

How long will you pursue your evil course? **حَتَّىٰ مَتَىٰ**
تَتَمَادَىٰ فِي شُرَكَائِكَ.

For what do you weep? **عَلَامَ تَبْكِي**.

The **ا** is represented by **ـ** in the following instances and pronounced.

But	لَكِنَّ	Ishmael	إِسْمَاعِيلَ
But	لَكِنَّ	Aaron	هَارُونَ
This	هَذَا	Isaac	إِسْحَاقَ
These two	هَذَانِ	Abraham	إِبْرَاهِيمَ

These	هُؤُلَاءِ	God	اللَّهُ
This (fem.)	هَذِهِ	The God	الِإِلَهِ
That	ذَلِكَ	Here	هَهُنَا
Those	أُولَئِكَ	Most merciful	الرَّحْمَنُ
Three	ثَلَاثَةٌ	Angel	مَلَكَةٌ
Thirty	ثَلَاثُونَ		

In the masc. plural of the Preterite and Imperative and the apocopated form of the Aorist **ا** is written but not pronounced; as, **لَمَ يَأْتُوا . اِعْلَمُوا . جَلَسُوا**.

All nouns having **و** side by side may drop one in writing but not in pronunciation **دُودٌ . كُورٌ . كُورٌ**.
دُودٌ.

مِنَ	when followed by	مَا (relative)	becomes	مِمَّا
عَنَ	”	do.	”	مَمَّا
أَنَّ	”	do.	”	أَلَّا
إِنَّ	”	do.	”	إِلَّا
إِنَّ	”	do.	”	إِمَّا

Note. The **ت** as a rule does not occur as the final letter of a noun except it is a root letter as **بَيْتٌ** house, **حُوتٌ** whale, **تُوتٌ** mulberry, **سُكُونٌ** quietness. Exceptions **أَلْتَاءُ** the betrothed, **أَخْتٌ** sister. The **ت** is called **التاءُ البسوطَةُ**. The **ة** **أَلْتَاءُ التبرُّوطَةُ** never occurs as the final letter of a verb.

PARTS OF SPEECH. أَقْسَامُ الْكَلَامِ

There are three parts of Speech in Arabic:

- I. The Verb **الْفِعْلُ**.
- II. The Noun **الْإِسْمُ**.
- III. The Particle **التَّحْرُفُ**.

The إِسْمُ includes:

- (a). The Noun.
- (b). The Pronoun.
- (c). The Adjective.
- (d). The Adverb.
- (e). The Participles.
- (f). Some Interjections.

The حَرْفُ includes:

- (a). The Preposition **حَرْفُ جَرِّ**.
- (b). The Conjunction **حَرْفُ عَظْفِ**.
- (c). Some Interjections **حُرُوفُ الْبَدَاءِ**.
- (d). Some Interrogatives **حُرُوفُ الْأَسْتِفْهَامِ**.
- (e). Other Particles **حُرُوفُ التَّوَكِيدِ وَالنَّدْبَةِ**.

SERVILE LETTERS. حُرُوفُ الْبَرِّيَادَةِ

These letters are used to inflect the noun and conjugate the verb.

They are ten in number and together form the word **سَأَلْتُمْ عَنْهَا**. "You have asked me about them", i. e. the

Servile letters. All increase in verbs or nouns is effected by these letters, the only exception being the doubling of the middle or last radical of the root as **تَقَدَّمَ** . **إِحْمَرَ** .
صَيَّاح . **جَوَّال** .

Words are modified in meaning by prefixes, suffixes and by the insertion of letters; most words in the language may thus be referred to significant roots, consisting of three or four letters. The various modifications in form are spoken of as the "measures of words". The typical root employed to represent such changes is **فَعَلَ** .

These measures, which are peculiar to verbs and nouns, are the following:

Verbs.

(I). Triliteral verbs have six measures:

(1) **فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ** (1) (2) **فَعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ** (2) (3) **فَعِلَّ يَفْعِلُّ** (3)
 (4) **فَعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ** (4) (5) **فَعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ** (5) (6) **فَعِلَّ يَفْعِلُّ** (6)

(II). Derived verbs from the triliteral have ten measures:

(1) **فَعَّلَ** (1) (2) **فَاعَلَ** (2) (3) **أَفْعَلَ** (3) (4) **تَفَعَّلَ** (4) (5) **تَفَاعَلَ** (5)
 (6) **إِنْفَعَلَ** (6) (7) **إِنْتَعَلَ** (7) (8) **إِنْعَلَ** (8) (9) **إِسْتَفَعَلَ** (9) (10) **إِنْعَوَعَ** (10)

(III). The quadriliteral verb has the measure:

فَعَّلَلَّ يَفْعَلِّلُ

(IV). Derived verbs from the quadriliteral have three measures:

(1) **تَفَعَّلَلَّ يَتَفَعَّلَلُّ** (1) (2) **إِفْعَلَّلَّ يَفْعَلِّلُ** (2) (3) **إِفْعَنْلَلَّ يَفْعَنْلِلُ** (3)

Nouns.

(V). The measures of the derived nouns.

(VI). The trilateral primitive nouns have ten measures:

فَعَل (5) فَعَلَ (4) فَعِل (3) فُعِل (2) فَعَل (1)

فَعِل (10) فَعَلَ (9) فُعِل (8) فَعِل (7) فَعَل (6)

(VII). The quadrilateral primitive nouns have five

measures:

فَعَلِل (5) فَعَلَل (4) فَعِلِل (3) فُعِلِل (2) فَعَلَل (1)

(VIII). The quinqueliteral nouns have four measures:

فَعَلَلِل (4) فَعَلَلَل (3) فُعَلَلِل (2) فَعَلَلَل (1)

(IX). The measures of the plurals.

THE VERB. **الْفِعْلُ**

The verb in its simplest form is of two kinds.

I. Triliteral **مُجَرَّدٌ ثَلَاثِيٌّ** as **فَعَلَ** To do.

II. Quadriliteral **مُجَرَّدٌ رُبَاعِيٌّ** as **دَخَرَجَ** To roll.

(The latter are comparatively few in number).

Both these root forms may be increased by one, two, or three letters and thus produce Derived Forms.

The root letters are called **حُرُوفٌ أَصْلِيَّةٌ** and may be either Strong or Weak (the verb being named Strong or Weak according to the absence or presence of these letters).

The letters of increase are called **حُرُوفٌ زَائِدَةٌ**.

Verbs may be either Transitive **مُتَعَدٍّ** or Intransitive **تَلَازِمٌ**.

Intransitive Verbs may be made Transitive by:

- (a) the use of a preposition;
- (b) the prefixing of Hemzeh;
- (c) doubling the medial radical; as,

To bring	جَاءَ بِ	To come	جَاءَ
To cause to sleep	نَوَّمَ	To sleep	نَامَ
To raise	أَقَامَ	To rise	قَامَ

Some verbs are both Transitive and Intransitive as:

To build, to live long	عَمَّرَ	To come	جَاءَ
To do good	أَحْسَنَ	To fear	خَافَ
To make or be distant	أَبْعَدَ	To snatch	خَطَفَ
To raise, to stay	أَقَامَ	To separate	فَصَلَ
To learn	تَعَلَّمَ	To be poor	عَالَ
		To possess, to reign	مَلَكَ

The ordinary paradigm verb is **فَعَلَ** for the Trilateral and **فَعَّلَلَ** for the Quadrilateral.

فَعَلَ is the third person sing. masc. of the Preterite. As the root form of the verb, it is the simplest and is consequently used as the standard of comparison or "measure" (**وَزْنٌ**) for all verbs and Derivative Nouns.

It is usually rendered into English by the Infinitive. The first letter of any Trilateral verb is called its **فَاء**, the second its **عَيْن**, and the third its **لَام**; and in the Quadrilateral the second **لَام** is called **الْثَانِيَةُ**.

Inflection. The verb is inflected to express Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, Person and Gender.

Voice. There are two Voices, the Active and the Passive. The Active is called **صِيغَةُ الْمَعْلُومِ** "the known" because the agent of the verb is known as,

Zaid beat the man **ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ الرَّحْلَ**.

The Passive Voice is called **صِيغَةُ الْمَجْهُولِ** "The unknown" because the agent is unknown; as,

The man was beaten ضَرَبَ الرَّجُلُ.

The Active Verb is called الْفِعْلُ الْمَعْلُومُ.

The Passive الْفِعْلُ الْمَجْهُولُ.

Moods. The moods of the verb are three viz: — the Indicative, the Imperative and the Subjunctive. The Imperative is derived from the Imperfect Tense of the Indicative. The Subjunctive may be used in various senses i. e. Jussive, Hortative, Conditional etc.

Tenses. The Indicative Mood has both Perfect and Imperfect Tenses. The Subjunctive has only the Imperfect Tense. The verb strictly speaking has not Tenses but forms which express states.

Action not time is indicated; one a finished act, the Perfect; and the other an unfinished act, the Imperfect whose completion may be in the immediate present or in the near or far distant future. The Perfect Action includes all past tenses of other languages, the Imperfect includes all imperfect tenses.

By prefixing **ل** to the Imperfect a present signification is imparted to the action of the verb, and by prefixing **س** or **سَوْفَ** a near or far distant future is respectively indicated.

Note. It is more accurate to speak of the Preterite and Aorist Tenses. The former to express a known finished act; the latter to express an indefinite and unfinished one.

Numbers. There are three numbers: the singular **الْمُفْرَدُ**, the dual **الْمُتَنَّى**, and the plural **الْجَمْعُ**.

Persons. There are three persons: the first **الْمُتَكَلِّمُ** “the speaker”, the second **الْمُكَلَّطُ** “the person addressed”, and the third **الْغَائِبُ** “the absent.”

Genders. There are two genders: the masc. **الْمَذَكَّرُ** and the fem. **الْمَوْثَّةُ**.

The numbers, persons, and genders are expressed by means of Personal Pronouns joined to the different forms of the verb.

THE ANNEXED PRONOUNS. **الضَّمَائِرُ الْمُتَّصِلَةُ**

The Pronouns which are united to the verb in the Nom. Case in the process of its inflexion are six, **نَا، نَ، ا، وِ، ي، ت**.

1st person sing. masc. or fem. Preterite	تُ
2nd „ „ masc. „	تَ
„ „ „ fem. „	تِ
Fem. plural for all Persons and Tenses	نَ
Masc. plural all forms	و
1st person plural Preterite	نَا
2nd person fem. sing. Aorist and Imperative	ي
For the dual	ا

Of these **تَا، نَ، نَا** are strong pronouns and the rest (**ا، وِ، ي**) weak.

When the strong pronouns are joined to a verb its

لام is made silent ضَرَبْتُ, and when the weak pronouns are joined to a verb the final letter of the verb takes a vowel homogeneous to the annexed weak pronoun ضَرَبُوا, تَضَرَّبِينَ, ضَرَبِي; but in the verbs ending in a weak letter the homogeneous vowel is implied on the dropped final letter as غَزَوْا for غَزَوْا.

Note. The First Personal Pronoun in the Aorist Sing. and Plural, the second person sing. of the Aorist, and Imperative, and the third person sing. masc. and fem. of the Aorist and Preterite are regarded as "hidden" مُسْتَتِرَةٌ in the verb, but when the noun follows the verb of the third person the latter is regarded as not containing a pronoun as ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ الرَّجُلَ.

Simple Form of the Triliteral Verb Sound. Active Voice.

THE PRETERITE. الْمَاضِي

Plural.		Dual.		Singular.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
فَعَلُوا	فَعَلْنَ	فَعَلَا	فَعَلْتَا	فَعَلْتُ	فَعَلَ	3rd Per.
فَعَلْتُمْ	فَعَلْتُنَّ	فَعَلْتِمَا		فَعَلْتِ	فَعَلْتَ	2nd „
فَعَلْنَا				فَعَلْتُ		1st „

THE AORIST. الْمُضَارِعُ

يَفْعَلُونَ	يَفْعَلْنَ	يَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلُ	تَفْعَلُ	3rd Per.
تَفْعَلُونَ	تَفْعَلْنَ	تَفْعَلَانِ		تَفْعَلِي	تَفْعَلِي	2nd „
نَفْعَلُ				أَفْعَلُ		1st „

THE IMPERATIVE. **الْأَمْرُ**

Plural.		Dual.		Singular.	
<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>
إفْعَلُوا		إفْعَلَا		إفْعَلْ	
إفْعَلْنَ				إفْعَلِي	
2 nd Per.					

Passive Voice.

THE PRETERITE.

Plural.		Dual.		Singular.	
<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>
فُعِلُوا		فُعِلَا		فُعِلْ	
فُعِلْنَ				فُعِلِي	
فُعِلْتُمْ		فُعِلْتُمَا		فُعِلْتِ	
فُعِلْتُنَّ				فُعِلْتِي	
فُعِلْنَا				فُعِلْتُ	
1 st „					
2 nd „					
3 rd Per.					

THE AORIST.

يُفْعَلُونَ		يُفْعَلَانِ		يُفْعَلُ	
يُفْعَلْنَ				يُفْعَلِي	
تُفْعَلُونَ		تُفْعَلَانِ		تُفْعَلُ	
تُفْعَلْنَ				تُفْعَلِي	
نُفْعَلُ				أُفْعَلُ	
1 st „					
2 nd „					
3 rd Per.					

There are six measures of the Triliteral Verb depending for their arrangement upon the vowels with which the Medial Radical is pointed in the Preterite and Aorist.

صَرَبَ يَصْرِبُ	فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ I.
نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ	فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ II.
عَلِمَ يَعْلَمُ	فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ III.
مَنَعَ يَمْنَعُ	فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ IV.
فَضَلَ يَفْضُلُ	فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ V.
حَسِبَ يَحْسِبُ	فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ VI.

The first and second measures are generally transitive and of most frequent occurrence therefore are called دَعَائِمُ الْأَنْبَوَابِ "principal forms".

In the first three measures the vowel of the ع of the Preterite differs from that of the Aorist, in the last three the vowel is the same.

In the fourth measure the ع or ج must be of the حُرُوفُ الْخَلْقِ but not every verb possessing these guttural letters is found in the measure.

The fourth measure is generally transitive.

The fifth measure is always intransitive and implies inherent qualities.

The sixth measure is rarely found, there being only about ten verbs and most of them begin with مِثَالٌ وَادِيٌّ.

DERIVED FORMATIONS OF THE VERB.

The increase of letters is invariably accompanied by an increase or modification of the meaning of the root form. There are twelve Derived Forms but eight only are of frequent occurrence. They are inflected precisely as the root form. It is of the utmost importance that the student should acquire a perfect familiarity with the Derived Forms.

There is no branch of Arabic study which is of such extreme importance, as the verb in Arabic is not

simply the “Key-stone” of the “Arch of Speech” but the Arch itself.

The student should be able to recognize at a glance any verb of any formation and in whatever Tense and Mood it may be, together with its Derived Nouns.

In order to accomplish this, it is necessary to have a thorough knowledge of (a) the Rules for the formation of the verb **بِنَاءُ الْفِعْلِ**, (b) the changes which the weak letters undergo **الْإِعْلَالُ**, and (c) the subject of Insertion or Assimilation **الْإِذْغَامُ** which are accordingly treated of before the Weak Verbs.

RULES FOR THE FORMATION OF THE VERB.

بِنَاءُ الْفِعْلِ

The Preterite Active. The vowels of the Preterite in the Active Voice (**الْمَاضِي الْمَعْلُومُ**) are fethahs **فَعَلَّ** except in the medial radical of the trilateral, which may take any vowel **فَعِلَّ** and the Servile Hemzeh **ِ** in the five and six lettered verbs which is **إِنْفَعَلَ** **إِنْفَعَلَّ** **إِنْفَعَلَّ** **إِنْفَعَلَّ** **إِنْفَعَلَّ** **إِنْفَعَلَّ**.
(In certain verbs the vowels are implied **رَمَى مَدَّ قَامَ**
for **رَمَى مَدَّ قَامَ**)

The Preterite Passive **أَلْمَاضِي الْمَجْهُولُ** is formed from the Preterite Active by giving **ـَ** to the penultimate consonant and **ـُ** to every vowelled letter preceding it.

تُفْعِلَ V.	فُعِلَ I.
أُنْفَعِلَ VI.	فُوِعِلَ II.
أُفْتَعِلَ VII.	أُفِعِلَ III.
أُسْتَفْعِلَ IX.	تُفْعَلُ IV.

The Aorist Active **أَلْمُضَارِعُ أَلْمَعْلُومُ** is formed from the Preterite Active by prefixing one of the four letters ن , ي , ت , ا (أَيْبُتُ). Servile Hemzeh is suppressed wherever it occurs.

The vowel of the prefix is \bar{e} except in the four lettered verbs **فَعَّلَ**, **فَاعَلَ**, **أَفْعَلَ**, **فَعَّلَلَ** where it is \bar{u} .

The penultimate consonant has \bar{e} except in the trilateral where it may be any of the three vowels, and in the fourth and fifth Derived Forms where it takes \bar{e} .

يَنْفَعِلُ } VI.	يَتَفَعَّلُ } IV.	يُفَعِّلُ
يَفْتَعِلُ } VII.	يَتَفَاعَلُ } V.	يُفَعِّعِلُ } I.
يَفْعَلُّ } VIII.		يُفَاعِلُ } II.
يَسْتَفْعِلُ } IX.		يُفْعِلُ } III.
يَفْعَوِعِلُ } X.		

The Aorist Passive **أَلْمُضَارِعُ أَلْمَجْهُولُ** has the same form as the Aorist Active. Its vowels are \bar{e} for the prefix and \bar{e} for the penultimate consonant.

يُفَعِّلُ III.	يُفَعَّلُ
يُتَفَعَّلُ IV.	يُفَعِّعِلُ I.
يُتَفَاعَلُ V.	يُفَاعِلُ II.

يُفَعِّلُ VIII.	يُنْفَعِّلُ VI.
يُسْتَفَعِّلُ IX.	يُفْتَعِّلُ VII.

The *Imperative Active* (الْأَمْرُ) is formed from the 2nd per. Aorist Active by suppressing the characteristic letter of the Aorist س , and if the following radical be silent Hemzeh is prefixed. The vowel of the Hemzeh is $\bar{\text{ـ}}$ except in the trilateral which has ـ on the ع (of the Aorist) where it takes ـ and in the measure أَفَعَلْ where it retains ـ .

إِنْفَعِلْ VI.	أَفْعِلْ III.	تَفْعُلْ from	إِنْفَعِلْ
إِنْفَعِلْ VII.	تَفْعَلْ IV.	تَفْعُلْ from	أَفْعُلْ
إِنْفَعِلْ VIII.	تَفَعَّلْ V.		فَعِلْ I.
إِسْتَفَعِّلْ IX.			فَاعِلْ II

The final vowel is apocopated.

This form of Imperative commands the 2nd person only of the Active Voice. To command the 1st and 3rd persons in the Active or Passive Voices لِ is prefixed to the Aorist and the final vowel is apocopated.

لِيْفَعِّلْ	لِيْفَعِّلْ
لِنْفَعِّلْ	لِنْفَعِّلْ

In verbs whose final radical is weak (نَاقِص), the weak letter is dropped in place of the vowel أَعْطِ , إِزْم , and in the following five measures the ن is dropped.

تَفْعَلِينَ	تَفْعَلُونَ	يَفْعَلُونَ	تَفْعَلَانِ	يَفْعَلَانِ
-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------

To express command in the Negative لا with the Apocoped form of the Aorist is used.

لَا تَقْتُلْ.

THE QUADRILITERAL VERB. أَلْفَعْلُ الرَّبَاعِيّ

The Quadriliteral Verb has three derived formations.

The first derived form expresses the consequence of the quadriliteral and corresponds with the fourth derived form of the trilateral.

The second derived form implies great intensity and corresponds with the eighth of the trilateral, and the third derived form corresponds with the sixth of the trilateral.

Passive.			Active.		
Aorist.	Preterite.	Noun of Action.	Imperative.	Aorist.	Preterite.
يُفَعِّلُ	فَعَّلَ	فَعْلَلَةٌ	فَعِّلْ	يُفَعِّلُ	فَعَّلَ
يَتَفَعَّلُ	تَفَعَّلَ	تَفَعُّلٌ	تَفَعَّلْ	يَتَفَعَّلُ	تَفَعَّلَ I.
يُفَعِّلُ	أَفَعَّلَ	إِفْعِلَالٌ	إِفْعِلْ	يُفَعِّلُ	إِفْعَلَّ II.
يُفَعِّلُ	أَفَعَّلَ	إِفْعِلَالٌ	إِفْعِلْ	يُفَعِّلُ	إِفْعَلَّ III.

There are some other quadrilaterals which were originally trilaterals, but a letter has been added to them in an irregular way (i. e. not in accordance with the recognized Derived Forms), and therefore they cannot be called مَزِيدَاتٌ مُكَلِّمَةٌ, nor are they pure quadrilaterals because the letters are not all radicals. They are called مُلْحَقَاتٌ بِالرَّبَاعِيّ Supplements of the Quadriliteral.

Examples:

To give to wear	جَلَبَبَ (جَلْبَاب)
To stuff the crop	حَوَّصَدَ
To practise veterinary surgery	بَيَّطَرَ
To overthrow	دَهَوَّرَ
To wear a cap	قَلَنَسَ
To make one cleave to dust	جَنَدَلَ

TABLE OF DERIVED FORMS.

Noun of Object.	Noun of Agent.	Noun of Action.	Imperative.	Aorist Passive.	Aorist Active.	Preterite Passive.	Preterite Active.	
مَفْعَلٌ	مَفْعِلٌ	تَفْعِيلًا و تَفْعِلَةٌ	فَعِّلْ	يُفَعَّلُ	يُفَعِّلُ	فُعِّلَ	فَعَّلَ	Trilateral.
مَفَاعِلٌ	مُفَاعِلٌ	مُفَاعِلَةٌ و فِعَالًا	فَاعِلٌ	يُفَاعَلُ	يُفَاعِلُ	فُوِعِلَ	فَاعَّلَ	
مَفْعَلٌ	مُفَعِّلٌ	أَفْعَالًا	أَفْعِلْ	يُفَعَّلُ	يُفَعِّلُ	أَفْعِلَ	أَفْعَّلَ	
مُتَفَعِّلٌ	مُتَفَعِّلٌ	تَفَعَّلًا	تَفَعَّلْ	يُتَفَعَّلُ	يَتَفَعَّلُ	تُفَعِّلَ	تَفَعَّلَ	
مُتَفَاعِلٌ	مُتَفَاعِلٌ	تَفَاعَلًا	تَفَاعَلْ	يُتَفَاعَلُ	يَتَفَاعَلُ	تُفَوِّعِلَ	تَفَاعَّلَ	
مُنْفَعِّلٌ	مُنْفَعِّلٌ	أَنْفَعَالًا	أَنْفَعِلْ	يُنْفَعَّلُ	يُنْفَعِّلُ	أَنْفَعِلَ	أَنْفَعَّلَ	
مُفْتَعِّلٌ	مُفْتَعِّلٌ	أَفْتَعَالًا	أَفْتَعِلْ	يُفْتَعَّلُ	يُفْتَعِّلُ	أَفْتَعِلَ	أَفْتَعَّلَ	
...	مَفْعَلٌ	أَفْعِلَالًا	أَفْعِلْ	...	يُفَعَّلُ	...	أَفْعَلَّ	
مُسْتَفَعِّلٌ	مُسْتَفَعِّلٌ	أَسْتَفْعَالًا	أَسْتَفْعِلْ	يُسْتَفَعَّلُ	يُسْتَفَعِّلُ	أَسْتَفْعِلَ	أَسْتَفَعَّلَ	
مُتَفَعِّلٌ	مُتَفَعِّلٌ	تَفَعَّلًا	تَفَعَّلْ		يُتَفَعَّلُ	تُفَعِّلَ	تَفَعَّلَ	Quadrilateral.
مُفَعِّنِلٌ	مُفَعِّنِلٌ	أَفْعِنَالًا	أَفْعِنِلْ			أَفْعِنِلَ	أَفْعِنَّلَ	
مَفْعَلٌ	مَفْعِلٌ	أَفْعِلَالًا	أَفْعِلْ			أَفْعِلِلَ	أَفْعِلَّلَ	

PERMUTATION OR CHANGES OF THE WEAK
LETTERS. اَعْلَالُ

The Weak Letters are ا, و, ي اَحْرُفُ الْعِلَّةِ

They may be:

- (1) Changed for one Another.
- (2) Made Silent.
- (3) Dropped.

The Hemzeh اَلْهَمْزَةُ may be represented by any of the Weak Letters.

CHANGES OF THE HEMZEH. اَعْلَالُ اَلْهَمْزَةِ

I. Hemzeh silent, preceded by Hemzeh vowelled is changed into the letter homogeneous to the vowel, اَأْمَنَ آمَنَ, اَأْوَمِنُ أُوْمِنُ, اَأْتَمَانَ إِتْمَانَ

II. Hemzeh silent, preceded by any other letter may be changed into the letter homogeneous to the vowel which precedes the Hemzeh, بِئْسَ بَيْتٌ, بُؤْسٌ بُؤَسٌ, رَأْسٌ رَأَسَ

III. Hemzeh final, preceded by either و or ي silent is sometimes changed into the preceding letter and incorporated with it, رُضُوهُ رُضُوهُ مَجْبِيٌّ مَجْبِيٌّ

Other common and recognized changes in the Hemzeh are :

The Aorist of رَأَى is يَرَى instead of يَرَأَى

The Third Derivative of أَرَأَى is أَرَى instead of أَرَأَى

The Imperatives of أَمَرَ, اأْكَلْ, اأَخَذْ are كُنْ, خُذْ, اأْمُرْ

” ” of أَتَى is ائْتِ or ائْتِ

The Imperatives of **أَلْفَيْفَ الْمَفْرُوقِ** as **وَلِي وَتَى** retain the sound letter only **لِ قِ لِي**.

سَأَلَ may be treated as the **أَجَوَفَ**.

سَأَلَ يَسْأَلُ إِسْأَلَ
سَأَلَ يَسْأَلُ سَدُّ

CHANGES OF THE WEAK LETTERS.

إِعْلَالُ أَخْرَفِ الْعِلَّةِ

- I. **و**, silent, preceded by **ـ** is changed into **ي**, **مِرْعَادٌ مِيرْعَادٌ**.
ي silent, preceded by **ـ** is changed into **و**, **مُنِيرٌ مُوِيرٌ**.
ا preceded by **ـ** or **ـ** is changed into **و**, or **ي** respectively,

شَاهِدٌ becomes in the Passive **شُوِعِدَ**.

مِفْتَاحٌ " " " Plural **مِفَاتِيحٌ**.

- II. A weak letter when silent, preceded by a homogeneous vowel and followed by a silent letter is dropped
قَوْمٌ قُمْ, **بَيْنِعٌ بَع**, **خَافٌ خَفَ**.

- III. **و** and **ي** vowelled by **ـ** and preceded by **ـ** are changed into **ا**, **رَمَى رَمَى**, **قَامَ قَامَ**.

(a) If the **و**, of the **نَاقِصَ** occur after the third letter in a word it is always changed into **ي**, **أَرْضَوْتُ أَرْضَيْتُ**, **يَرْضَوَانِ يَرْضَيَانِ**.

(b) If the **و** be preceded by **ـ** it is always changed into **ي**, **رَضِيَ رَضِيَ**, **يَرْضَوُ يَرْضَيُ**.

- IV. **و** and **ي** when vowelled and preceded by a silent

letter, transfer their vowel to that letter **يَبِيعُ يَبِيعُ** **يَقُومُ يَقُومُ**; the weak letter is thereupon made homogeneous with the vowel **يَخَافُ يَهَيَّبُ يَهَابُ**. But in certain nouns the change is not made **أَعْيُنُ، أَدْوَرُ**.

V. When **و**, and **ي** come together and the first in order is silent the **و** is changed into **ي** and incorporated **سَيِّدُ سَيِّدِ، طَوِيُّ طَيِّئِ**.

VI. **و**, and **ي** when vowelled by **ـُ** are dropped after transferring their vowel to the preceding letter **رَضُوا رَضُوا**.

VII. When the **ي** is vowelled by **ـَ** and preceded by **ـَ** it is always dropped, **تَرْمِيْنَ تَرْمِيْنَ، تَغْرِيْنَ تَغْرِيْنَ** but if the preceding vowel is **ـِ** the **ي** is changed into **و**, or the **ـَ** is transferred to the letter before **بِيعَ بُوَعَ، بِيَعُ**.

الأَعْلَالُ is not permissible in Verbs of Wonder or in Nouns of Comparison as their measure must be always **أَفْعَلُ**.

ASSIMILATION. **الأَدْغَامُ**

Assimilation is the process by which one letter is attracted to the sound of another. The letter which has been assimilated is in certain cases incorporated into the other which is in consequence doubled.

The following conditions must hold.

The two letters must be either I *Identical or Similar.*

II. *Side by side in the same word but not in the beginning.*

1 Identical Letters: Assimilation occurs in

(a) when the first is originally unvowelled as مَدَّ from مَدَدٌ;

(b) or is made silent by omitting the vowel مَدَّ from مَدَد, or by transferring the vowel يَمُدُّ from مَدَدُ.

11. In Similar Letters:

This happens most frequently in verbs on the measure اِفْتَعَلَ.

If the first radical is ط or ث or د the characteristic ت of the measure is changed into the letter preceding it, ثَارَ اِثَارَ اِثْتَارَ, دَعَا اِدْعَا اِدْتَعَى, طَرَدَ اِطْرَدَ اِطْتَرَدَ.

If the first radical of the verb is ذ or ز the ت of the measure is changed into ذ or د or ز,

ذَكَرَ اِدْكَرَ, اِدْتَكَّرَ, رَادَ اِرْدَادَ اِرْتَادَ اِرْتَادَ.

If the first radical of the verb is ص, ض or ظ the ت is changed into ط, it may then be left or changed again into ص, ض or ظ, ظَلَمَ اِظْلَمَ, ضَجَعَ اِضْطَجَعَ, ظ, صَبَرَ اِضْطَبَرَ, ضَرَبَ اِضْطَرَبَ.

In the مثال the و or ي is changed into ت,

وَحَدَّ اِتَّحَدَ (اِوْتَحَدَ) يَسَرَ اِتَّسَرَ (اِيْتَسَرَ).

In the measure اِنْفَعَلَ, if the first radical is م the ن is changed into م, مَكَى اِنْمَكَى اِمْمَكَى, مَكَى اِنْمَكَى اِمْمَكَى.

When the annexed pronoun is ت preceded by ذ as in قَعَدْتُ the د is omitted in pronunciation.

Assimilation in two words occurs when the first ends with a silent letter and the second begins with the

same letter as **كَلَّمَ** but if the second letter is dissimilar, assimilation is optional **مَلَّى** or **مَلَّى**.

FORMS OF THE VERB IN RESPECT TO ITS ROOT LETTERS.

تَقَاسِمُ الْفِعْلِ بِاعْتِبَارِ هَيْئَةِ حُرُوفِهِ الْأَصْلِيَّةِ

The verb as we have seen is named in accordance with the nature of its root letters as Strong or Weak:

A: *Strong*.

When it is void of Weak Letters, Hemzeh and Doubling.

(Whole) **السَّالِمُ**.

B: *Weak*.

I. When it is void of Weak Letters and contains Hemzeh or Doubling.

(Sound) **الصَّحِيحُ**.

II. When it contains Weak Letters.

(Weak) **الْبَعْدُ**.

When two weak letters come together in the root the verb is called **لَفِيَ مَقْرُون** (لَفَى to fold) (فَرِنَ to be joined) but if a strong letter intervenes, the verb is called **لَفِيَ مَفْرُوق** (فَرَقَ to be separate).

When the verb begins with **و** or **ي** it is called **مِثَال** as **يَسَّرَ**, **وَقَفَ**.

When the medial radical is weak it is called **أَجْرَف** (Hollow) as **قَالَ**.

When the final radical is weak it is called نَاقِص (Defective) as رَمَى.

The verb with َ in its root is called مَهْمُوز (Hemzated).

The verb beginning with Hemzeh is called مَهْمُوزُ الْفَاءِ.

The verb whose medial radical is Hemzeh is called مَهْمُوزُ الْعَيْنِ.

The verb which ends with Hemzeh is called مَهْمُوزُ اللَّامِ.

قَتَلَ	ثُلَاثِيَّ	}	(a) سَالِمٌ
دَخَرَجَ	رُبَاعِيَّ		
مَدَّ	ثُلَاثِيَّ	}	(b) صَاحِبٌ
زَلَزَلَ	رُبَاعِيَّ		
أَكَلَ	أَلْفَاءَ	}	(c) مُعْتَدٍ
سَأَلَ	أَلْعَيْنِ		
قَرَأَ	أَللَّامِ	}	(c) مُعْتَدٍ
وَعَدَ	أَلْيَسَالِ (أَلْيَسَالِ)		
قَالَ	أَلْبَاعِ (أَلْبَاعِ)		
شَوَى	أَلطَوَى (أَلطَوَى)		
وَقَى	أَللَّامِ (أَللَّامِ)	}	(c) مُعْتَدٍ
وَقَى	أَللَّامِ (أَللَّامِ)		

أَلْمِثَالُ

Verbs beginning with و having َ on the ع of the Aorist drop the و in the Aorist, Imperative and Maṣḍar.

وَعَدَ يَعِدُ عِدَّةٌ عِدٌّ
وَرِثَ يَرِثُ رِثٌ

In the Maṣḍar a ة final is added to compensate for the و, which has been dropped.

Some verbs drop the و, although they have َ on the ع of the Aorist وَسِعَ يَسَعُ, وَدَعَ يَدَعُ, وَضَعَ يَضَعُ, وَقَعَ يَقَعُ, وَدَرَ يَدْرُ, وَطِئَ يَطِئُ.

The Maṣḍars of these exceptions also take the final ة.

THE HOLLOW VERB. الْأَجْرُوفُ

When نَا, نِ, or تٌ (Strong Pronouns in the Nom. Case) are annexed to the أَجْرُوفُ verb (i. e. when the ل of the verb has to be silent) the weak letter is dropped.

قَامَتْ قُمْتُ, خَافْنَا خِفْنَا, يَبِينُ يَبِينُ.

The same change occurs in the third, sixth, seventh and ninth Derivative Formations.

إِنْقَادَ انْقَدْنَا, إِسْتَقَامَ اسْتَقَمْنَا, إِجْتَارَ اجْتَرْنَا

The third and ninth Derivative Formations of the أَجْرُوفُ add a final ة in the Maṣḍar for the weak letter which is dropped إِقَامَةٌ, إِسْتِقَامَةٌ.

If the ع in the Aorist of the Triliteral has َ the ف in the Preterite after dropping the weak letter takes َ قَامْتُ; if the ع have ِ or ُ the ف must have ِ خَافْتُ, بَاعَ يَبِيعُ بَيْعْتُ.

In the Derivative Formations the vowel of the ف remains unchanged:

I. In the Preterite Passive of the Triliteral أَجْرَفَ the , when present is changed into ي and the preceding َ into ِ, قَالَ قَوْلَ قَيْدٍ, بَاعَ بَيْعَ بَيْعٍ.

The vowel of the ف in the Triliteral of the Passive Voice should be ِ but when the ف in the Active Voice has َ then the former takes ِ,

(Passive بُعِثَ)	بَاعَ يَبِيعُ بَيْعٌ (Active)
,, صِنْتُ	,, صَانَ يَصُونُ صُنْتُ ,,

II. In the sixth and seventh Derived Forms the Hemzeth takes ِ and the , when present is changed into ي, اِنْقَادَ اُنْقَادٍ اِنْقِيدَ, اِعْتَادَ اِعْتَادٍ اِعْتِيدَ.

THE DEFECTIVE VERB. اَلنَّاقِصُ

When the , plural pron. and the ي sing. fem. pron. second pers. are annexed to a Defective verb in the Aorist its weak letter is dropped.

If the ع have ِ it remains and if ِ or ِ it has to agree with the , or ي respectively:

3rd person plur. masc.	يَخْشَوْنَ يَخْشَوْنَ
2nd ,, sing. fem.	تَغْزَيْنَ تَغْزَيْنَ
2nd ,, sing. masc.	تَرْمِيُونَ تَرْمِيُونَ

The ل of the Defective Triliteral (فَاعِلٌ) reverts to its original form when an annexed pronoun is joined to it, غَزَا غَرَوْتُ, رَمَى رَمَيْتُ; but in verbs of more than

three letters it is changed into ى irrespective of its original form.

If the ع have ـ in the Preterite the weak letter is dropped in the third person fem. sing. and dual,

غَزَا غَزَتْ غَزَتَا . رَمَى رَمَتَ رَمَتَا

The weak letter is dropped in the Aorist when preceded by حَرْفُ جَزْم (particle of Apocoptation), and it is also dropped in the Imperative which retains the vowel of the ع . لَمْ يَرَمْ ، اِرْمِ ، اِرْمِي .

VERBS WITH TWO WEAK LETTERS. اَللَّغِيْفُ

I. The first letter of the مَفْرُوْق لَفِيْف behaves as the وَلِي يَلِي ، مِثَال

II. The third letter of the لَفِيْف verbs behave as the $\text{وَقَى تَقِيْنَ تَوْقِيْنِ}$ ، نَاقِص

The Imperative of مَفْرُوْق لَفِيْف verbs retain one letter only, $\text{وَلِي لِ ، وَفَى فِ ، وَقَى قِ}$.

THE NOUN OF ACTION. اَلْمُضَدَّرُ

Verbs beginning with و , having ـ on the ع of the Aorist drop the و , and affix ة instead وَعْدَةٌ .

In the third and ninth Derivative Formations of the Hollow Verb اَجْرَف the weak letter is dropped and ة affixed, $\text{اَقَامَ اِقْوَامَ اِقَامَةٌ}$ ، $\text{اِسْتَقَامَ اِسْتِقْوَامَ اِسْتِقَامَةٌ}$.

The Defective Verbs (فَاعِل) which insert ا before the last radical, change the weak letter into Hemzeh, اِنْقَضَى اِنْقِضَاىِ اِنْقِضَا، اِجْتَلَى اِجْتَلَا، اِجْتَلَا.

In the fourth and fifth Derived Forms the 2 of the measure is changed into 2 and the و when present into ى, then the ى is dropped because of two silent letters i. e. (نُونُ التَّنْوِينِ and ى) coming together,

تَرَجَّى تَرَجُّوْ تَرَجِّي تَرَجَّ، تَسَامَى تَسَامُوْ تَسَامِي تَسَامُوْ.

These rules also apply to many nouns, as اَدِلْ، كِسَاءٌ، رِدَاءٌ.

ACTIVE PARTICIPLE OR NOUN OF AGENT.

اِسْمُ اَلْفَاعِلِ

The Noun of Agent of the Triliteral Hollow Verb changes the weak letter into ى (Hemzeh) قَاوِلٌ قَائِلٌ، بَايِعٌ بَائِعٌ.

The Noun of Agent of the Triliteral فَاعِل drops the weak letter in the Nominative and Genitive Cases, and retains ى رَامِيٌّ رَامٍ، غَازُوٌّ غَازٍ،

PASSIVE PARTICIPLE OR NOUN OF OBJECT.

اِسْمُ اَلْمَفْعُولِ

The Noun of Object of the Triliteral Hollow Verb:

I. drops the و of the measure;

II. makes the weak letter silent by transferring its vowel to the preceding vowelless consonant;

III. and the preceding vowel homogeneous; as,

صَانَ مَصْرُونَ مَصْرُونَ، بَاعَ مَبِيعٌ مَبِيعٌ

Exceptions to this rule are the uncontracted forms:

مَقْرُولٌ، مَقْرُودٌ، مَدْبُورٌ، مَدْبُورٌ، مَخْطُوطٌ.

The Noun of Object of the Defective Verbs (نَائِصٌ) which have not َ on the ع of the Aorist, change the و of the measure into ي and the preceding vowel is made َ then the two ي are incorporated;

رَمَى مَرْمُومٌ مَرْمُومٌ، حَشَى مَخْشُومٌ مَخْشُومٌ.

The Derived Forms of the نَائِصٌ verbs drop their final letter in pronunciation when accompanied by the tanween مُصْطَفَى.

The same rule applies to nouns ending with ا

فَتَى originally فَتَى
عَصَى ” عَصَى

نَ نَ

نُونُ التَّوَكِيدِ ن. THE CORROBORATIVE

The Energetic Mood is formed by annexing نَ، نَ to the Aorist and Imperative after oaths, requests, prohibitions, questions.

The final vowel of the verb is changed into َ
لَا تَفْعَلَنَّ، لَا تَفْعَلَنَّ.

When a weak letter has been dropped because of the concurrence of two silent letters it is restored on

the final letter being vowelled **قُمْ قَوْمًا**, **إِزْمِي**.

The **نَ**, **نِ** are sometimes separated from the verb either by **ن** sign of fem. or **ي**, **و**, **ا** weak pronouns in Nominative Case.

In the first instance **ا** is placed between the **ن** fem. and **ن** of assurance **إِضْرِبَنَّ إِضْرِبَنَّ**.

In the second instance the weak pronoun is dropped except the **ا** and the **ل** of the verb retain their vowel **تَضْرِبَنَّ (تَضْرِبُونَنَّ)**.

The Defective verbs having **ـ** on the **ع** retain these letters **إِزْمِي**, **إِخْشَنَنَّ**.

The **نَ** does not occur after the **ا**.

THE AORIST WITH **التَّوَكِيدُ نَ**

يَفْعَلَنَّ	يَفْعَلَنَّ	يَفْعَلَنَّ
تَفْعَلَنَّ	تَفْعَلَنَّ	تَفْعَلَنَّ
نَفْعَلَنَّ		أَفْعَلَنَّ

IMPERATIVE.

أَفْعَلَنَّ	أَفْعَلَنَّ	أَفْعَلَنَّ
--------------------	--------------------	--------------------

WITH **نَ**

يَفْعَلَنَّ	يَفْعَلَنَّ
تَفْعَلَنَّ	تَفْعَلَنَّ
نَفْعَلَنَّ		أَفْعَلَنَّ

IMPERATIVE.

أَفْعَلَنَّ	أَفْعَلَنَّ
--------------------	-------	--------------------

نُونُ الْوَقَايَةِ. OF PRECAUTION.

To prevent the last letter of the verb from taking $\bar{}$ when followed by $ي$ of the first person the $ي$ becomes $يُ$.

It is also used with the "Particles that Resemble Verbs" (الْحُرُوفُ الْمَشْبَهَةُ بِالْأَفْعَالِ) $لَعَدَّ$, $لَكِنَّ$, $لَيْتَ$, $إِنَّ$, $أَنَّ$, and with the particles:

Near, With $لَدُنْ$ From $عَنْ$ From, of. $مِنْ$

PRETERITE ACTIVE.

1st PERSON.		2nd PERSON.		3rd PERSON.		
Pl.ural.	Singular.	Plural.	Dual.	Plural.	Dual.	Singular.
فَعَلْنَا	فَعَلْتُ	فَعَلْتُمْ	فَعَلْتُمَا	فَعَلُوا	فَعَلْتَا	فَعَلَ
مَدَدْنَا	مَدَدْتُ	مَدَدْتُمْ	مَدَدْتُمَا	مَدَدُوا	مَدَدْتَا	مَدَّ
أَكَلْنَا	أَكَلْتُ	أَكَلْتُمْ	أَكَلْتُمَا	أَكَلُوا	أَكَلْتَا	أَكَلَ
سَأَلْنَا	سَأَلْتُ	سَأَلْتُمْ	سَأَلْتُمَا	سَأَلُوا	سَأَلْتَا	سَأَلَ
قَرَأْنَا	قَرَأْتُ	قَرَأْتُمْ	قَرَأْتُمَا	قَرَأُوا	قَرَأْتَا	قَرَأَ
وَعَدْنَا	وَعَدْتُ	وَعَدْتُمْ	وَعَدْتُمَا	وَعَدُوا	وَعَدْتَا	وَعَدَ
يَسَرْنَا	يَسَرْتُ	يَسَرْتُمْ	يَسَرْتُمَا	يَسَرُوا	يَسَرْتَا	يَسَرَ
خَافْنَا	خَافْتُ	خَافْتُمْ	خَافْتُمَا	خَافُوا	خَافْتَا	خَافَ
رَمِينَا	رَمَيْتُ	رَمَيْتُمْ	رَمَيْتُمَا	رَمَوْا	رَمَيْتَا	رَمَى
خَشِينَا	خَشِيتُ	خَشِيتُمْ	خَشِيتُمَا	خَشَوْا	خَشِيتَا	خَشِيَ
رَمِينَا	رَمَيْتُ	رَمَيْتُمْ	رَمَيْتُمَا	رَمَوْا	رَمَيْتَا	رَمَى
خَشِينَا	خَشِيتُ	خَشِيتُمْ	خَشِيتُمَا	خَشَوْا	خَشِيتَا	خَشِيَ
طَوَيْتُ	طَوَيْتُ	طَوَيْتُمْ	طَوَيْتُمَا	طَوَوْا	طَوَيْتَا	طَوَى
طَوَيْتُ	طَوَيْتُ	طَوَيْتُمْ	طَوَيْتُمَا	طَوَوْا	طَوَيْتَا	طَوَى

سَالِمٌ
مُصَاعَفٌ
مَهْمُوزُ الْفَاءِ
مُ الْعَيْنُ
اللَّامُ
مِثَالُ وَاوِيٍّ
مِثَالُ يَائِيٍّ
أَجُوفٌ
نَائِصٌ
لَيْفِيٌّ مَفْرُوقٌ
لَيْفِيٌّ مَقْرُونٌ

AORIST ACTIVE.

1st PERSON.			2nd PERSON.			3rd PERSON.		
Plural	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.	Singular.	Dual.
نَفَعَلُ	أَفَعَلُ	تَفَعَلَانِ	نَفَعَلُونَ	تَفَعَلُ	تَفَعَلَانِ	يَفَعَلُونَ	يَفَعَلُ	يَفَعَلَانِ
نَبَدُ	أَبَدُ	تَبَدَانِ	نَبَدُونَ	تَبَدُ	تَبَدَانِ	يَبَدُونَ	يَبَدُ	يَبَدَانِ
نَأْكَلُ	أَأْكَلُ	تَأْكَلَانِ	نَأْكَلُونَ	تَأْكَلُ	تَأْكَلَانِ	يَأْكَلُونَ	يَأْكَلُ	يَأْكَلَانِ
نَسْأَلُ	أَسْأَلُ	تَسْأَلَانِ	نَسْأَلُونَ	تَسْأَلُ	تَسْأَلَانِ	يَسْأَلُونَ	يَسْأَلُ	يَسْأَلَانِ
نَقْرَأُ	أَقْرَأُ	تَقْرَأَانِ	نَقْرَأُونَ	تَقْرَأُ	تَقْرَأَانِ	يَقْرَأُونَ	يَقْرَأُ	يَقْرَأَانِ
نَعِدُ	أَعِدُ	تَعِدَانِ	نَعِدُونَ	تَعِدُ	تَعِدَانِ	يَعِدُونَ	يَعِدُ	يَعِدَانِ
نَيْسِرُ	أَيْسِرُ	تَيْسِرَانِ	نَيْسِرُونَ	تَيْسِرُ	تَيْسِرَانِ	يَيْسِرُونَ	يَيْسِرُ	يَيْسِرَانِ
نَخَافُ	أَخَافُ	تَخَافَانِ	نَخَافُونَ	تَخَافُ	تَخَافَانِ	يَخَافُونَ	يَخَافُ	يَخَافَانِ
نُرْمِي	أُرْمِي	تُرْمِيَانِ	نُرْمُونَ	تُرْمِي	تُرْمِيَانِ	يُرْمُونَ	يُرْمِي	يُرْمِيَانِ
نَخْشِي	أَخْشِي	تَخْشِيَانِ	نَخْشُونَ	تَخْشِي	تَخْشِيَانِ	يَخْشُونَ	يَخْشِي	يَخْشِيَانِ
نَفِي	أَفِي	تَفِيَانِ	نَفُونَ	تَفِي	تَفِيَانِ	يَفُونَ	يَفِي	يَفِيَانِ
نَطْرِي	أَطْرِي	تَطْرِيَانِ	نَطْرُونَ	تَطْرِي	تَطْرِيَانِ	يَطْرُونَ	يَطْرِي	يَطْرِيَانِ

IMPERATIVE ACTIVE.

Plural.	Dual.	Singular.	
افْعَلُوا	افْعَلَا	افْعَلْ	سَالِم
اُمْدُدُنْ	مُدَّا	مُدْ	مُضَاعَف
كُلُوا	كُلَا	كُلْ	مَهْمُوزُ الْفَاءِ
سَلُّوا	سَلَّا	سَلْ	
اسْأَلُوا	اسْأَلَا	اسْأَلْ	العَيْنِ
اقْرَأُوا	اقْرَأَا	اقْرَأْ	الْكَامِ
عِدُوا	عِدَا	عِدْ	مِثَالِ وَاوِي
اُوسِرُوا	اُوسِرَا	اُوسِرْ	مِثَالِ يَأْتِي
خَفُوا	خَافَا	خَفْ	أَجَوْفِ
ارْمُوا	ارْمِيَا	ارْمِ	نَاقِصِ
اخْشُوا	اخْشِيَا	اخْشِ	
فُوا	فِيَا	فِ	لَفِيْفِ مَفْرُوقِ
اطْرُوا	اطْرِيَا	اطْرِ	مَقْرُونِ

PRETERITE ACTIVE.

1st PERSON.		2nd PERSON.				3rd PERSON.							
Plural. Singular.		Plural.		Dual.		Singular.		Plural.		Dual.		Singular.	
أَمِنَّا	أَمِنْتُ	أَمِنْتُمْ	أَمِنْتُمْ	أَمِنْتُمَا	أَمِنْتُمَا	أَمِنْتُمْ	أَمِنْتُمْ	أَمِنْتُمْ	أَمِنْتُمْ	أَمِنْتُمْ	أَمِنْتُمْ	أَمِنْتُمْ	أَمِنْتُمْ
لَوَمْنَا	لَوَمْتُ	لَوَمْتُمْ	لَوَمْتُمْ	لَوَمْتُمَا	لَوَمْتُمَا	لَوَمْتُمْ	لَوَمْتُمْ	لَوَمْتُمْ	لَوَمْتُمْ	لَوَمْتُمْ	لَوَمْتُمْ	لَوَمْتُمْ	لَوَمْتُمْ
رَأَيْنَا	رَأَيْتُ	رَأَيْتُمْ	رَأَيْتُمْ	رَأَيْتُمَا	رَأَيْتُمَا	رَأَيْتُمْ	رَأَيْتُمْ	رَأَيْتُمْ	رَأَيْتُمْ	رَأَيْتُمْ	رَأَيْتُمْ	رَأَيْتُمْ	رَأَيْتُمْ
بَرَرْنَا	بَرَرْتُ	بَرَرْتُمْ	بَرَرْتُمْ	بَرَرْتُمَا	بَرَرْتُمَا	بَرَرْتُمْ	بَرَرْتُمْ	بَرَرْتُمْ	بَرَرْتُمْ	بَرَرْتُمْ	بَرَرْتُمْ	بَرَرْتُمْ	بَرَرْتُمْ
بَعَا	بَعَيْتُ	بَعَيْتُمْ	بَعَيْتُمْ	بَعَيْتُمَا	بَعَيْتُمَا	بَعَيْتُمْ	بَعَيْتُمْ	بَعَيْتُمْ	بَعَيْتُمْ	بَعَيْتُمْ	بَعَيْتُمْ	بَعَيْتُمْ	بَعَيْتُمْ
عَزَوْنَا	عَزَوْتُ	عَزَوْتُمْ	عَزَوْتُمْ	عَزَوْتُمَا	عَزَوْتُمَا	عَزَوْتُمْ	عَزَوْتُمْ	عَزَوْتُمْ	عَزَوْتُمْ	عَزَوْتُمْ	عَزَوْتُمْ	عَزَوْتُمْ	عَزَوْتُمْ
حَبِينَا	حَبَيْتُ	حَبَيْتُمْ	حَبَيْتُمْ	حَبَيْتُمَا	حَبَيْتُمَا	حَبَيْتُمْ	حَبَيْتُمْ	حَبَيْتُمْ	حَبَيْتُمْ	حَبَيْتُمْ	حَبَيْتُمْ	حَبَيْتُمْ	حَبَيْتُمْ

AORIST ACTIVE.

1st PERSON.	2nd PERSON.			3rd PERSON.		
	Plural.	Dual.	Singular.	Plural.	Dual.	Singular.
Plural Singular.						
تَأْمَنُ تَلْمُومُ تَرَى تَبْرَأُ تَبِيعُ تَفْزُو تَحْيَا	تَأْمَنُونَ تَلْمُومُونَ تَرَوْنَ تَبْرَأُونَ تَبِيعُونَ تَفْزُونَ تَحْيَوْنَ	تَأْمَنَانِ تَلْمُومَانِ تَرَيَانِ تَبْرَأَانِ تَبِيعَانِ تَفْزَرَانِ تَحْيَيَانِ	تَأْمَنُ تَلْمُومُ تَرَى تَبْرَأُ تَبِيعُ تَفْزُو تَحْيَا	تَأْمَنَانِ تَلْمُومَانِ تَرَيَانِ تَبْرَأَانِ تَبِيعَانِ تَفْزَرَانِ تَحْيَيَانِ	تَأْمَنُ تَلْمُومُ تَرَى تَبْرَأُ تَبِيعُ تَفْزُو تَحْيَا	تَأْمَنُ تَلْمُومُ تَرَى تَبْرَأُ تَبِيعُ تَفْزُو تَحْيَا

IMPERATIVE ACTIVE.

Plural.	Dual.	Singular.
أَلْمُومُوا أَلْمُومِنَ	أَلْمُومَا	أَلْمُومِي أَلْمُومِ
رَوَا رَوَيْنَ	رَوِيَا	رَوِي رَوِ
إِبْرَأُوا إِبْرَأِنَ	إِبْرَأَا	إِبْرَأِي إِبْرَأِ
بِيعُوا بِيعِنَ	بِيعَا	بِيعِي بِيعِ
أَغْرُوا أَغْرُونَ	أَغْرُوا	أَغْرِي أَغْرِ
إِخِيُوا إِخِيِنَ	إِخِيَا	إِخِيِي إِخِيِ

MEANINGS OF THE DERIVED FORMS.

فَعَّلَ

I. *This measure makes Intransitive Verbs Transitive and Transitive Verbs Causative (مُتَعَدِّيَةٌ).*

To deliver	نَجَّى	To escape	نَجَا
To make secure	سَلَّمَ	To be secure	سَلِمَ
To multiply	كَثَّرَ	To abound	كَثُرَ
To put to flight	هَرَّبَ	To flee	هَرَبَ

II. *Expresses Intensity (لِلْكَثْرَةِ).*

I cut the rope in pieces	قَطَّعْتُ الْكَبْلَ
I shattered the glass	كَسَّرْتُ الرَّجَاجَ
He wounded himself severely	جَرَحَ جِسْمَهُ
Many camels died	مَوْتَتِ الْإِبِلِ
Many sheep lambed	وَلَدَتِ الْغَنَمُ

Many trees blossomed فَرَّخَ الشَّجَرُ
 Many camels kneeled down بَرَكَّتِ النَّعَمُ
 I shut many doors غَلَقْتُ أَبْوَابًا
 "We have made the earth bring

forth many fountains" فَجَرْنَا الْأَرْضَ عَيْنًا

III. *Makes a Verb of a Noun* لِاتِّخَاذِ الْفِعْلِ مِنَ الْأِسْمِ

To pitch a tent	خَيَّمَ (خَيْمَةٌ tent)
To paint	صَوَّرَ (صُورَةٌ picture)
To petrify	حَجَّرَ (حَجَرٌ stone)
To collect troops	جَيَّشَ (جَيْشٌ army)
To cast a horoscope	نَجَّمَ (نَجْمٌ star)
To gild	ذَهَّبَ (ذَهَبٌ gold)
To make dusty	غَبَّرَ (غُبَارٌ dust)
To plaster	كَلَّسَ (كَلْسٌ lime)
” ”	جَصَّصَ (جَصٌّ cement)
To specify	نَوَّعَ (نَوْعٌ kind)
To assimilate	جَنَّسَ (جِنْسٌ genus)
To soil	تَرَبَّ (تُرَابٌ dust)

فَاعِلٌ

This measure is invariably *Transitive* and conveys the idea of:

I. *Reciprocal Action* between the *Agent and Object* of the Verb.

To fight with صَارَبَ To accompany رَافَقَ

To converse	حَادَثَ	To smite	لَاطَمَ
To address	خَاطَبَ	To quarrel with	خَاصَمَ
To fight with	حَارَبَ	To summon	حَاكَمَ
To share „	شَارَكَ	To live peaceably with	سَالَمَ
To fight „	قَاتَلَ	To correspond „	كَاتَبَ
To accompany	صَاحَبَ		

II. Competition لِلْمُغَالَبَةِ.

To compete with in running	جَارَى
To compete with in (knowledge)	فَاخَرَ فِي (الْعِلْمِ)
To compete with in wrestling	صَارَعَ
To compete with in writing	جَارَيْتُهُ فِي الْكِتَابَةِ
I tried to overcome him in argument	غَلَبْتُهُ فِي الْجِدَالِ
To emulate (honour)	شَارَفَ

To circumvent	مَاكَرَ	To induce to err	غَاوَى
To deceive	خَادَعَ	To ensnare	كَأَيَدَ

III. Dealing. Some verbs on this measure express the action of the state implied in the Trilateral الْمُعَامَلَةُ.

To deal kindly	لَاطَفَ	To be kind	لَطِفَ
To deal gently	لَايَنَ	To be gentle	لَانَ
To deal roughly	خَاشَنَ	To be rough	خَشِنَ
To deal pleasantly	آنَسَ	To be affable	أَنَّسَ

IV. Simple Action of فَعَلَ (بِمَعْنَى الثَّلَاثِيَّ).

To bless	بَارَكَ	To continue	دَامَ
----------	---------	-------------	-------

To be hypocritical in religion نَافِقٌ To travel سَافَرَ

V. *Repetition المَرَّاجِعَةُ*.

To try to do a thing repeatedly حَاوَلَ

To return frequently عَاوَدَ

To demand repeatedly طَالَبَ

To put off repeatedly مَاطَلَ

To review رَاجَعَ

VI. *The meaning of أَفْعَلٌ (بِمَعْنَى أَفْعَلٌ)*.

To resemble شَابَهُ = أَشْبَهَ

May God give you health عَافَاكَ اللَّهُ = أَعْفَاكَ اللَّهُ

To lend or borrow دَايَنَ = أَدَانَ

VII. *Some Trilateral Intransitive verbs which require a preposition to make them Transitive are expressed on this measure without the preposition.*

He sat with the prince جَالَسَ الْأَمِيرَ , جَلَسَ مَعَ الْأَمِيرِ

He wrote to him كَاتَبَهُ , كَتَبَ لَهُ

To converse كَاتَمَ He attacked him رَاقَعَهُ

To address خَاطَبَ To fall (وَقَعَ)

VIII. *فَاعَلَ when formed from the Noun of Time means to transact business in that time.*

Day يَوْمٌ To hire by the day يَوْمًا

Night لَيْلٌ " " " " night لَيْلًا

Month شَهْرٌ " " " " month شَاهَرًا

Year عَامٌ " " " " year عَاوَمًا

Hour سَاعَةٌ " " " " hour سَاوَعًا

Summer	صَيْفٌ	To hire for the summer	صَايَفَ
Winter	شَيْتَاءٌ	” ” ” ” winter	شَاتَى

IX. *فَاعِلٌ* is sometimes formed from the names of the members of the body.

Fore-arm	سَاعِدٌ	to help	سَاعَدَ
Upper-arm	عَضِدٌ	” ”	عَاوَدَ
Back	ظَهْرٌ	to aid	ظَاهَرَ
Waist	أَزْرٌ	to strengthen	أَزَّرَ
Shoulder	كَتِفٌ	to walk by the side	كَاتَفَ
Waist	خَصْرٌ	” ” ” ” ”	خَاوَرَ
Side	جَنْبٌ	” stand ” ” ”	جَانَبَ
Neck	عُنُقٌ	” embrace	عَانَقَ
Face	وَجْهٌ	” meet face to face	وَاجَهَ
Lip	شَفَاةٌ	” speak with	شَاوَهَ

أَفْعَلٌ

I. *Trilateral Intransitive Verbs generally become either Transitive or Causative on this measure.*

To cause to come down	أَنْزَلَ	To come down	نَزَلَ
To cause to enter	أَدْخَلَ	To enter	دَخَلَ
To bring in	أَخْضَرَ	To be present	حَضَرَ
To cause to be distant	أَبْعَدَ	To be distant	بَعَدَ
To fulfil	أَتَمَّ	To be fulfilled	تَمَّ

II. *If they are originally Transitive they may take two Objects instead of one and three if they had two.*

I put a ring upon him	أَلْبَسْتُهُ خَاتَمًا
I shewed him Zaid standing	أَرَيْتُهُ زَيْدًا وَاقِفًا
He saw Zaid standing	رَأَى زَيْدًا وَاقِفًا
I informed Zaid that Amr was standing	أَعْلَمْتُ زَيْدًا عَمْرًا وَاقِفًا

III. *Finding لِلرَّوْجِدَانِ.*

I found him or it good	أَحْسَنْتُهُ
I found him praiseworthy	أَحْمَدْتُهُ
He found the matter great	أَكْبَرَ الْأَمْرَ
He found the matter important	أَعْظَمَ الْأَمْرَ

IV. *Change لِلتَّغْيِيرِ.*

The land became sterile	أَجْدَبَتِ الْأَرْضُ
The land became desolate	أَقْفَرَتِ الْأَرْضُ
The water became putrid	أَنْتَنَ الْمَاءُ
The man became humpbacked	أَحْدَبَ الرَّجُلُ
The dog suffered from the mange	أَجْرَبَ الْكَلْبُ

V. *Motion to لِلقَّصْدِ.*

To approach (face) أَقْبَلَ	To go to Nejd أَنْجَدَ
To retreat (turn back) أَدْبَرَ	To go to Yemen أَيْمَنَ

VI. *Abundance لِلكَثْرَةِ.*

He inflicted severe wounds	أَنْكَحَنَ جِرَاحَهُ
He gave him much to do	أَشْفَلَهُ

VII. *To be in season, the proper time* لِلْحَيْثُونَةِ.

The crops became ripe for harvesting أَحْصَدَ الزَّرْعُ

The child attained the age for weaning أَنْطَمَ الْوَلَدُ

The foal became fit for riding أَرْكَبَ الْمَهْرُ

To be in spring أَرْبَعٌ To be in autumn أَخْرَبَ

To be in summer أَصَافٌ To be in winter أَشْتَى

VIII. The following Verbs have the *same meaning in both forms* فَعَلَ and أَفْعَلَ.

To light ضَاءَ أَضَاءَ To commit crime جَرَمَ أَجْرَمَ

To shed blood هَرَقَ أَهْرَقَ To string سَلَكَ أَسْلَكَ

To ripen (fruit) يَنَعَ أَينَعَ

تَفَعَّلَ

I. *Consequence of the first Derivative* لِبُطَارَعَةٍ فَعَّلَ.

He taught عَلَّمَ He learned تَعَلَّمَ

He sent forward قَدَّمَ He advanced تَقَدَّمَ

He cut in pieces قَطَّمَ It was cut تَقَطَّمَ

He scattered فَرَّقَ It was scattered تَفَرَّقَ

He justified بَرَّرَ He was justified تَبَرَّرَ

He made innocent بَرَّأَ He was counted innocent تَبَرَّأَ

II. *Appropriation* لِلِاتِّحَانِ.

To take a wife تَزَوَّجَ To take a stone as a

To take a son تَبَنَّى pillow تَوَسَّدَ حَجَرًا

To take a garment تَرَدَّى To take a body تَجَسَّدَ

To take dinner تَغَدَّى To take possession of تَمَلَّكَ

To take nourishment	تَغَدَّى	To gird on a sword	تَقَلَّدَ
To take a name	تَسَمَّى	To take arms	تَسَلَّمَ
To take under the		To enslave, serve	تَعَبَّدَ
arm	تَأَبَّطَ (إِبْطَ)	To entrust	تَوَلَّى
		To serve	تَخَدَّمَ

III. Gradation لِلتَّدرِجِ.

To proceed by degrees			تَدَرَّجَ
He learned science, branch			
after branch			تَعَلَّمَ الْعِلْمَ فَرَعًا فَرَعًا
He had a military training			تَدَرَّبَ فِي الْفُنُونِ الْعَسْكَرِيَّةِ
To advance step by step			تَقَدَّمَ (قَدَمَ)
To walk gradually			تَمَشَّى
The well was filled by degrees			تَمَلَأَ الْبَيْرُ
(To be filled)			إِمْتَلَأَ
To be elevated	تَرَقَّى	To be trained	تَطَرَّجَ
To watch continuously	تَرَقَّبَ	To pursue (heel عَقِبَ)	تَعَقَّبَ
He attended to the matter continually			تَدَبَّرَ الْأَمْرَ
(As though we said)			كَانَ يُدَبِّرُ الْأَمْرَ
To fall behind gradually			تَخَلَّفَ
To be strengthened by degrees			تَقَوَّى
To act with deliberation			تَتَبَّتَ
To continue expecting			تَوَقَّعَ
To improve			تَحَسَّنَ
To follow persistently			تَتَبَعَ

IV. *Change* لِلتَّحْوِيلِ.

The matter was changed

تَغَيَّرَ الْأَمْرُ

The question was transferred

تَحَوَّلَتِ الْمَسْأَلَةُ

The clay became stone

تَحَجَّرَ الطِّينُ

The water became muddy

تَكَدَّرَ الْمَاءُ

To become hard

تَصَلَّبَ

The water froze

تَجَلَّدَ الْمَاءُ

The affairs improved

تَحَسَّنَتِ الْأَحْوَالُ

V. *Affectation* لِلتَّكْلِيفِ.

The coward affected courage

تَشَجَّعَ الْجَبَّانُ

The sick one simulated patience
and endurance

تَجَدَّدَ الْمَرِيضُ

The sorrowful one affected patience

تَصَبَّرَ الْكَرِيمُ

To be manly

تَرَجَّلَ

Many verbs on this measure may have this meaning when used in certain senses, as

The boy affected politeness before
the prince

تَادَبَ الْغُلَامُ أَمَامَ الْأَمِيرِ

نَفَاعَلٌ

I. *Expresses the consequence of* نَفَاعَلٌ (بِطَارِعَةِ فَاعَلٍ).

It conveys the idea of Reciprocal Action between the Agents of the Verb.

Zaid and Amr became partners

تَشَارَكَ زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرُو

To help one another	تَعَاوَنَ
To love one another	تَحَابَّبَ
To greet one another (reconciliation)	تَصَانَعَ
To be neighbours	تَجَاوَزَ
To covenant together	تَعَاهَدَ
To accompany one another	تَصَاحَبَ
To exchange greetings	تَبَارَكَ
To consult together	تَأَمَّرَ

II. *Feigning* لِلتَّطَاهُرِ.

To feign death	تَمَاوَتَ	To feign blindness	تَعَايَى
„ „ occupation	تَشَاغَلَ	„ „ sickness	تَمَارَضَ
„ „ ignorance	تَجَاهَلَ		

III. *Increase* لِلتَّكَاثُرِ.

The evil increased	تَفَاعَمَ الشَّرُّ
The clouds became dense	تَكَاثَفَ الْغَيْمُ
Afflictions pressed upon me	تَتَابَعَتْ عَلَيَّ الْمَصَائِبُ
Many people kept coming	تَوَارَدَ الْقَوْمُ
The enemy increased	تَكَاثَرَ الْعَدُوُّ
To be closely packed	تَرَاكَمَ

IV. *Repetition of the act* لِتِكْرَارِ رُفُوعِ الْفِعْلِ.

To fall one by one	تَلَاعَبَ	To scoff	تَلَاهَى
(leaves)	تَسَاقَطَ	To divert oneself	تَعَاوَفَ
To sway	تَمَايَلَ	To be affectionate	تَرَاجَعَ
To waddle	تَهَادَى	To return by degrees	

To follow a pro- fession	تَعَاطَى	To hold aloof	تَقَاعَى
-----------------------------	----------	---------------	----------

إِنْفَعَلَ

Expresses the Consequence of فَعَلَ and is always Passive.

The ship was wrecked	إِنكسرت السفينة
The house fell down	إنهدم البيت
The rope was cut	إنقطع الحبل
The writing was effaced	إنمكت الكتابة (إنمكت)
The water was poured out	إنصب الماء
The prophet was troubled	إنزعج النبي
The army was defeated	إنغلب الجيش
He was gathered to his fathers	إنضم إلى آباءه
The cloth was folded	إنطوى القماش
The light was extinguished	إنطفأ النور
The disciples went to the house	إنصرف التلاميذ إلى البيت

إِذْنَعَلَ

This form is *generally Passive or Reflexive.*

I. It expresses the *consequence of فَعَلَ (المُطَاوَعَةُ فَعَلٌ).*

To gather	جَمَعَ	To be gathered	اجتمع
To mix	مَرَجَ	To be mixed	امتزج
To spread	نَشَرَ	To be spread (news)	انتشر
To spread	مَدَّ	do.	امتد

To burn	حَرَقَ	To be burnt	اِحْتَرَقَ
To restore	رَدَّ	To be restored	اِرْتَدَّ

II. Reflexive لِلِاِتِّخَانِ.

To gather wood	اِحْتَطَبَ	To take an apprentice	اِصْطَنَعَ
To engage a cook	اِطْبَحَ	To milk	اِحْتَلَبَ
To take hold of	اِسْتَلَمَ	To take a servant	اِحْتَدَمَ
To follow a craft	اِحْتَرَفَ	To gain	اِكْتَسَبَ
To buy	اِشْتَرَى, اِبْتَاعَ	To bake bread (for oneself)	اِحْتَبَزَ

III. Meaning of تَفَاعَلٍ.

To fight together	اِقْتَتَلَ	To divide between	اِقْتَسَمَ
To strive together	اِحْتَصَمَ	To meet together	اِلْتَقَى

اِفْعَلٌ

Fixed Colours and Defects (لِلْاَلْوَانِ وَالْعُيُوبِ).

To be red	اِحْمَرَّ	To be brown	اِسْمَرَ
To be black	اِسْوَدَّ	To be blue	اِزْزَقَ
To be green	اِخْضَرَ	To be one-eyed	اِعْوَرَ
To be white	اِابْيَضَّ	To be crooked	اِعْوَجَّ

اِسْتَفْعَلٌ

I. Request لِلطَّلَبِ.

To ask forgiveness	اِسْتَفْرَرَ	To seek to copy	اِسْتَنْسَخَ
--------------------	--------------	-----------------	--------------

To ask permission	اِسْتَأْذَنَ	To seek help	اِسْتَعَانَ
To borrow something	اِسْتَعَارَ	To seek protection	اِسْتَجَارَ
To borrow „	اِسْتَقْرَضَ	To seek reinforce-	
To borrow money	اِسْتَدَانَ	ments	اِسْتَنْجَدَ

II. *Finding and Believing* لِلرَّوْجِدَانِ وَالْاِعْتِقَادِ.

He found his answer good	اِسْتَحْسَنَ جَوَابَهُ
He found the house large	اِسْتَكْبَرَ الدَّارَ
He believed the oath to be lawful	اِسْتَحَدَّ الْقَسَمَ
He found the matter important	اِسْتَعْظَمَ الْأَمْرَ
He found the boy lovable	اِسْتَحَبَّ الْغُلَامَ
He found the army great	اِسْتَكْثَرَ الْجَيْشَ
He found his intellect small	اِسْتَصْغَرَ عَقْلَهُ
I found thy disposition sweet	اِسْتَحْلَيْتُ طِبَاعَكَ
I found his speech vile	اِسْتَقْبَحْتُ كَلَامَهُ
He believed in his generosity	اِسْتَجَادَهُ
He despised him	اِسْتَحْفَ بِهِ
I found study wearisome	اِسْتَقْلْتُ الدَّرْسَ

III. *Submission* لِلتَّسْلِيمِ وَالْاِتِّخَادِ.

To surrender	اِسْتَسَلَمَ	To take as captive	اِسْتَأْسَرَ
To take or become a slave	اِسْتَعْبَدَ		
To take or become a slave	اِسْتَرْقَى		

IV. *Change* لِلتَّحَوُّلِ.

The crooked became straight	اِسْتَقَامَ الْمَعْرُوجُ
-----------------------------	--------------------------

The clay became hard اسْتَحَجَرَ الطِّينُ
To be transformed اسْتَحَالَ

أَفْعَالٌ

This form intensifies the meaning of أَفْعَلَ.

To be intensely red أَحْمَرًا To be white أَيْبَاصًا

أَفْعَوْعَلٌ

Intensity and Beginning لِلْمَبَالِغَةِ وَالْإِبْتِدَاءِ

To be humpbacked أَحْدَوْدَبَ

To become rough أَحْشَوْشَنَ

It was about to rain أَحْلَوْلَقَتِ السَّمَاءُ أَنْ تَمْطَرَ

The fruit became ripe أَحْلَوْلَى التَّمْرُ

The man stooped أَحْقَوْقَفَ ظَهْرُ الرَّجُلِ

The earth became covered with verdure أَحْشَوْشَبَتِ الْأَرْضُ

إِفْعَوْلٌ

Expresses great Intensity.

To be heavy أَغْلَوْدًا To be long or last long أَخْرَوِّطًا

مُشْتَقَّاتُ الْفِعْلِ

DERIVATIVE NOUNS.

THE FOLLOWING NOUNS ARE DERIVED FROM THE VERB: —

NAMES.	MEASURES.	
	TRILITERAL.	DERIVED.
Noun of Action.	المَصْدَرُ	Special.
Noun of Unity.	مَصْدَرُ الْوَحْدَةِ	§ to Masdar.
Noun of Species.	مَصْدَرُ النَّوْعِ	As Noun of Unity with qualifying expression.
Noun of Action with م.	المَصْدَرُ الْبِنْيَئِيُّ	م...مَل
Noun of Agent.	اسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ	م...مَل
Adjective Resembling the Agent.	الصِّفَةُ الْمُشَبَّهَةُ بِاسْمِ الْفَاعِلِ	م...مَل
Noun of Superiority.	اسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ
Noun of Excess.	اسْمُ التَّبَالُغِ
Noun of Object.	اسْمُ الْمَفْعُولِ	م...مَل
The Measures	فِعْيَلٌ، فَعُولٌ
Noun of Time and Place.	اسْمُ الْمَكَانِ وَالزَّمَانِ	م...مَل
Noun of Instrument.	اسْمُ الْأَلَةِ

THE NOUN OF ACTION. **المَصْدَرُ**

The word **مَصْدَر** is the Noun of Place from **صَدَرَ** to arise.

It is so called because it is regarded as the source of the verb and the derivative nouns. It expresses mere action, state, or being of the verb, and is unlimited by subject, object, or time; as

beating **ضَرْبٌ** sleeping **نَوْمٌ** ease **سُهُولَةٌ**

The Noun of Action is never made feminine; but if it should express number or kind, it is rendered into dual or plural; as

I struck him	I struck him
twice ضَرْبَتُهُ ضَرْبَتَيْنِ	blows ضَرْبَاتُهُ ضَرْبَاتٍ

It is often used with its own verb to strengthen the meaning of the verb; as

I beat him	I killed him
severely ضَرْبَتُهُ ضَرْبًا	outright قَتَلْتُهُ قَتْلًا
I fled outright هَرَبْتُ هَرَبًا	

It is sometimes used as an adjective, and as a common noun; as

a righteous man	a holy spirit	
		رُوحٌ قُدْسٌ
letter	building	بِنَاءٌ
		تَخْرِيرٌ

It is formed from both transitive and intransitive verbs.

From trilateral verbs it is irregular in its formation. Some twenty-three measures are in common use. A verb may have several Nouns of Action especially if it has dif-

ferent shades of meaning which may be indicated by the different vowels employed on the ع of the preterite.

The following measures are the most common:

فَعَلَ	is formed from transitive verbs on the measures	فَعَلَ, فَعِلَ
فُعِلَ	„ „ „ intransitive „ „ „ „	فَعَلَ
فَعِلَ	„ „ „ „ „ „ „ „	فَعَلَ
فَعَالَةٌ	are „ „ „ „ „ „ „ „	فَعَلَ
فُعُولَةٌ		

فَعَالَةٌ expresses trades and offices.

فَعَالَ expresses ailments.

فَعَلَانٌ expresses violent or continuous motion.

فَعِيلٌ expresses change of place.

فَعَالٌ, فَعِيلٌ express sounds.

فَعَالَ expresses flight and refusal.

فَعَالَةٌ expresses colour in the abstract.

In the derived forms of the verb and the quadrilateral special measures are employed:

(See glossary).

فَعَلَ	takes	تَفَعَّلَ or تَفَعَّلَ	سَلَّمَ	to make safe	تَسَلَّمَ or تَسَلَّمَ
قَدَّمَ	to offer	تَقَدَّمَ „ تَقَدَّمَ	سَلَّمَ	„ arm, equip	تَسَلَّمَ „ تَسَلَّمَ

Verbs weak on the medial radical (الأجوف) take the measure تَفَعَّلَ only:

نَوَّمَ	to make to sleep	تَنَوَّمَ	قَوَّمَ	to straighten	تَقَوَّمَ
بَيَّضَ	„ whiten	تَبَيَّضَ	هَيَّجَ	„ agitate	تَهَيَّجَ
سَوَّدَ	„ blacken	تَسَوَّدَ	سَيَّجَ	„ fence	تَسَيَّجَ

تَشِيدَ to establish	تَشْيِيدَ	تَحْوِيلَ to change into	تَحْوِيلَ
تَيَّدَ ,, bind	تَقْيِيدَ		

Defective Verbs and those whose final radical is hemzeh take the measure تَفْعِلَةٌ only; as

رَكَّى to justify	تَرْكِيَةٌ	سَوَّى to equalize	تَسْوِيَةٌ
سَلَّى ,, divert (mind)	تَسْلِيَةٌ	هَيَّأ ,, prepare	تَهْيِئَةٌ
سَمَّى ,, name	تَسْمِيَةٌ	هَنَّأ ,, congratulate	تَهْنِئَةٌ
قَوَّى ,, strengthen	تَقْوِيَةٌ	جَرَّأ ,, apportion	تَجْرِئَةٌ

فَاعِلٌ takes the measure نَعَالٍ or مُفَاعَلَةٌ; as

قَاتَلَ to fight قِتَالٌ or مُقَاتَلَةٌ warfare.

حَارَبَ ,, ,, (حِرَابٌ) or مُحَارَبَةٌ warfare.

ضَارَبَ ,, ,, (ضِرَابٌ) or مُضَارَبَةٌ (blows).

خَالَفَ ,, oppose خِلَافٌ or مُخَالَفَةٌ opposition.

نَاقَصَ ,, contradict (نِقَاصٌ) or مُنَاقَصَةٌ contradiction.

سَالَمَ ,, make peace with (سِلَامٌ) or مُسَالَمَةٌ.

جَاهَدَ ,, wage war against infidels جِهَادٌ or مُجَاهَدَةٌ.

جَادَلَ ,, dispute جِدَالٌ or مُجَادَلَةٌ disputation.

(Not every verb has both forms in use).

Verbs which begin with servile ة تَفَاعَلٌ (تَفَعَّلَ) have

2 on the penultimate consonant; as

تَقَدَّمَ to advance	تَقَدَّمٌ	تَقَدَّمَ progress.
تَعَجَّبَ ,, wonder	تَعَجَّبٌ	تَعَجَّبَ wonder.
تَقَاتَلَ ,, fight together	تَقَاتَلٌ	
تَظَاهَرَ ,, pretend	تَظَاهَرٌ	تَظَاهَرَ pretence.

تَصَوَّرَ to imagine	تَصَوُّرٌ imagination.
تَوَاضَعَ ,, be humble	تَوَاضُعٌ humility.
تَدَاخَلَ ,, interfere	تَدَاخُلٌ interference.
تَدَخَّرَجَ ,, roll	تَدَخُّرَجٌ rolling.

Derived forms of the verb beginning with أ , إ , and the quadriliteral, insert an ا before the final radical and give ـ to every vowelled letter preceding the ا .

The penultimate consonant takes ـ ; as

أَحْسَنَ to do good	إِحْسَانٌ charity.
أَكْرَمَ ,, honour	إِكْرَامٌ honour.
أَسْرَفَ ,, squander	إِسْرَافٌ prodigality.
أَقْنَعَ ,, convince	إِقْنَاعٌ convincing.
أَنْقَادَ ,, be led	أَنْقِيَادٌ being led.
أَنْكَسَرَ ,, be defeated, broken	أَنْكِسَارٌ defeat.
أَتَّحَدَ ,, be united	أِتِّحَادٌ unity.
أَتَّخَذَ ,, take possession	أِتِّخَاذٌ assumption.
أَسْوَدَ ,, be black	أِسْوَادٌ blackness.
أَسْتَعَدَّ ,, make oneself ready	أِسْتِعْدَادٌ preparation.
أَسْتَقَامَ ,, be upright	أِسْتِقَامَةٌ uprightness.
أَسْتَفْهَمَ ,, seek to understand	أِسْتِفْهَامٌ
أَتَمَّ ,, fulfil	أِتْمَامٌ fulfilment.
أَعْلَنَ ,, reveal	إِعْلَانٌ revelation.
أَلْهَمَ ,, inspire	إِلْهَامٌ inspiration.
آمَنَ ,, believe	إِيْمَانٌ faith.

إِنطَلَقَ	to depart	إِنطِلَاقٌ	departure.
إِنقَلَبَ	„ be overthrown	إِنقِلَابٌ	overthrow
إِنتَدَأَ	„ begin	إِنتِدَاءٌ	commencement.
إِجتهَدَ	„ be diligent	إِجْتِهَادٌ	diligence.
إِحْمَرَّ	„ be red	إِحْمِرَارٌ	redness.
إِسْتَعْمَلَ	„ use	إِسْتِعْمَالٌ	use.
إِسْتَفَادَ	„ profit	إِسْتِفَادَةٌ	profit.
إِسْتَحَقَّ	„ be worthy	إِسْتِحْقَاقٌ	merit.

It will be seen from the foregoing examples that the Noun of Action is very frequently used as a noun.

NOUN OF UNITY. مَصْدَرُ الْأَمْرَةِ.

The Noun of Unity expresses the doing of an action once (مَرَّةً).

If is formed from trilateral verbs on the measure *فَعْلَةٌ* i. e. by affixing the ة of unity to the Noun of Action on the measure *فَعْلٌ*; as

I struck him one blow *فَصْرَبْتُهُ صَرْبَةً*.

The act of

helping	نَصْرَةٌ		killing	قَتْلَةٌ		dying	مَيْتَةٌ
sitting	قَعْدَةٌ		rejoicing	فَرْحَةٌ		fleeing	فَرَّةٌ
drinking	شَرْبَةٌ	once.					

In the derived forms of the verb the Noun of Unity is expressed on the measure of the ordinary *Maşdar* with ة affixed; as

I honoured him once أَكْرَمْتُهُ إِكْرَامَةً

When the ordinary Maṣdar ends with ة as in the derived forms of the أَجْرَفُ a word to limit its meaning is placed after it; as

I raised him once only أَقَمْتُهُ إِقَامَةً وَاحِدَةً

I pitied him once رَحِمْتُهُ رَحْمَةً لَا غَيْرَ

I invited him once only دَعَوْتُهُ دَعْوَةً فَقَطْ

The dual and plural are formed in the usual way after suppressing the final ة; as

I struck him blows ضَرَبْتُهُ ضَرْبَاتٍ

I struck him two blows ضَرَبْتُهُ ضَرْبَتَيْنِ

NOUN OF SPECIES. مَصْدَرُ النَّوْعِ

The Noun of Species expresses the manner of doing the action which is indicated by the verb.

Triliteral verbs have the measure فَعَلَةٌ; as

I rode like the prince رَكِبْتُ رِكْبَةَ الْأَمِيرِ

I took a quick walk مَشَيْتُ مَشِيَةً مُسْتَعْجَلَةً

He died miserably مَاتَ مِيتَةً الشَّقِيِّ

He walked righteously سَارَ سَيْرَةَ الْبَارِ

He shouted like a lion صَرَخَ صَرْخَةَ الْأَسَدِ

The mode or style of

sitting	جَلَسَةٌ	laughing	ضَحْكَةٌ	standing	وَقْفَةٌ
sitting	تَعَدَّةٌ	running	رُكُضَةٌ	throwing	صَرْعَةٌ

Derived forms of the verb have the same measure as
1) the Noun of Unity or 2) the Noun of Action fol-
lowed by some qualifying expression.

- 1) I departed like the fearing one **اِنْطَلَقْتُ اِنْطِلَاقَةَ الْخَائِفِ**
I looked about like a fawn **اِنْتَفَتُّ اِنْتِفَاتَةَ الظَّنْبِي**
I praised God piously **سَبَّحْتُ اِللهَ تَسْبِيْحَةَ التَّقِي**
- 2) I loved him like a brother **اَحْبَبْتُهُ مَحَبَّةَ الْاَخِ لِاَخِيهِ**
I fought with him courageously **قَاتَلْتُهُ مَقَاتِلَةَ الشُّجَاعِ**
He trembled as with fear **ارْتَعَدَ ارْتِعَادَ الْخَائِفِ**

NOUN OF ACTION WITH **المَصْدَرُ الْمِيمِيُّ م.**

The Noun of Action with **م** has the same meaning
as the ordinary **Maṣdar**.

Trilateral Verbs have the measure **مَفْعَل**; as

Selling	مَبَاع	Speaking	مَنْطَق	Seeing	مَرَأَى
Growth	مَنْبَت	Taste	مَدَائ	Hearing	مَسْمَع
Result	مَال	Clothing	مَلْبَس	Beating	مَضْرَب
		Falling	مَرَوَع	Return	مَعَاد

Verbs beginning with **و**, and having **=** on the **ع** of
the Aorist take the measure **مَفْعِل**; as

وَعَدَ to promise	مَوْعِدَ يَعِدُ	وَرِثَ to inherit	مَوْرِثَ يَرِثُ inheriting.
وَقَفَ ,, stand	مَوْقِفَ يَقِفُ	وَصَلَ ,, join	مَوْصِلَ يَصِلُ joining.

The following words are exceptions to the preceding rule:

Walking	مَسِير	Coming	مَاجِي	Old age	مَشِيْب
Ending	مَصِير	Returning	مَرْجِع		

In all verbs of more than three letters the Noun of Action with م takes the measure of the Noun of Object; as

Rending	مُزِقْ	Trusting	مُتَكَلِّدْ	Spacious	مُتَسَّعْ
Praying	مُصَلِّيْ	Deducing	مُسْتَخْرِجْ	Recalling	مُسْتَرَدِّ
Proceeding	مُنْبِثِيْ	Overthrow	مُنْقَلِبْ	Equalization	مُعَدِّلْ
Stooping	مُنْحَنِيْ	End	مُنْتَهِيْ	Opening	مُنْفَتِحْ
Taking	مُتَّخِذْ	Deserving	مُسْتَحَقِّ	Wavering	مُتَقَلِّبْ
Summary	مُجْمَلْ	Neglect	مُتَهَاوِنْ		

A ة is sometimes added; as

Exhortation	مَوْعِظَةٌ	Hunger	مَجَاعَةٌ	Fear	مَخَافَةٌ
Consent	مَرَضَاةٌ	Humiliation	مَذَلَّةٌ	Excuse	مَعْدَرَةٌ
Pardon	مَغْفِرَةٌ				

THE NOUN OF AGENT OR ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ

The Noun of Agent expresses intermittent action only, and is formed from both transitive and intransitive verbs.

For trilaterals its measure is فَاعِلٍ; as

قَاتِلِ	one who kills.	قَائِلِ	one who says.
صَارِبِ	„ „ strikes.	آكِلِ	„ „ eats.
رَامِ	„ „ throws.	مَادِ	„ „ stretches.
جَالِسِ	„ „ sits.	سَائِلِ	„ „ asks.

بَائِع one who sells.	غَارٍ one who raids.
وَاعِد „ „ promises.	وَالٍ „ „ rules.

Verbs of more than three letters change the letter of the Aorist into م and vowel the penultimate consonant with =

مُقَدِّم قَدَّمَ offerer.	مُسَالِم سَالَمَ peaceful.
مُحْسِن أَحْسَن benefactor.	مُتَعَلِّم تَعَلَّمَ learner.
مُتَزَلِّل تَزَلَّلَ quaking.	مُتَكَارِب تَكَارَبَ mutual [warfare.
مُنْكَسِرٍ اِنْكَسَرَ broken.	مُحْتَبِلٍ اِحْتَبَلَ endurer.
مُدْخِرٍ دَخَرَ roller.	مُحْرَزِجٍ اِحْرَزَجَمَ pressing [(crowds).
مُخْمَرٍ اِخْمَرَ red.	مُسْتَحْسِنٍ اِسْتَحْسَنَ approver.
مُخْدَوِّبٍ اِخْدَوَّبَ hump- [backed.	مُقَشْعِرٍ اِتَشَعَّرَ shudder- [ing with horror.

THE ADJECTIVE RESEMBLING THE AGENT.

الصِّفَةُ الْمُشَبَّهَةُ بِاسْمِ الْفَاعِلِ

The Adjective resembling the Agent is an Adjective of quality, and is generally formed from neuter verbs on the measures فَعْلٌ يَفْعَلُ, فَعِلٌ يَفْعَلُ. These verbs express inherent and permanent qualities in persons or things, and therefore the adjectives where derived from them possess similar qualities. They are formed from trilateral verbs on various measures as follows:

Measures.

فَعْل

عَدْب	sweet.	شَيْخ	aged.	رَطْب	tender.
سَهْل	easy.	صَعْب	difficult.	ثَبْت	firm.

فِعْل

جِلْف	uncouth.	دِق	thin.	خِصْب	fertile.
-------	----------	-----	-------	-------	----------

فَعْل

حُر	free.	دُون	mean.	حُلُو	sweet.
مُر	bitter.	صَلْب	hard.	سُخْن	hot.

فَعْل

حَدَث	youth.	عَرَب	unmarried.	حَسَن	handsome.
بَطَل	hero.	ذَنْجَس	impure.		

فِعْل

دَنَس	soiled.	عَسِر	difficult.	حَشِن	rough.
فَرِح	joyous.	وَسِخ	dirty.	قَدِر	filthy.

أَفْعَل

أَصْفَر	yellow.	أَخْضَر	green.	أَزْرَق	blue.
أَحْمَر	red.	أَسْوَد	black.	أَبْيَض	white.
أَعْمَر	blue-eyed.	أَصَم	deaf.	أَعْقَد	tongue-tied.
أَعْرَج	lame.	أَعْمَى	blind.	أَخْرَس	dumb.

فَيَعْل

سَيِّد	lord.	ضَيِّق	narrow.	لَيِّن	soft.
طَيِّب	pleasant.	جَيِّد	good.	مَيِّت	dying.

Measures.

فَعِيلٌ

قَدِيمٌ old.

مَلِيحٌ good.

نَظِيفٌ clean.

عَطِيقٌ „

جَدِيدٌ new.

ظَرِيفٌ beautiful.

فَعَالٌ

شَجَاعٌ brave.

حَصَانٌ chaste.

جَبَانٌ coward.

عَيَاءٌ incurable.

جَوَانٌ liberal.

فُعَالٌ

ذُعَافٌ fatal.

فُضْحَامٌ large.

عُضَالٌ distressing.

زُعَافٌ „

شُجَاعٌ brave.

عُقَامٌ „

فَعْلَانٌ

سَكْرَانٌ drunken.

عَرْقَانٌ perspiring.

عَطْشَانٌ thirsty.

عَضْبَانٌ angry.

شَبْعَانٌ satisfied.

ظَبْآنٌ „

فَاعِلٌ

فَاتِرٌ lukewarm.

بَارِدٌ cold.

حَارٌّ hot.

خَاصٌّ special.

عَامٌّ general.

حَازِمٌ resolute.

(See glossary).

فَعْلَانٌ is commonly used to express hunger, thirst, and their opposites.

أَفْعَلٌ expresses colour, defect, blemishes, and points of beauty.

From verbs of more than three letters the Adjective resembling the Agent is formed on the measure of the Noun of Agent.

Derived Forms.

I.	مُغْرِدٌ	singing bird.		
II.	مُرَاهٌ	hypocrite.		
III.	مُكْسِنٌ	benefactor.	مُضِرٌّ	injurious.
	مُتَخَلِّصٌ	sincere.	مُنِيرٌ	shining.
	مُظْلِمٌ	dark.	مُسِنٌ	old (age).
	مُفْلِسٌ	penniless.	مُشْرِقٌ	shining.
	مُهْمِلٌ	neglectful.	مُمْكِنٌ	possible.
	مُؤْمِنٌ	believer.	مُنْصِفٌ	just.
	مُصِيبٌ	right.		
IV.	مُتَجَبِّرٌ	tyrant.	مُتَقَلِّبٌ	fickle.
	مُتَجَعِّدٌ	wrinkled.	مُتَوَسِّطٌ	moderate.
	مُتَكَبِّرٌ	proud.	مُتَأَدِّبٌ	polite.
	مُتَعَدِّينٌ	civilized.	مُتَرَدِّدٌ	irresolute.
	مُتَجَعِّدٌ	frozen.	مُتَوَحِّشٌ	barbarian.
	مُتَعَبِّدٌ	religious.		
V.	مُتَكَاسِلٌ	lazy.	مُتَظَاهِرٌ	pretender.
	مُتَهَاوِنٌ	neglectful.		
VI.	مُنْكَرِفٌ	deviating.	مُنْدَرِسٌ	obliterated.
	مُنْخَفِضٌ	lowered.	مُنْخَصِرٌ	limited.
VII.	مُنْخَتَرِسٌ	precautious.	مُخْتَلِفٌ	different.
	مُكْتَفٍ	content.	مُكْتَتِبٌ	vexatious.
	مُسْتَوٍ	straight.	مُعْتَدِلٌ	temperate.
	مُتَضِعٌ	humble.		

VIII.	مُسَوِّدٌ	black.	مُكَمِّدٌ	opaque.
	مُخَمَّرٌ	red.		
IX.	مُسْتَحِيلٌ	impossible.	مُسْتَدِيرٌ	round.
	مُسْتَعِدٌ	ready.	مُسْتَبِدٌ	arbitrary.
	مُسْتَقِيمٌ	upright.	مُسْتَهْرَقٌ	scornful.
X.	مُحَدَّوِدٌ	hump-backed.		

Note: Very few of these adjectives are formed from the first and second derived forms, because most of the latter are transitive.

Measures:

فَعَّلَ

مُرْفُوفٌ	fluttering.	مُتَمَتِّمٌ	stammering.
مُؤَسِّسٌ	suggesting evil.		

تَفَعَّلَ I

مُتَفَلِّسٌ	philosophizing.	مُتَفَطِّرٌ	self-admirer.
مُتَلَلِّجٌ	shining.		

إِفْعَلَدَ II

مُكْفَهَّرٌ	intensely dark.	مُشْتَخِرٌ	very high.
-------------	-----------------	------------	------------

The Comparison of Adjectives.

THE NOUN OF SUPERIORITY. اِسْمُ اَلْفَضِيْلِ

Both the Comparative and Superlative degrees are formed from trilateral verbs on the measure اَفْعَلُ.

The Comparative degree is expressed by مِّنْ following the measure; as

More accomplished than اَفْضَلُ مِّنْ

The Superlative degree is expressed by prefixing the article to the measure, as **الْأَفْعَلُ**, or by putting the measure in construction with the noun qualified; as

He is a most accomplished man **هُوَ أَفْضَلُ رَجُلٍ**

When the article is prefixed to the measure it agrees with the noun in gender and number; as

The most excellent men **الرِّجَالُ الْأَفْصَلُ**

The most handsome women **النِّسَاءُ الْخُسْنِيَاتُ**

The two richest men **الرِّجَالُ الْأَغْنِيَانِ**

The largest tree **الشَّجَرَةُ الْكُبْرَى**

When in construction with a definite noun, it may agree with the noun in gender and number or remain masculine singular.

Hind is the most accomplished of women

عِنْدُ أَفْضَلِ النِّسَاءِ or **عِنْدُ فَضْلَى النِّسَاءِ**

These are the two tallest men

هَذَانِ أَطْوَلُ الرِّجَالِ or **هَذَانِ أَطْوَلَا الرِّجَالِ**

These are the worst men

هُؤُلَاءِ أَدْنِيَاءِ النَّاسِ or **هُؤُلَاءِ أَدْنَى النَّاسِ**

(The fem. of **أَفْعَلٌ** is **فُعْلَى**).

Comparatives formed from transitive verbs and verbs of loving, hating, etc. prefix the preposition **ل** to the object; as

He seeks knowledge more
than you

هُوَ أَطْلَبُ لِلْعِلْمِ مِنْكُمْ

When formed from verbs of knowing etc. they take the preposition ب with the object; as

He knows the truth better
than you

هُوَ أَعْرَفُ بِالْحَقِّ مِنْكُمْ

Comparatives formed from intransitive verbs retain their preposition; as

هُوَ أَزْهَدُ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَأَسْرَعُ إِلَى الْخَيْرِ وَأَبْعَدُ عَنِ الشَّرِّ وَأَقْرَبُ
مِنَ الْحَقِّ وَأَصْبِرُ عَلَى النَّوَائِبِ.

He is more abstemious in worldly things, prompter to good, further from sin, nearer the truth, and more patient in afflictions.

Some adjectives from the very nature of the ideas they express do not admit of comparison, as those derived from the verbs.

To die مَاتَ to pass away فَنِيَ to live حَيِيَ.

Adjectives which express colour, defect, and points of beauty do not admit of comparison on this measure because they have already the form أَفْعَلُ without reference to degree.

Defective Verbs أَفْعَالُ النَّاقِصَةُ as صَارَ, أَمَسَ, كَانَ and verbs which do not admit of conjugation as حَبَّأَ, لَيْسَ do not form adjectives of comparison.

The Noun of Superiority has invariably the meaning of the Noun of Agent.

Verbs of more than three letters and those which express colour, defect etc. take the Noun of Action in

the accusative case preceded by an adjective derived from another verb to express comparison; as

He is speedier than they, **هُوَ أَشَدُّ إِسْرَاعًا مِنْهُمْ**
and less diligent than his brother. **وَأَقْدَلُ إِجْتِهَادًا مِنْ أَخِيهِ**

He is a keener observer
than his companions. **وَأَدَقُّ مِلَاحَظَةً مِنْ رُفَقَائِهِ**

He is more famous than his
parents. **هُوَ أَوْسَعُ شُهْرَةً مِنْ وَالِدَيْهِ**

He is nearer to God, of quicker perception than others
and of more refined manners.

هُوَ أَكْثَرُ إِقْتِرَابًا إِلَى اللَّهِ، وَأَسْرَعُ إِدْرَاكًا مِنْ سِوَاهِ وَأَدْنَى إِقْتِرَابًا مِنْ الْأَدَبِ.

He is redder (or blacker) and lamer.

هُوَ أَشَدُّ حُمْرَةً (أَوْ سَوَادًا) وَأَكْثَرُ عَرَجًا.

THE NOUN OF EXCESS. **إِسْمُ الْمُبَالَغَةِ**

This derived noun has the meaning of the Noun of Agent to which is added the idea of intensity.

It has various measures, the most important of which are the following:

فَعَالَةٌ	فَعِيلَةٌ	فَعُولٌ	فَعِيلٌ	فَعَالَةٌ
فَاعُولٌ	فَاعِلٌ	مِفْعَالٌ	مِفْعِيلٌ	فَاعِلَةٌ
فُعُولَةٌ				

غَفَّارٌ	the Pardoner.	تَوَّابٌ	the Forgiving.
قَهَّارٌ	„ Subduer.	بَسَّامٌ	smiling.

قِيَّاصُ	the Bountiful.	بَرَّاقٌ	bright.
جَوَّالٌ	„ traveller.	عَلَّامٌ	learned.
خَوَّانٌ	„ treacherous.	مَنَّانٌ	benefactor.
عَدَّارٌ	„	صَوَّامٌ	fasting person.

(See glossary).

THE MEASURES فَعُولٌ and فَعِيلٌ

These two forms are common to the Noun of Agent and Noun of Object; so that at one time they would denote activity; as

patient صَبُورٌ sick مَرِيضٌ
and at another passivity; as

an apostle رَسُولٌ wounded جَرِيحٌ

When فَعُولٌ indicates the Noun of Agent and فَعِيلٌ the Noun of Object and are accompanied by their substantives they have the same form for masculine and feminine; as

a wounded man رَجُلٌ جَرِيحٌ a patient man رَجُلٌ صَبُورٌ
„ „ woman اِمْرَاةٌ جَرِيحَةٌ „ „ woman اِمْرَاةٌ صَبُورَةٌ

but if فَعُولٌ indicates the Noun of Object and فَعِيلٌ the Noun of Agent, or if their nouns are not mentioned they add ة for the feminine; as

a woman intrusted with an important mission اِمْرَاةٌ رَسُوْلَةٌ
a sick woman اِمْرَاةٌ مَرِيضَةٌ

Adjectives which are peculiar to the feminine fall under this rule, and some adjectives on the measure

فَاعِلٍ; as

pregnant	حَامِلٍ	barren	عَائِرٍ	thin	صَامِرٍ
wet nurse	مُرْضِعٍ	mother with infant	مُطْفِلٍ		

THE NOUN OF OBJECT OR PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

اسْمُ الْمَفْعُولِ

Trilaterals have the measure مَفْعُولٍ; as

مَضْرُوبٍ	beaten	مَخْبُوبٍ	loved	مَرْبُوعٍ	reported
مَقْتُولٍ	killed	مَنْظُورٍ	seen	مَبْلُولٍ	wet
مَرْكُوبٍ	ridden	مَدْفُونٍ	buried	مَمْدُودٍ	stretched
مَسْئُولٍ	} responsible asked	مَوْعُودٍ	promised	مَأْتُورٍ	tracked
مَوْقِيٍّ		protected	مَرْمِيٍّ	thrown	مَرْضِيٍّ
مَطْوِيٍّ	folded	مَبِيعٍ	sold	مَقُولٍ	spoken
مَضُونٍ	guarded	مَغْزُورٍ	raided		

In all other forms of the verb the Noun of Object follows the measure of the Noun of Agent, substituting َ for the ِ of the penultimate consonant; as

مُهَدَّبٍ هَدَّبَ	educated	مُصَالِحٍ صَالَحَ	reconciled
مُتَرَجِّى تَرَجَّى	hoped	مُتَقَاصِي تَقَاصَى	demanded
مُسْتَعْدَمٍ اسْتَعْدَمَ	employed	مُصْلِحٍ أَصْلَحَ	rectified
		مُكْتَسَبٍ اِكْتَسَبَ	gained

The measure **فَعَلَ** has sometimes the meaning of the Noun of Object:

وَلَدٌ	child.	مَوْلُودٌ	born.
عَدَدٌ	number.	مَعْدُودٌ	counted.
سَلْبٌ	booty.	مَسْلُوبٌ	spoiled.
جَلْبٌ	imported goods	مَجْلُوبٌ	brought.
قَدَرٌ	fate	مَقْدُورٌ	determined.
نَسَقٌ	order	مَنْسُوقٌ	arranged.

When the Noun of Object is formed from the names of the members of the body, it means to be diseased in that member; as

colic	بَطْنٌ مَبْطُونٌ	heart disease	مَفْرُودٌ فُؤَادٌ
chest complaint	مَصْدُورٌ صَدْرٌ		

THE NOUN OF PLACE AND TIME.

إِسْمُ الْمَكَانِ وَالزَّمَانِ

The Noun of Place and Time is formed from both transitive and intransitive verbs.

Trilaterals have the measure **مَفْعَلٌ** the same as the Noun of Action with م: —

مَنْجَى	escape	مَدْخَنٌ	chimney
مَأْوَى	settlement	مَزَارٌ	place of pilgrimage
مَبْجَازٌ	bridge	مَصْبٌ	mouth of a river
مَطْبِخٌ	kitchen	مَغْطَسٌ	wash-basin
مَذْبَحٌ	altar	مَتْخَلٌ	meeting-place

مَنْجَا	refuge.	مَقْعَد	seat
مَرْعَى	pasture	مَثْنَى	fold
مَنْبَع	source	مَنَام	sleep
مَخْرَج	exit	مَكْتَب	study
مَحَطَّ	platform	مَقْتَل	slaughter-house
مَقَام	standing	مَرَصِد	observatory
مَرْسَح	hall, theatre	مَجْمَع	gathering-place
مَشْرَب	watering trough	مَقَر	abode
مَنْهَل	„ for camels	مَنْظَر	sight
مَصْدَر	source		

The ع of the measure is vowelled with َ in verbs whose first radical is weak **الْمُعْتَلَّةُ الْفَاءُ** and in verbs whose ع in the Aorist is sound and vowelled with َ as;

a place	مَوْضِع	a place of mire	مَوْجِل
„ „ of standing	مَوْقِف	„ „ aimed at	مَقْصِد
„ „ „ putting	مَوْضِع	„ „ of fracture	مَكْسِر
„ „ „ lying cattle	مَرْيَض	„ „ „ falling	مَوْقِع
„ „ „ exhibition	مَعْرَض	„ „ „ gaming	
„ „ „ sitting		by lots	مَيْسِر
(assembly) مَجْلِس		„ „ „ smiling	مَسِم

Some nouns take َ although the ع of the Aorist has ِ; as

Time or place of

Ascent	مَطْلِع	sunset	مَغْرِب
Place of Pilgrimage	مَنْسِك	sunrise	مَشْرِق

prostration in prayer,		residence	مَسْكَن
mosque	مَسْجِد	growing place	
slaughter	مَسْجِر	(plant)	مَنْبِت
falling (anything)	مَسْقِط	separation	مَفْرَق

The plural is formed by inserting **l** after the second radical and vowing the following letter with **ـ**; as

refuges	مَآرٍ	pastures	مَرَاعٍ
goings forth	مَخَارِجٍ	altars	مَذَابِجٍ

The affix **ـ** is dropped.

A **ـ** is sometimes added to the measure to express abundance of the thing implied; as

A place abounding in

مَكْتَبَةٍ	books	مَأْسَدَةٍ	lions	مَفْعَاةٍ	snakes
مَضْبَعَةٍ	hyenas	مَقْبَرَةٍ	graves	مَذَابِجَةٍ	wolves

At other times the **ـ** has no special signification; as

Halting place (residence)	مَنْزِلَةٍ	cave	مَغَارَةٍ
on the right hand	مَيْمَنَةٍ	destruction (desert)	مَهْلِكَةٍ
on the left hand	مَيْسِرَةٍ	light-house	مَنَارَةٍ
court of judgment	مَحْكَمَةٍ	station	مَحْطَةٍ
school	مَدْرَسَةٍ		

The following are exceptional: —

Time of birth	وَلَدٍ	مِيلَادٍ
for performance of an action	مِيَقَاتٍ	
appointed time or place	مِيْعَادٍ	
for fulfillment of promise		

From verbs of more than three letters it is formed
as the Noun of Action with م: —

place (abode)	مَقَامٌ	departure	مُنْصَرَفٌ
hospital	مُسْتَشْفَى	gathered together, room	مُجْتَمَعٌ
prayer (Church)	مُصَلًّى	meeting-place	مُلْتَقَى
abode	مُسْتَقَرٌّ	slope	مُنْحَدَرٌ

NOUN OF INSTRUMENT. اِسْمُ الْآلَةِ

The Noun of Instrument is applied to anything which
is used in performing the action of the verb; as

bellows نَفْحٌ from نَفَخَ to blow

curtain سِتَارٌ ,, سِتْرٌ ,, cover

It is formed from derived and primitive nouns.

The derived nouns are taken from triliteral transitive
verbs only and have three regular measures: —

مِفْعَلٌ I مِفْعَالٌ II مِفْعَلَةٌ III

The plural is formed in the same manner as the
Noun of Place and Time, i. e. by inserting ا after the
second radical and vowing the third with ة

The plural of مِفْعَلٌ and مِفْعَلَةٌ is مَفَاعِلٌ

The plural ,, مِفْعَالٌ is مَفَاعِيلٌ

مِفْعَلٌ

مِسْعَرٌ fire-brand.

مِكْبَسٌ hand-press.

مِقْبَصٌ handle.

مِقْلَى frying-pan.

مِقْصٌ scissors.

مِرْزُودٌ provision-bag.

مَلْقَطٌ	tongs.	مِنْكَسٌ	goad, spur.
مِثْقَنٌ	syringe.	مِسْنٌ	grind-stone.
مِفْعَالٌ			
مِرْمَارٌ	flute.	مِقْدَافٌ	oar.
مِسْمَارٌ	nail.	مِسْبَارٌ	probe.
مِخْرَاطٌ	plough.	مِقْرَاضٌ	scissors.
مِنْفَاحٌ	bellows.	مِفْتَاحٌ	key.
مِشْرَاطٌ	lancet, scalpel.		
مِفْعَلَةٌ			
مِقْلَبَةٌ	pen-case.	مِفْرَقَةٌ	ladle.
مِسْطَرَّةٌ	ruler.	مِخْرَطَةٌ	lathe.
مِظَلَّةٌ	umbrella.	مِصِيدَةٌ	trap.
مِنْطَقَةٌ	girdle, belt.	مِرْمَاةٌ	small arrows.
مِضْفَاةٌ	filter.	مِرْمَلَةٌ	sand-sifter.
مِشْنَقَةٌ	gallows.	مِخْبَرَةٌ	inkstand.
مِخْدَةٌ	pillow.	مِرْآةٌ	looking-glass.
The following are primitive nouns:			
حَرْبَةٌ	spear.	شَبَكَةٌ	net.
مُخَلٌ	lever, crow-bar.	نِيرٌ	yoke.
حَدَاةٌ	double-headed axe.	سَهْمٌ	arrow.
دَلْوٌ	bucket.	فَمَجٌ	trap.
قُفْلٌ	lock	فِرْبَةٌ	water-skin.
طَبْلٌ	drum	كَلْبَتَانٌ	pincers.
مَنْجَنِيْقٌ	catapult.		

THE PRIMITIVE NOUN. اِسْمُ اَلْجَامِدِ

The Primitive Noun is one which cannot be referred to any verbal root; it may have three, four, or five letters.

There are ten measures of primitive trilateral nouns:

Camel	فِعْلٌ اِیْلٌ 6	Heart	فَعْلٌ قَلْبٌ 1
Shoulder	فَعْلٌ كَتِفٌ 7	Lock	فُعْلٌ قُفْلٌ 2
Grapes	فَعْلٌ عِنَبٌ 8	Load	فِعْلٌ حِمْلٌ 3
Arm	فَعْلٌ عَضُدٌ 9	Horse	فَعْلٌ فَرَسٌ 4
Sparrow-hawk	فَعْلٌ صُرَدٌ 10	Neck	فُعْلٌ عُنُقٌ 5

A letter may be dropped from the primitive trilateral noun, as اَبٌ for اَبُو; the dropped letter is generally و, as in اَخٌ, اَبٌ, اِبْنٌ, حَمٌ, دَمٌ, اِسْمٌ, غَدٌ; it may, however, be ه or ی, as اِسْمٌ, اِبْنٌ, صَلَةٌ, سَنَةٌ, as اِسْمٌ, اِبْنٌ, صَلَةٌ, سَنَةٌ. The dropped letter is replaced by ا (ā) or ه, as اِسْمٌ, اِبْنٌ, صَلَةٌ, سَنَةٌ.

THE GENDER OF NOUNS. اَلْجِنْسُ

Nouns are of two genders:

I Masculine مُذَكَّرٌ, II Feminine مُؤَنَّثَةٌ.

Feminine Nouns are of two kinds:

(a) Animate مُؤَنَّثَةٌ حَقِیْقِيَّةٌ, as اِمْرَاةٌ woman.

(b) Inanimate مُؤَنَّثَةٌ مَجَازِيَّةٌ or خَيْرٌ حَقِیْقِيَّةٌ as اَلشَّمْسُ the Sun.

Feminine Nouns are further subdivided into:

I Feminine by form مُؤنَّثٌ لَفْظِيًّا, having as their suffixes ة, آ, or ي (signs of feminine); as

Mercy	رَحْمَةٌ	Claim	دَعْوَى	Desert	صَحْرَاءُ
Virtuous	فَاضِلَةٌ	Drunken	سَكْرَى	Red	حُمْرَاءُ

II Feminine by meaning مُؤنَّثٌ مَعْنَوِيًّا; as

Earth	أَرْضٌ	Soul	نَفْسٌ	Mary	مَرْيَمٌ
-------	--------	------	--------	------	----------

FEMININE NOUNS. الْأَسْمَاءُ الْمُؤنَّثَةُ

Feminine Nouns comprise:

I All nouns ending with any of the three signs of the feminine (1) ة, (2) آ, and (3) ي, except they be masculine proper nouns.

(1) Nouns and Adjectives made feminine by ة are:

(a) The Noun of Agent, as جَاهِلَةٌ جَاهِلٌ ignorant.

(b) All measures of the Noun of Attribute except أَفْعَلٌ and فَعْلَانٌ, as فَرِحَةٌ فَرِحٌ joyful lord, سَيِّدَةٌ سَيِّدٌ, (but حُمْرَاءُ أَحْمَرٌ red سَكْرَى سَكْرَانٌ drunken).

(c) Nouns on the measure فَعِيلٌ indicating the Noun of Agent, as سَرِيْعَةٌ سَرِيْعٌ hasty كَرِيْمَةٌ كَرِيْمٌ generous.

(d) The Noun of Object, as مَكْسُوْرَةٌ مَكْسُوْرٌ broken مَبِيْعَةٌ مَبِيْعٌ sold.

(e) Nouns on the measure فَعُوْلٌ indicating the Noun of Object, as رَسُوْلَةٌ رَسُوْلٌ apostle رَكُوْبَةٌ رَكُوْبٌ beast for riding.

(f) Some common Nouns, as كَلْبَةٌ dog
 غَزَالَةٌ gazelle مَلِكٌ king.

Note. Irregular Plurals of irrational objects are treated as feminine singular; as

Hard hearts	قُلُوبٌ قَاسِيَةٌ
Stern judges	قُضَاةٌ قَسَاةٌ
Capable teachers	مُعَلِّمُونَ مُسْتَعِدِّونَ
Beautiful books	كُتُبٌ جَمِيلَةٌ
Capable intellects	عُقُولٌ مُسْتَعِدَّةٌ
Strong men	رِجَالٌ أَقْوِيَاءُ

(2) Nouns on the measure أَفْعَلٌ signifying colour or defect are made feminine by آ, i. e. they take the measure نَفْعَلَةٌ; as

Yellow	أَصْفَرٌ صَفْرَاءُ	Red	أَحْمَرٌ حَمْرَاءُ
Hump-backed	أَحْدَبٌ حَدْبَاءُ		

(3) Nouns on the measure أَفْعَلٌ, having the signification of the superlative degree, are made feminine by ي, i. e. they take the measure نَفْعَلِيَّةٌ, as

Most excellent	أَلْفُضَلُ الْفُضْلَى	Most handsome	أَلْأَحْسَنُ الْإِحْسَانَى
Greatest	أَلْأَعْظَمُ الْعِظَمَى	Greatest	أَلْأَكْبَرُ الْكِبَرَى
First	أَلْأَوَّلُ الْأُولَى	Smallest	أَلْأَصْفَرُ الصُّفْرَى
*Worse	أَلْأَدْنَى الدُّنْيَا		

*When the ي is preceded by ا it is written اِ, as

دُنْيَا، عَلِيًّا. Exceptions are اَلْخُلُوِي for اَلْخُلِيَّا the sweetest اَلْقُضُوِي for اَلْقُضِيَّا the farthest.

II Names of females; as

Mary مَرْيَمَ Hind هِنْدَ Zaynab زَيْنَبَ

III Common nouns and adjectives which denote females, as

Wet-nurse	مُرْضِعٌ	Divorced	طَالِقٌ
Pregnant	حُبْلَى	Giving birth	وَلُوْدٌ
Mother	أُمٌ	Sister	أُخْتٌ

IV Names of countries, towns and tribes; as

Jerusalem	اَلْقُدْسُ	Jaffa	يَافَا
Syria	اَلشَّامُ	Egypt	مِصْرٌ
Koreish	قُرَيْشٌ		

V Names of fire and winds; as

Wind	رِيْحٌ	North wind	شِبَالٌ
Hot South-westerly wind	هَيْفٌ	South wind	جَنُوبٌ
Pestilential hot wind	سَنُومٌ	East wind	صَبَاٌ
Hot night wind	حَرُورٌ	West wind	دَبُورٌ
Blazing fire	سَعِيْرٌ، لَطْفٌ، صِلَاءٌ	Fire	نَارٌ
		Hell-fire	سَقْرٌ جَحِيْمٌ

VI Double members of the body; as

Heel	عَقِبٌ	Foot	رِجْلٌ	Hand	يَدٌ
Palm (hand)	كَفٌّ	Ear	أُذُنٌ	Arm	ذِرَاعٌ
Shoulder	كَتِفٌ	Eye	عَيْنٌ	Hip	وَرِكٌ

also

Tooth	سِّن	Womb	رَحِم
Liver	كَبِد	Rib	ضِلَع

Exceptions are:

Cheek	خَدّ	Elbow	مَرْفِق	Side	جَنْب
Finger	إِصْبَع	Maw	كَرْش		

The following nouns are of the feminine gender although they have a masculine termination:

Wine	خَمْر	Scorpion	عَقْرَب
Well	بُئْر	Hare	أَرْنب
Cup	كَأْس	Eye	عَيْن
House	دَار	Water-wheel	مَنْجَنُون
Bucket	دَلْو	Catapult	مَنْجَنِيْق
Leopard	فَهْد	Sun	الشَّمْس
Viper	أَفْعَى	Staff	عَصَى
Destination (traveller's)	نَوَى	Shoe	نَعْل
Bow	قَوْس	Razor	مُوسَى
Ship	فُلْك	Hyena	ضَبْع
Earth	أَرْض	Metre (Poetry)	عَرُوض
Soul	نَفْس	Coat of mail	دِرْع
Right hand, oath	يَمِين	Mill	رَحَى
Market	سُوق	Eagle	عُقَاب
Axe	فَأْس	War	حَرْب
		Paradise	الْفِرْدَوْس

The following nouns may be used either in the masculine or feminine gender:

Corn measure	صَاع	Arm	عَضُد
Hinder-part	عَجْز	Booth, shop	حَانُوت
Horse, mare	فَرَس	Lance	رُمْح
Nape of Neck	قَفَا	Knife	سِكِّين
Mirage	آل	Peace	سِلْم
Musk	مِسْك	Heaven, sky	سَمَاء
Salt	مِلْح	Iron pestle	فِهْر
Letters of the alphabet		White honey	صَرَب
Article of dress	إِزَار	Honey	عَسَل
State, Condition	حَال	Spider	عَنْكَبُوت
Natural disposition	طِبَاع	Cooking-pot	قِدْر
Night-journey	سُرَى	Shin-bone	كِرَاع
Power	سُلْطَان	Night	لَيْل
Thumb or great toe	إِبْهَام	Intestine	مَعَى , مَعَى
Peace, reconciliation	صُلْح	Large bucket	ذَنْوَب
Forenoon	صُحَى	Breast	ثَدَى
Wedding	عُرْس	Wing	جِنَاح
Neck	عُنُق	Way	سَبِيل
Tongue	لِسَان	Weapon	سِلَاح
Fox	ثُعْلَب	Barley	شَعِير
Well	قَلْب	Way	صِرَاط
Road	طَرِيق	Gold	ذَهَب

NUMBER. اَلْعَدَدُ

There are three Numbers:

I. Singular مُفْرَدٌ

II. Dual مُثْنَى

III. Plural جَمْعٌ

THE DUAL.

The dual adds اَنْ to the singular for the nominative, and يَنْ for the genitive, as two men رَجُلَانِ, رَجُلَيْنِ.

Nouns of three letters, ending with ا or ي, restore the ا or ي to its original form; as

Staff عَصَا عَصَوَانِ Mill رَحَى رَحَيَانِ
Youth فَتَى فَتَيَانِ

If the ا or ي occurs after the third letter it is changed to ي; as

Bustard حُبَارَى حُبَارَيَانِ Butt for shooting مَرْمِيَّانِ مَرْمِيَّانِ
Pregnant حُبَلَى حُبَلَيَانِ

Nouns ending with آ (sign of fem.) change the Hemzeh into و; as

Red حَمْرَاءُ حَمْرَوَانِ Desert صَحْرَاءُ صَحْرَوَانِ

but if the آ is a root letter it must be left; as

Good reader قَرَّاءٌ قَرَّاءَانِ

If the آ is not the sign of fem. it may be changed into و, or left; as

Dress كِسَاءِ كِسَاةٍ كِسَاوَانِ Heaven سَمَاءِ سَمَاةٍ سَمَاوَانِ

Mantle رِدَاءِ رِدَاةٍ رِدَاوَانِ

Triliteral nouns which have dropped a weak letter restore it in the dual if it is restored when joined to a pronoun; as

Brother أَخُ أَخُوكَ أَخَوَانِ Hand يَدُ يَدُكَ يَدَانِ

Father أَبُ أَبُوكَ أَبَوَانِ Blood دَمُ دَمُكَ دَمَانِ

Father-in-law حَمُّ حَمُّوكَ حَمَوَانِ

THE PLURAL. أَكْثَرُ

The Plural is of two kinds:

I. Regular جَمْعُ سَالِمٍ .

II. Irregular or Broken جَمْعُ مُكْسَّرٍ .

The Regular Plural is again divided into:

I. The Regular Masculine Plural جَمْعُ الْمَذَكَّرِ السَّلَامِ

II. The Regular Feminine Plural جَمْعُ الْمَوْثِقَاتِ السَّلَامِ

The Regular Plural is thus called because the singular form remains unchanged; the omission of ة (sign of fem.) is not considered as breaking the form.

THE REGULAR MASCULINE PLURAL.

The Regular Masculine Plural is formed by adding وُنَ to the singular for the nominative case, and يْنَ for the accusative and genitive cases; as

Believers مُؤْمِنٌ مُؤْمِنُونَ مُؤْمِنِينَ

Nouns and adjectives which may take the regular masculine plural are:

I. The Proper Noun **أَلْعَلَمُ** when

(a) rational (b) void of ة (fem) (c) not a compound noun (as **عَبْدُ اللَّهِ**).

II. The Common Noun **إِسْمُ أَلْحَنِسِ** when

(a) rational (b) void of ة (fem) (c) in the diminutive form, as **رَجُلٌ رَجِيلٌ رَجِيلُونَ**.

III. Adjectives derived from verbs when

(a) rational (b) void of ة (fem) (c) not on the measures **أَفْعَلٌ** feminine **فَعْلَاءٌ** and **فَعْلَانٌ** feminine **فَعْلَى** nor on the measures **فَعِيلٌ** and **فَعُولٌ** when the sing. form of masculine and feminine is the same.

The following nouns are exceptions:

The Earth	أَرْضٌ أَرْضُونَ	Children	إِبْنٌ بَنُونَ
Worlds	عَالَمٌ عَالَمُونَ	Years	سَنَةٌ سِنُونَ
Relations	أَهْلٌ أَهْلُونَ	Hundreds	مِئَةٌ مِئُونَ

and **عِشْرُونَ**, **ثَلَاثُونَ** to **تِسْعُونَ**, twenty, thirty to ninety.

Derived Adjectives whose final letter is **ي** or **ى** drop the weak letter; and if the preceding vowel is **ـِ** this **ـِ** remains, but, if not, it agrees with the following letter; as

Proper Name

مُضْطَفَى مُضْطَفُونَ

One who exacts to the full

مُتَوَتَّى مُتَوَتِّونَ

Archer

رَامِي رَامُونَ

THE REGULAR FEMININE PLURAL.

The Regular Feminine Plural is formed by adding **ات** to the singular; the **ة** sign of feminine when present, is dropped.

Nouns which take the regular feminine plural are:

I. Proper names of women; as **فَاطِمَةٌ فَاطِمَاتٌ**.

II. Every noun or adjective ending with **ة** whether masculine or feminine; as

Proper Name **طَلْحَةَ طَلْحَاتٌ**

A very learned man **عَلَمَةٌ عَلَمَاتٌ**

An ignorant woman **جَاهِلَةٌ جَاهِلَاتٌ**

A wise woman **حَكِيمَةٌ حَكِيمَاتٌ**

III. Nouns ending with **ى** or **ة** signs of feminine except those on the measures **أَفْعَلٌ فَعْلَانٌ** fem. **فَعْلَى** fem. **فَعْلَاءٌ**; as

The best **الْفُضْلَى الْفُضَيْيَاتُ**

Inner part of hoof **خَلْقَاءُ خَلْقَاوَاتُ**

Deserts **صَحْرَاءُ صَحْرَاوَاتُ** Deserts **بَيْدَاءُ بَيْدَاوَاتُ**

IV. Such common nouns as refer to irrational beings and inanimate objects when in the diminutive form; as

Small coins **دِرْهَمٌ دِرْهِيمَاتٌ** Small camels **جَمَلٌ جَمَلِيَّاتٌ**

V. Adjectives referring to irrational beings of the male sex, as

Neighing horses **حَيْدٌ صَاهِلَاتٌ** Wild beasts **مُفْتَرِسَاتٌ (وُحُوشٌ)**

Departing ones مُنْطَلِقَات

When the common noun is mentioned with the adjective the ا is added to the singular form of the adjective; as

Neighing horses خَيْلٌ صَاهِلَةٌ Departing camels جِمَالٌ مُنْطَلِقَةٌ
 Wild beasts وَحُوشٌ مُفْتَرِسَةٌ Open eyes عَيْنُونَ مُفْتُوحَةٌ
 Listening ears آذَانٌ مُصْغِيَةٌ

VI. The Noun of Action consisting of more than three letters; as

Offerings تَقْدِيمَات Supplications تَوَسُّلَات
 Confessions إِعْتِرَافَات

VII. Every foreign noun of which no other form of plural is known; as

Pasha بَاشَا بَاشَوَات Telegrams تَلِغْرَافَات

Primitive nouns which have not their middle radical weak and are on the measure فَعْلَةٌ take ـ on the ع in the plural; as

Page, face of Rose وَرْدَةٌ وَرَدَات
 anything صُنْعَةٌ صَفَعَات

but if the ع is weak it is left unvowelled; as

Meadow رَوْضَةٌ رَوْضَات Egg بَيْضَةٌ بَيْضَات
 Nut جَوْرَةٌ جَوْرَات

If the noun is on the measure فُعْلَةٌ , it may be left unvowelled; as

Darkness ظُلْمَةٌ ظُلْمَات Piece تِطْعَةٌ تِطْعَات

or, it may have a vowel homogeneous to the vowel preceding, as **ظُلُمَاتٍ تَطِعَاتٍ**.

The following take the regular feminine plural although not coming under the rules previously stated.

I. The words:

Heaven	سَّمَاءٍ	Bath	حَمَّامٍ
Judicial roll	سِجِّيلٍ	Tent	سُرَادِقٍ

II. **إِبْنِ عَرَسٍ**, **إِبْنِ آوَى** make their plurals:

Weasels	بَنَاتُ عَرَسٍ	Jackals	بَنَاتُ آوَى
---------	-----------------------	---------	---------------------

III. **أُم** mother, if rational, takes **أُمَّهَاتٍ** for plural; if irrational, it takes **أُمَّاتٍ**.

IV. Words preceded by **ذَاتُ** take **ذَوَاتُ** for plural; as

Hornets	ذَوَاتُ الْأَذْنَابِ ,	Quadrupeds	ذَوَاتُ أَرْبَعٍ ,
	ذَاتُ الذَّنَبِ		ذَاتُ أَرْبَعٍ

THE IRREGULAR OR BROKEN PLURAL.

جَمْعُ التَّكْسِيرِ

The Irregular Plural is formed by:

- (a) changing the vowels, as **أُسْدٌ أُسْدٌ** (plur.) lions.
- (b) rejecting letters, as **رُسُلٌ رُسُولٌ** (plur.) apostles.
- (c) adding letters, as **رِجَالٌ رَجُلٌ** (plur.) men.

There are twenty-nine measures of the irregular plural of substantives and adjectives derived from triliteral roots, and some nine measures of substantives and adjectives possessing four or more letters. A list

is given in the glossary with their singulars and meanings.

There are two other forms of the Irregular Plural namely:

(a). The Plural of Paucity **جَمْعُ الْقَلَّةِ**. (b). Plural of Multitude **جَمْعُ الْكَثْرَةِ**.

The Plural of Paucity indicates the numbers three to ten inclusive. It comprises:

(a). The Regular Plurals. (b). The following four measures of the Irregular Plurals.

Ribs	1	أَفْعَلٌ أَضْلَعٌ	Lads	3	فِعْلَةٌ بِنْتِيَّةٌ
Loaves	2	أَفْعَلَةٌ أَرْغَفَةٌ	Nails	4	أَفْعَالٌ أَظْفَارٌ

The last measure is commonly found among the trilaterals. The first and last measures may be made plural again, then they come under the plural of multitude.

Ribs	أَضْلَعٌ أَضَالِعٌ	Nails	أَظْفَارٌ أَظْفَائِرٌ
------	--------------------	-------	-----------------------

These two measures and their equivalentents are called **صِيغَةُ مُنْتَهَى الْجُمُوعِ**.

When a noun has only one form of plural it necessarily indicates paucity and multitude; as

Men	رَجَالٌ	Necks	أَعْنَاقٌ
Hearts Affections	أَفئِدَةٌ		

The Plural of Multitude indicates any number from ten to infinity.

THE RELATIVE ADJECTIVE. **النَّسْبَةُ**

I. The Relative Adjective is formed by affixing **ي** to the noun, after stripping it of the **ا** sign of fem. and the signs of dual and plural when present; as

Manly	رَجُلٌ رَجُلِيّ	Belonging to the Kibla	الْقِبْلَةُ قِبْلِيّ
Earthly	أَرْضٌ أَرْضِيّ	Nazarene	نَاصِرَةٌ نَاصِرِيّ
Solar	شَمْسٌ شَمْسِيّ	Belonging to the two sacred cities	
		(Mecca and Medina)	حَرَمَانِ حَرَمِيّ
Mental	عَقْلٌ عَقْلِيّ	Belonging to al-Irakain	
		(Basrah and Koofah)	الْعِرَاقَانِ عِرَاقِيّ
Egyptian	مِصْرٌ مِصْرِيّ	Belonging to Moslems	مُسْلِمُونَ مُسْلِمِيّ
Domestic (house)	بَيْتٌ بَيْتِيّ	Relating to dates	تَمْرٌ تَمْرِيّ
From Mecca	مَكَّةٌ مَكِّيّ	Ecclesiastical	الْكَنِيسَةُ كَنَسِيّ

II. Singular Nouns with dual or plural forms (but not dual or plural significations) retain them; as

Hamdūn	حَمْدُونَ حَمْدُونِيّ	Zeidān	زَيْدَانِ زَيْدَانِيّ
Hamdān	حَمْدَانِ حَمْدَانِيّ	Zeidūn	زَيْدُونَ زَيْدُونِيّ
		Anmar	أَنْمَارِ أَنْمَارِيّ

III. The Hemzeh of the feminine termination **آ** is changed into **ا**, but if the Hemzeh represents an original weak letter such change is optional; as

Virgin	عَدْرَاءٌ عَدْرَائِيّ	Green	خَضْرَاءٌ خَضْرَائِيّ
Black beetle	خُنْفَسَاءٌ خُنْفَسَائِيّ	Red	حُمْرَاءٌ حُمْرَائِيّ

Robe	كِسَاءِ كِسَارِي كِسَائِي
Heaven	سَمَاءِ سَمَارِي سَمَائِي
Garment	رِدَاءِ رِدَارِي رِدَائِي

IV. ا, ي (Aleph) or ي final, in a three or four lettered noun, is generally changed into و, and sometimes an ا is inserted before the و; the letter which precedes the و, is thereupon vowelled with َ; as

Youth	فَتَى فَتْرِي	Pregnant	حُبْلَى حُبْلَرِي حُبْلَارِي
Millstone	رَحَى رَحْرِي	Sorrowful	شَجِي شَجِي or شَجْرِي
Mote	قَدَى قَدْرِي	Judge	قَاصِي قَاصِي or قَاصْرِي
Staff	عَصَى عَصْرِي	High	عَلِي عَلِي
Meaning	مَعْنَى مَعْنَرِي	Earth	دُنْيَا دُنْيَرِي دُنْيَارِي

but if the ي be preceded by a sound letter silent no change occurs; as

Gazelle ظَبِي ظَبْرِي

V. ي when preceded by a silent weak letter is changed into و; as

Living	حَيَّ حَيْرِي	Fold	طَيَّ طَوْرِي
--------	---------------	------	---------------

VI. ا, ي (Aleph), and ي are dropped when they occur after the fourth letter, and when the second letter of a four lettered noun is vowelled; as

Frenchman	فَرَنْسَا فَرَنْسِي	High	مُسْتَعْلِي مُسْتَعْلِي
Bustard	حُبَارِي حُبَارِي	River in Damascus	بَرْدَى بَرْدِي

VII. َ on the middle radical of a trilateral noun becomes ِ; as

King مَلِكٌ مَلِكِي Liver كَبِدٌ كَبِدِي

VIII. When the *ل* is a weak letter, words on the measure *فَعِيلٌ* drop the first *ي* and change the second into *و*; whereupon the *ع* is vowelled with *َ*; as

High عَلِيٌّ عَلِيٌّ

IX. Words on the measure *فَعِيلَةٌ* drop the *ي* and change the vowel of the *ع* to *َ*; as

Church كَنِيسَةٌ كَنِيسَةٌ Enactment فَرِيضَةٌ فَرِيضَةٌ

Exceptions: —

Nature طَبِيعَةٌ طَبِيعَةٌ Truth حَقِيقَةٌ حَقِيقَةٌ
Disposition سَلِيقَةٌ سَلِيقَةٌ

X. Nouns which have dropped a weak letter generally restore it, and any letter which has been substituted for the dropped letter is omitted; as

Language لُغَةٌ لُغِيٌّ Father أَبٌ أَبِيٌّ
Gum لُثْمَةٌ لُثْمِيٌّ Blood دَمٌ دَمِيٌّ
Hundred مِئَةٌ مِئِيٌّ Son ابْنٌ بَنِيٌّ
Hand-maiden أَمَةٌ أَمِيٌّ Brother أَخٌ أَخِيٌّ
Year سَنَةٌ سَنِيٌّ Hand يَدٌ يَدِيٌّ
To-morrow غَدٌ غَدِيٌّ Father-in-law حَمٌ حَمِيٌّ
Lip شَفَةٌ شَفِيٌّ

Exceptions: —

Sister أُخْتُ أُخْتِيٌّ Daughter بِنْتُ بِنْتِيٌّ
Name إِسْمٌ إِسْمِيٌّ

XI. **ي** and **ة** final in nouns of more than three letters are dropped; as

Chair **كُرْسِيّ كُرْسِي**
 Native of Alexandria **الْأَسْكَندَرِيَّةُ إِسْكَندَرِي**

XII. In compound proper nouns the **ي** of relation is generally affixed to the second word **الْعَجْزُ**, leaving the first **الْصَّدْرُ** unchanged; as

Native of Bethlehem **بَيْتُ لَحْمَ بَيْتَ لَحْمِي**
 „ of Bethel **بَيْتُ إِيلَ بَيْتَ إِيلِي**

XIII. Sometimes it is formed from the first word; as

A native of Ramallah **رَامُ آلِهِ رَامِي**
 Name of a poet **إِمْرُؤُ الْقَيْسِ إِمْرِي**

Proper names of men **مَعْدِي كَرِبَ مَعْدَوِي تَأَبَطُ شَرًّا تَأَبْطِي**
 and at other times a process called **الْتَحْتُ** (cutting) is employed, as in the proper names

عَبْدُ الشَّمْسِ	عَنْشِي	عَبْدُ الدَّارِ	عَبْدَرِي
أَرْبُوسَ بَاغُوسَ	أَرْيُوبَاغِي	عَبْدُ الْقَيْسِ	عَبْقَسِي
عَبْدُ اللَّهِ	عَبْدَلِي	حَضْرَمَوْتُ	حَضْرَمِي
تَيْمُ اللَّهِ	تَيْمَلِي	إِمْرُؤُ الْقَيْسِ	مَرْتَسِي

XIV. The following words are formed irregularly:

Spiritual	رُوحَ رُوحَانِي	Names	} صَنْعَاءُ صَنْعَانِي	
Divine	رَبِّ رَبَّانِي	of towns		} الْرَبِّي أَرَابِي
Nazarene (Christian)	نَاصِرَةَ نَصْرَانِي	tribes		
From Yemen	يَمَنَ يَمَانِي	and Countries.		} أُمَيَّةُ أُمْرِي

Materialist	دَهْرٌ دُهْرِيٌّ	Names of towns tribes and Countries.	{ الْبَحْرَيْنِ بَحْرَانِيٌّ سَلِيمٌ سَلِيْبِيٌّ الْأَنْبَاطُ نَبَاطِيٌّ
From Tihamah	تِهَامَةٌ تِهَامِيٌّ		
Bedouin	بَادِيَةٌ بَدَوِيٌّ		

ABSTRACT NOUNS OF QUALITY. **أَسْمَاءُ الْكَيْفِيَّةِ**

God-head	الْإِلَهِيَّةُ	Manhood	رُجْلِيَّةٌ
Humanity	إِنْسَانِيَّةٌ	Substance	مَاهِيَّةٌ
Lordship	الرُّبُوبِيَّةُ	Totality	جَمْعِيَّةٌ
Capability of being understood	} مَفْهُومِيَّةٌ	Christendom	النَّصْرَانِيَّةُ
			Judaism

The termination **وْتٌ** has a similar signification:

Divinity	لَاهُوتٌ	Humanity	نَاسُوتٌ
Kingdom	مَلَكُوتٌ	Pride	جَبَرُوتٌ

THE DIMINUTIVE. **التَّصْغِيرُ**

I. For trilateral nouns the measure of the diminutive is **فُعَيْلٌ**. It is formed by inserting **ي** after the second radical, vowing the first with **ُ** and the second with **ِ**; as

Mountain	جَبَلٌ جَبَيْلٌ	Man	رَجُلٌ رَجَيْلٌ
		Dog	كَلْبٌ كَلَيْبٌ

II. In nouns of more than three letters, the letter which follows the **ي** of the measure takes = except it be one of the three signs of the feminine, or ! of the

plural, or	آن	servile in a proper noun or adjective; as
Dirham	دِرْهَمٌ دِرْهَمٌ	Black (fem.) سَوْدَاءٌ سَوْدَاءٌ
Bird	عُصْفُورٌ عُصْفِيرٌ	Companions أَصْحَابٌ أَصْحَابٌ
Castle	قَلْعَةٌ قَلْعَةٌ	Man's name سَلْمَانٌ سَلْمَانٌ
Proper fem. name	سَلْمَى سَلْمَى	Drunken سَكْرَانٌ سَكْرَانٌ

III. The regular masc. and fem. plurals, and the plural of paucity form their diminutives regularly; as

Believers	مُؤْمِنُونَ مُؤْمِنُونَ	Ribs	أَصْلَعٌ أَصْلَعٌ
Zaids	زَيْدُونَ زَيْدُونَ	Nails	أَطْفَارٌ أَطْفَارٌ
Hinds (proper name)	هَيْدَاتٌ هَيْدَاتٌ	Loaves	أَرْغَفَةٌ أَرْغَفَةٌ
Roses	وَرْدَاتٌ وَرْدَاتٌ	Youths	فَتْيَةٌ فَتْيَةٌ

IV. The plural of multitude reverts to the singular of its form and takes the regular masc. plural in the case of nouns denoting rational masc. beings and the regular fem. plural in the case of irrational beings; as

Poets	شُعْرَاءٌ شَاعِرٌ	شُوعِرُونَ
She camels	نِيَاقٌ نِيَاقَاتٌ	Camels جِمَالٌ جَمِيَلَاتٌ

V. Any letter which has been dropped from the original form of the noun is restored; as

Father	أَبٌ أَبٌ	Blood	دَمٌ (دَمُو) دَمِيٌّ
Brother	أَخٌ أَخٌ	Water	مَاءٌ مَوِيٌّ
Sheep or goat	شَاةٌ شَوِيهَةٌ		

and any letter which has been substituted for the dropped letter is omitted, except it be ة fem.; as

Hand-maiden	أَمَةٌ أُمِّيَّةٌ	Name	إِسْمٌ سَمُو سَمَى
Lip	شَفَاةٌ شَفِيهَةٌ	Mouth	فَمٌ فَوَاهُ فَوَيْهٌ
Daughter	بِنْتُ بَنِيَّةٌ	Promise	عِدَّةٌ وَعَيْدَةٌ
Son	إِبْنٌ بَنُو بَنَى	Effort	جِدَّةٌ وَجَيْدَةٌ

VI. A noun with servile **ا** for its second letter is changed into **و**; as

Horseman	فَارِسٌ فَوَيْسٌ	Scribe	كَاتِبٌ كَوَيْبٌ
Poet	شَاعِرٌ شَوَيْعِرٌ	Beater	ضَارِبٌ ضَوَيْرِبٌ
Seal	خَاتَمٌ خَوَيْتِمٌ		

VII. If the third or fourth letter is **و**, or **ا** not plural, this letter is changed into **ي**; as

Satan	شَيْطَانٌ شَيْيَطِينٌ	Glutton	أَكُولٌ أَكَيْلٌ
Sultan	سُلْطَانٌ سُلَيْطِينٌ	Mill-stone	رَحَى رَحِيَّةٌ
Bird	عُصْفُورٌ عَصِيفِيرٌ	Food	طَعَامٌ طَعِيمٌ
Handle	عُرْوَةٌ عُرْيَةٌ	Boy	غُلَامٌ غُلِيمٌ
Book	كِتَابٌ كَتَيْبٌ	Wolf	سِرْحَانٌ سَرَيْحِينٌ
Old-woman	عَجُوزٌ عَجَبِيرٌ	Brook	جَدْوَلٌ جَدَيْلٌ
Youth	فَتَى فَتَى	Staff	عَصَى عَصِيٌّ

VIII. When the second letter is servile **ا** changed from **ا**, or its origin is unknown, it is changed into **و**; as

Ivory	عَاجٌ عَوَيْجٌ	Another	آخَرَ (أَأْخَرَ) أَوَيْخِرٌ
-------	----------------	---------	-----------------------------

IX. A noun with a weak letter which has undergone change reverts to its original form; as

Tusk	نَابٌ (نَيْبٌ) نَيْبٌ	Door	بَابٌ (بَوْبٌ) بَوْبٌ
------	-----------------------	------	-----------------------

Exceptions:

Feast عِيد (عَرَد) عَيْد Night لَيْلَة (لَيْل) نُورِيَة

X. Nouns feminine by meaning (without signs of fem.) if of three letters only, restore the ة of fem.; as

Eye	عَيْنُ عَيْنَة	Sun	شَمْسُ شَمْسَة
Hind (proper name)	هِنْدُ هِنْدَة	House	دَارُ دَوَارَة
Tooth	سِنُّ سِنِينَة	Sheep	غَنَمُ غَنِيمَة
but, Scorpion	عَقْرَبُ عَقْرِبَة		

Exceptions:

Sandal	نَعْلُ نَعِيل	War	حَرْبُ حَرْب
Bow	قَوْسُ قُويس	Arabs	عَرَبُ عَرَب
Herd of she camels	ذَوْدُ ذَوِيد	Cuirass	ذِرْعُ ذَرِيع

XI. In cases where ambiguity would arise between the masculine and feminine the ة is not affixed, as in the fem. cardinal numbers three to ten inclusive, and in nouns which have a singular ending in ة; thus

Five	خَمْسُ خَمِيس	Tree	شَجَرُ شَجِير
------	---------------	------	---------------

XII. Nouns with more than four radical letters in their root reject all after the fourth; as

Quince	سَفْرَجَلُ سَفْرَجَل	Spider	عَنْكَبُوتُ عَنْكَب
--------	----------------------	--------	---------------------

In compound nouns the first noun is made diminutive; as عَبْدُ اللَّهِ عَيْدُ اللَّهِ.

XIII. The diminutive cannot be applied to the names of God, or of high personages, to indeclinable nouns and names of such objects as do not admit of diminution; as

Glass زجاج Sunday الأحد March آذار

XIV. The diminutive is applied to the following verbs and indeclinable nouns contrary to rule:

I. Verbs of wonder أَفْعَالُ التَّعَجُّبِ; as

How beautiful is the sky مَا أَحْسِنَ السَّمَاءَ

How sweet are the views of our countries

مَا أَحْيَلَى مَنَاطِرَ بِلَادِنَا

II. Relative Pronouns أَسْمَاءُ الْمَوْضُولِ; as

Plur.	Dual.	Sing.
اللَّذِيْنَ (الَّذِينَ)	اللَّذَيْنِ (اللَّذَانِ)	اللَّذِي (الَّذِي)
اللَّتِيَّاتِ (اللَّتَايِ)	اللَّتَيْنِ (اللَّتَانِ)	اللَّتِي (اللَّتِي)

III. Demonstrative Pronouns الْأَشَارَةُ; as

Far object.	Middle Object.	Near Object.
ذَلِكَ (ذَلِكَ)	ذَئِكَ (ذَئِكَ)	ذَئَا (ذَئَا) Masc.
	تَئِكَ (تَئِكَ)	تَئَا (تَئَا) Fem.

XV. The following nouns are formed irregularly:

Sea	بَحْرٌ أُبَيْحِرٌ	Boys	صِبْيَةٌ أُصَيْبِيَّةٌ
Man	رَجُلٌ رُوَيْجِلٌ	Lads	غُلَمَةٌ أُغَيْلِبَةٌ
Man	إِنْسَانٌ أُنَيْسِيَانٌ		

The diminutive is also used as a term of endearment and to express enhancement or contempt; as حُبَيْبٌ, كَلْبِيْبٌ, بَنِيْتِي, أَبِيْتِي, أُخْتِي.

The very best	خَيْرٌ	A great misfortune	دُرُوبِيَّةٌ
A special friend	صَدِيْقٌ	An enemy	عَدُوٌّ

الْعَدَدُ THE NUMERALS.

(أَصْلِيّ) THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

The cardinal numbers from 1 to 10 are:

Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
خَمْسَةٌ	خَمْسٌ 5	إِحْدَى	أَحَدٌ	} 1
سِتَّةٌ	سِتٌّ 6	وَاحِدَةٌ	وَاحِدٌ	
سَبْعَةٌ	سَبْعٌ 7	إِثْنَتَانِ	إِثْنَانِ	2
ثَمَانِيَةٌ	ثَمَانٍ 8	ثَلَاثَةٌ	ثَلَاثٌ 3	3
تِسْعَةٌ	تِسْعٌ 9	أَرْبَعَةٌ	أَرْبَعٌ 4	4
عَشْرَةٌ	عَشْرٌ 10			

1 and 2 stand for the noun and agree with it in gender and number. They can only be used with the noun for emphasis, in which case they follow it; as رَجُلٌ وَاحِدٌ, رَجُلَانِ إِثْنَانِ.

3 to 10 take the fem. form when the objects numbered are masc., and the masc. form when the objects numbered are fem. They govern a broken plural of the objects numbered in the genitive, and when possible take the plural of paucity.

Three women	ثَلَاثُ نِسَاءٍ	Three men	ثَلَاثَةُ رِجَالٍ
Five loaves	خَمْسَةُ أَرْغِفَةٍ	Seven fishes	سَبْعُ سَكَاكٍ

The cardinal numbers from 11 to 19 are:

Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
ثَلَاثُ عَشْرَةَ	ثَلَاثَةَ عَشْرٍ 13	إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ	أَحَدَ عَشَرَ 11
أَرْبَعُ عَشْرَةَ	أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ 14	إِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ	إِثْنَا عَشَرَ 12

Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
ثَمَائِي عَشْرَةَ	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشْرَ 18	خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ	خَمْسَةَ عَشْرَ 15
تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ	تِسْعَةَ عَشْرَ 19	سِتَّ عَشْرَةَ	سِتَّةَ عَشْرَ 16
		سَبْعَ عَشْرَةَ	سَبْعَةَ عَشْرَ 17

11 and 12. The gender of both numerals in 11 and 12 agrees with that of the objects numbered; as

Eleven women	إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ امْرَأَةً	Eleven men	أَحَدَ عَشَرَ رَجُلًا
Twelve women	إِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ امْرَأَةً	Twelve men	إِثْنَا عَشَرَ رَجُلًا

Note 1 and 2 wherever they occur agree in gender with the objects numbered; as

Forty-one ewes إِحْدَى وَأَرْبَعُونَ نَعْجَةً

2 wherever it occurs is declined in the same manner as the dual; as

The twelve Apostles came جَاءَ الْإِثْنَا عَشَرَ رَسُولًا
I saw twelve does رَأَيْتُ إِثْنَتَيْ عَشْرَةَ ظَبْيَةً

13 to 19. The numeral 10 agrees in gender with the object numbered whilst the units take the reverse gender. Both numerals are indeclinable and have َ in all cases; as

Thirteen men ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ رَجُلًا Thirteen women ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ امْرَأَةً

11 to 99 take the object numbered in the accus. sing.

The cardinal numbers 20 to 90 are:

سَبْعُونَ 70	أَرْبَعُونَ 40	عِشْرُونَ 20
ثَمَانُونَ 80	خَمْسُونَ 50	أَحَدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ 21
تِسْعُونَ 90	سِتُّونَ 60	إِثْنَانِ وَعِشْرُونَ 22
		ثَلَاثُونَ 30

20 to 90 are common to both genders and have وُن in the nom. and يِن in the genitive and accus. cases.

The numerals from 100 to 900 are:

600	سِتُّ مِائَةٍ	100	مِائَةٌ
700	سَبْعُ مِائَةٍ	200	مِائَتَانِ
800	ثَمَانِي مِائَةٍ	300	ثَلَاثُ مِائَةٍ
900	تِسْعُ مِائَةٍ	400	أَرْبَعُ مِائَةٍ
		500	خَمْسُ مِائَةٍ

100 is common to both genders and takes the object numbered after it in the genitive sing.

100 to 1000 take the noun after them in the genitive singular.

The numerals from 1000 upwards:

100.000	مِائَةُ أَلْفٍ	1000	أَلْفٌ
200.000	مِائَتَا أَلْفٍ	2000	أَلْفَانِ
300.000	ثَلَاثُ مِائَةِ أَلْفٍ	3000	ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ
400.000	أَرْبَعُ مِائَةِ أَلْفٍ	4000	أَرْبَعَةُ آلَافٍ
500.000	خَمْسُ مِائَةِ أَلْفٍ	5000	خَمْسَةُ آلَافٍ
1.000.000	أَلْفُ أَلْفٍ	11.000	أَحَدُ عَشَرَ أَلْفًا
2.000.000	أَلْفَا أَلْفٍ	12.000	إِثْنَا عَشَرَ أَلْفًا
3.000.000	ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافِ أَلْفٍ	13.000	ثَلَاثَةُ عَشَرَ أَلْفًا

The thousands are put in the genitive plural after their units and the noun follows in the genitive sing.

Three thousand men ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافِ رَجُلٍ

Ten thousand men عَشْرَةُ آلَافِ رَجُلٍ

Numerals made up of thousands, hundreds, tens and units, may be compounded in two ways. (a) The thousands may be put first, followed by hundreds, units and tens or (b) this order may be reversed; as

أَرْبَعَةُ آلَافٍ وَسِتُّ مِائَةٍ وَأَحَدٌ وَثَلَاثُونَ
أَحَدٌ وَثَلَاثُونَ وَسِتُّ مِائَةٍ وَأَرْبَعَةُ آلَافٍ

THE ORDINAL NUMBERS. (تَرْتِيبِيّ)

The Ordinal Adjectives from first to tenth are:

Fem.	Masc.		Fem.	Masc.	
سَادِسَةٌ	سَادِسٌ	sixth.	الْأَوَّلَى	الْأَوَّلُ	the first.
سَابِعَةٌ	سَابِعٌ	seventh.	ثَانِيَةٌ	ثَانٍ	second.
ثَامِنَةٌ	ثَامِنٌ	eighth.	ثَالِثَةٌ	ثَالِثٌ	third.
تَاسِعَةٌ	تَاسِعٌ	ninth.	رَابِعَةٌ	رَابِعٌ	fourth.
عَاشِرَةٌ	عَاشِرٌ	tenth.	خَامِسَةٌ	خَامِسٌ	fifth.

Fem.	Masc.	
حَادِيَةَ عَشْرَةٍ	حَادِي عَشَرَ	eleventh.
ثَانِيَةَ عَشْرَةٍ	ثَانِي عَشَرَ	twelfth.
ثَالِثَةَ عَشْرَةٍ	ثَالِث عَشَرَ	thirteenth.
رَابِعَةَ عَشْرَةٍ	رَابِع عَشَرَ	fourteenth.
خَامِسَةَ عَشْرَةٍ	خَامِس عَشَرَ	fifteenth.

The ordinal numbers are formed on the measure of the noun of agent (except the first) and agree in gender with the noun.

The tens, hundreds, and thousands do not differ in form from the cardinal numbers.

11 to 19; the units of these take the article; as

The fifteenth **أَلْخَامِسَ عَشَرَ**.

20 and upwards, both the decades and the units take the article and are united by **و**; as

The thirty-fifth **أَلْخَامِسُ وَالْثَلَاثُونَ**.

THE NUMERAL ADVERBS.

Once, twice, thrice etc are expressed by the words **مَرَّةً**, **دَفْعَةً**, **نُوبَةً** once in the accusative:

Twice **نُوبَتَيْنِ دَفْعَتَيْنِ مَرَّتَيْنِ**

Thrice **ثَلَاثَ دَفْعَاتٍ or ثَلَاثَ مَرَّاتٍ**

Seventy times **سَبْعِينَ نُوبَةً or مَرَّةً**

Once and again **تَارَةً وَأُخْرَى**

The Distributive Numerals are:

One by one **وَاحِدًا وَاحِدًا or مَوْحَدًا or أَحَادًا**

Two by two **إِثْنَيْنِ إِثْنَيْنِ or مَثْنِي or ثَنَاءً**

Three by three **ثَلَاثَةَ ثَلَاثَةَ or ثَلَاثُ or مَثَلثُ**

Four by four, and soon **أَرْبَعَةَ أَرْبَعَةَ or مَرْبَعُ or رُبَاعُ**

The Multiplicative Numerals:

Single **مُفْرَدٌ** Pentagon, fivefold **مُخَمَّسٌ**

Double, twofold **مُثْنِي** Hexagon, sixfold **مُسَدَّسٌ**

Triangle, triple, threefold **مُثَلَّثٌ** Peptagon, sevenfold **مُسَبَّعٌ**

Square, quadruple, fourfold **مَرْبَعٌ** Octagon **مُثَنَّنٌ**

The Adjectival Numerals are:

Treble, consisting of three **ثَلَاثِي** Dual, consisting of two **ثَنَائِي**
 Quadruple „ „ four **رُبَاعِي**

Fractions are:

A half **نِصْف** A fourth **رُبْع** or **رُبْع**
 A third **ثُلُث** or **ثُلُث** A tenth **عُشْر** or **عُشْر**

Above a tenth the fractions are expressed by the use of the words **أَجْزَاءَ مِنْ جُزْءٍ** "parts of"; as

ثَلَاثَةٌ مِنْ سَبْعَةِ عَشَرَ جُزْأً or only **ثَلَاثَةٌ مِنْ سَبْعَةِ عَشَرَ جُزْأً**.
وَاحِدٌ مِنْ أَحَدٍ عَشَرَ جُزْأً or only **وَاحِدٌ مِنْ أَحَدٍ عَشَرَ جُزْأً**.

Approximate numbers are expressed by **بِضْعٍ** "a few" used with the units from three to nine, and **نَيْفٍ** "a few more" used with the tens, hundreds and thousands.

الضَّمَايِرُ (الشَّخْصِيَّةُ). PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

These are of two kinds:

I. Annexed to the verb, noun, or particle.

II. Separate.

The Annexed Pronouns are of three kinds:

I. Those special to the nominative case, viz. **أَنَا، تُو، هُو، هِيَ، نَحْنُ، أَنْتُمْ، هُمْ، هُنَّ**.

II. Those common to the accusative and genitive, viz. **كَ، هَا، هِيَ، كَيْ، كَيْ**.

III. That common to the nominative, accusative and genitive, viz. **نَا، كُنَا، كُنَا، كُنَا**.

ANNEXED PERSONAL PRONOUNS. الضَمَائِرُ الْمُتَّصِلَةُ

NOMINATIVE BASE.

Plural.		Dual.		Singular.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
نَا		نَا		تُ		1st Person
تُنَّ	نُمْ	تُمَا		تِ	تَ	2nd „
نَ	(!)وْ	ا		...		3rd „

ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE BASES.

نَا		نَا	يِ	(ن) 1st Person
نُكُنَّ	نُكُمْ	كُمَا	يِ	كِ 2nd „
هُنَّ	هُمَّ	هُمَا	هَا	هُ 3rd „

When these are annexed to a verb they are in the accus. case; to a noun or preposition in the genitive.

Our friend passed by and visited us صَدِيقُنَا مَرَّ بِنَا فَرَّزَنَا
هُ and هُم become هِ and هِم after - or يِ; as

According to their saying عَلَى قَوْلِهِمْ He is wrong اَلْحَقُّ عَلَيْهِ

When the affixed pronouns are united to the regular masc. plural and dual or when the latter nouns are in construction, the نَ and نِ are omitted; as

The strikers of Amr ضَارِبُو عَمْرٍُ His strikers ضَارِبُوهُ
The two books of Zaid كِتَابَا زَيْدٍ His two books كِتَابَاهُ

In the third person masc. pl. of the preterite and aorist, and the imperative plural, the ا is dropped when a pronoun is affixed; as

They did not love him **لَمْ يُحِبُّوهُ** They did it **فَعَلُوا** (فَعَلُوا)
 Hear ye him **إِسْمَعُوا**

إِيَّا is a separate accusative particle and is used as a prefix for the affixed pronoun:

I. When a verb governs two accusatives; as

Give it to me **أَعْطِي إِيَّاهُ** Give it to him **أَعْطِهِ إِيَّاهُ**

It is not necessary to put **إِيَّا** before the second accusative pronoun when the two are not of the same person; thus we can say

You asked me about it **سَأَلْتُمُونِيهَا** Give it to me **أَعْطِي أَعْطِينِيهِ**
 I gave it to you **أَعْطَيْتُكَ** Ask me about it **سَلِّني إِيَّاهُ سَلِّنيهِ**

but we cannot say,

I gave it to him **أَعْطَيْتُهُ**

II. When the accusative pronoun is separated from the verb; as

They will honour you **يُكْرِمُونَكَ**

They will honour both Zaid and you **يُكْرِمُونَ زَيْدًا وَإِيَّاكَ**

III. Where the accusative precedes the verb; as

Thee we worship **إِيَّاكَ نَعْبُدُ**

IV. When preceded by **إِلَّا**; as

I love none else but thee **لَا أُحِبُّ إِلَّا إِيَّاكَ**

Note. The second person plural preterite when followed by an affixed pronoun introduces a **و**; as

Ye did strike **صَرَبْتُمْ** Ye did strike me **صَرَبْتُمُونِي**

SEPARATE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

الضَّمَائِرُ الْمُنْفَصِلَةُ

NOMINATIVE CASE.

Plural.		Dual.	Singular.		
Fem.	Masc.	Common.	Fem.	Masc.	
	نَحْنُ	نَحْنُ	أَنَا		1st Person
أَنْتُنَّ	أَنْتُمْ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتِ	أَنْتَ	2nd „
هُنَّ	هُنَّ	هُمَا	هِيَ	هُوَ	3rd „

Note: In أَنَا 1st Person, and هُوَ هِيَ 3rd Person, the whole word is regarded as the pronoun; but in أَنْتُنَّ أَنْتُمْ أَنْتَا 2nd Person, and هُنَّ هُمْ هُمَا 3rd Person, أَنْ and هـ only are the pronouns:

Particle of address =	تَ = حَرْفِ خِطَابٍ	pronoun	أَنْ	أَنْتَ	} 2nd Person.
Sign of dual =	مَا	تُ =	أَنْ	أَنْتُمَا	
Sign of masc. plur. =	مَ	تُ =	أَنْ	أَنْتُمْ	
Sign of fem. plur. =	نَ	تُ =	أَنْ	أَنْتُنَّ	} 3rd Person.
Sign of dual =	مَا		هُ	هُمَا	
Sign of masc. plur. =	مَ		هُ	هُنَّ	
Sign of fem. plur. =	نَ		هُ	هُنَّ	

The conjunctions و and ف when joined to هُوَ and هِيَ may deprive them of their first vowels; as

فَهِيَ, وَهِيَ, فَهُوَ, وَهُوَ

ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Plural.		Dual.		Singular.		
Fem.	Masc.	Common.	Fem.	Masc.		
	إِيَّانَا	إِيَّانَا	إِيَّايَ	إِيَّايَ	إِيَّاهَا	1st Pers.
إِيَّاكُنَّ	إِيَّاكُم	إِيَّاكُمَا	إِيَّايَ	إِيَّايَ	إِيَّاهَا	2nd „
إِيَّاهُنَّ	إِيَّاهُمْ	إِيَّاهُمَا	إِيَّاهَا	إِيَّاهَا	إِيَّاهَا	3rd „

Note: *إِيَّا* is only the prefix of the accusative case.

Sign of the 1st person	ي	pronoun	إِيَّا	} 1st Per.	}	}
Sign of the 1st person plur.	نَا	„	إِيَّانَا			
Particle of address =	ك	حَرْفِ حِطَاب	إِيَّا	} 2nd Person.	}	}
Sign of dual =	ك	„	إِيَّاكُمَا			
Sign of masc. plur. =	ك	„	إِيَّاكُم			
Sign of fem. plur. =	ك	„	إِيَّاكُنَّ			
Particle of 3rd person =	ه	حَرْفِ غَيْبَةٍ	إِيَّاهَا	} 3rd Person.	}	}
Sign of distinction between	ه	„	إِيَّاهَا			
masc. and fem. =	ه	„	إِيَّاهُمَا			
Sign of dual =	ه	„	إِيَّاهُم			
Sign of masc. plur. =	ه	„	إِيَّاهُمْ			
Sign of fem. plur. =	ه	„	إِيَّاهُنَّ			

THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS. *أَسْمَاءُ الْمَوْصُولِ*

Plural.		Dual.		Singular.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
الَّذِي	الَّذِينَ	الَّتِي	الَّتَيْنِ	الَّتِي	الَّتِي	Nom.
الَّذِي	الَّذِينَ	الَّتِي	الَّتَيْنِ	الَّتِي	الَّتِي	Obj. Genitive.

مَا what, which, مَنْ who, أَيِّ whoever, whatever, are both relative and interrogative pronouns.

أَلْ who, which, is used with the nouns of agent and object as a relative pronoun.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN. *أَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ*

Near Object (This).

Plural. <i>Common.</i>	Dual.		Singular.		Nom.
	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	
أَوْلَادٌ or أُوْلَى	تَانِ	ذَانِ (ذِي تَيْتَا)	ذِي	ذَا	
” ”	تَيْنِ	ذَيْنِ	”	”	Gen. and Accus.

Middle Object (That).

أَوْلَادِكَ or أُوْلَاكَ	تَانِكَ	ذَانِكَ	ذِيكَ	ذَاكَ
” ”	تَيْنِكَ	ذَيْنِكَ	”	”

Distant Object (That).

أَوْلَادِكَ or أُوْلَاكَ	تَانِكَ	ذَانِكَ	ذَلِكَ	ذَلِكَ
” ”	تَيْنِكَ	ذَيْنِكَ	”	”

هَٰذَا here, هُنَا there, and تَمَّ there, are also demonstrative pronouns.

The demonstrative for near objects may have the particle هَا (الْتَّنْبِيْهَةُ) prefixed to it; as

هَٰؤُلَاءِ	هَٰذَانِ هَاتَانِ	هَٰذَا هَٰذِهِ
	هَٰذَيْنِ هَاتَيْنِ	

The هَا (الْتَّنْبِيْهَةُ) may also be prefixed to some of the

demonstrative pronouns for middle objects: (a). When addressing a female person the ـِ of the ك in the dem. pron. for middle objects is generally changed into ـ ; as

ذَلِكَ الرَّجُلُ يَا امْرَأَةً أُولَئِكَ الرَّجَالُ يَا امْرَأَةً

(b). ـِ is annexed for the dual, (c) ـُ is annexed for the plural masc., (d) ـُنَّ is annexed for the plur. fem.; as

This is the opportunity, brethren تِلْكَمُ الْفُرْصَةُ يَا إِخْوَتِي

This is the book, men ذَلِكُمْ الْكِتَابُ يَا رَجُلَانِ

Those are the men, O women أُولَئِكُنَّ الرَّجَالُ يَا نِسَاءَ

The relative pronoun always needs a صَلَة and عَائِد

The صَلَة is the sentence or phrase following the relative and completing its meaning. The عَائِد is the pronoun contained in the صَلَة which connects it with the antecedent relative. It is better that this pronoun should be in the third person; as

Thou art the one who loves me أَنْتَ الَّذِي يُحِبُّنِي

If the عَائِد is in the accusative case it may be omitted; as

Thou art he whom I love أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَحِبُّ

The صَلَة of the article (when used with relative force) is always a noun of agent or noun of object.

The demonstrative pronoun is indeclinable but the dual form takes ا for the nom., and ي for the accus. and genitive.

The interrogative pronouns are all indeclinable except أَيُّ .

The latter is declined like an ordinary noun; but in such a sentence as

I love whoever of them is wise أَحَبُّ أَيُّهِمْ حَكِيمٌ
it is indeclinable.

THE ARTICLE. اَلْ

أَدَاةُ التَّعْرِيفِ Instrument of Definition.

The definite article is an inseparable particle prefixed to words and suffers no change for gender or number.

It is used:

I. As the definite article.

(a). اَلْعَهْدِيَّةُ for familiarity; as

Is this the book i. e. The book mentioned previously

أَهَذَا هُوَ الْكِتَابُ

(b) اَلْجَنَسِيَّةُ for distinguishing the genus; as

The lion is more daring than the wolf

اَلْأَسَدُ أَجْرًا مِّنَ اَلذِّئْبِ

II. As the relative pronoun.

Zaid, the beater of Amr

زَيْدُ اَلضَّارِبِ عَمْرًا

It may be زَائِدَةٌ (redundant) as in the relative pronoun اَلَّذِي and in some proper nouns, which have only become such through usage; as

اَلْمَدِينَةُ , اَلْفَضُّ , اَلنَّحْرَمُ

There is no indefinite article in Arabic.

Nouns are classified; as

I. **إِسْمٌ جَامِدٌ** Primitive, opposed to **إِسْمٌ مُشْتَقٌّ** Derived.
جَمَدَ to become solid. **أَشْتَقُّ** to derive.

II. **إِسْمٌ مُجَرَّدٌ** Containing root letters only, opposed
 [to **إِسْمٌ مَزِيدٌ فِيهِ** Augmented.
جَرَدَ to strip. **زَادَ** to increase.

III. **إِسْمٌ عَلَمٌ** Proper Noun opposed to **إِسْمٌ جِنْسِيٌّ**
 [Common Noun.

IV. **إِسْمٌ جِنْسِيٌّ** is either **إِسْمٌ عَيْنِيٌّ** denoting a concrete
 object
 or **إِسْمٌ مَعْنَى** denoting an abstract
 idea.

V. **إِسْمٌ عَلَمٌ** may be **مُفْرَدٌ** A single word
 or **مُرَكَّبٌ** compound.

مُرَكَّبٌ may be (a) **إِسْنَادِيٌّ** predicative or a pro-
 position; as

تَأَبَّطَ شَرًّا “He carried mischief
 under his arm”.

(b) **مُرَكَّبٌ مَزْجِيٌّ** Mixed Compound
 which is not a pro-
 position.

بَعْلَبَكْ Baalbec.

(c) **إِضَائِيٌّ** Correlative, as

عَبْدُ اللَّهِ

VI. **إِسْمٌ عَلَمٌ** is again either

(a). **مَنْقُولٌ** transferred from some other use, being originally an adjective, noun of action, com. noun, verb, sentence, or name of sound.

Masc. = Nejeeb Excellent	نَجِيبٌ	} = مَنْقُولٌ
Towfeek Divine aid	تَوْفِيقٌ	
Khaleel Friend	خَلِيلٌ	
Fem. = Jameelah Handsome	جَمِيلَةٌ	} = مَنْقُولٌ
Wadād Love	وَدَادٌ	
Nadah Dew	نَدَى	

(b). **مُرْتَجَلٌ** existing only as a proper name.

Masc. = Abraham	إِبْرَاهِيمٌ	} = مُرْتَجَلٌ
David	دَاوُدٌ	
John	حَنَّا	
Fem. = Mary	مَرْيَمٌ	} = مُرْتَجَلٌ
Helena	هَيْلَانَةٌ	
Sarah	سَارَةَ	

Finally the **إِسْمٌ عَلَمٌ** may be:

(a). **إِسْمٌ** name, as Zaid.

(b). **كُنْيَةٌ** sobriquet, name with prefix, as **أَبُو, أُمُّ**.

(c). **لَقَبٌ** title, as the Conqueror.

Masc. = Abu-Alatahia	أَبُو الْعَتَاهِيَّةِ	} = كُنْيَةٌ
Abu-Bakr	أَبُو بَكْرٍ	

Fem. = Mother of believers $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{أُمُّ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ} \\ \text{Mother of Goodness} \end{array} \right\} = \text{كُنْيَةٌ}$

A proper name may contain all three.

The **كُنْيَةٌ** comes first, the **إِسْمٌ** second, and the **لَقَبٌ** third.

The **إِسْمٌ** follows the declension of the **كُنْيَةٌ** and the **لَقَبٌ** may follow the declension of the noun or it may be **مَقْطُوعٌ** or **مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ**.

Masc. = Sword of the state $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{سَيْفُ الدَّوْلَةِ} \\ \text{John the beloved} \end{array} \right\} = \text{لَقَبٌ}$

Fem. = The little Jane $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{حَنَّةُ الصَّغِيرَةِ} \\ \text{Mary the prophetess} \end{array} \right\} = \text{لَقَبٌ}$

The proper noun is **شَخْصِيٌّ** if it refers to only one individual of a kind, and **جِنْسِيٌّ** if it be applied alike to every individual of a kind:

Proper name of the lion **أَسَامَةٌ**.
 „ „ of the hyena **أُمَّ عَامِرٍ**.

COLLECTIVE NOUNS.

Collective Nouns are of two kinds:

I. **إِسْمُ الْجَمْعِ** which implies multitude but has no singular of its form.

II. **شِبْهُ الْجَمْعِ** which implies multitude and forms a singular by affixing **ة** (**الْوَحْدَةُ** unity).

I. إِسْمُ الْجَمْعِ.

Swarm of bees	حَشْرَم	Army	حَمِيْس
Women	نِسَاء	Tribe, People	قَوْم
A Company	مَعْشَر	People	أَهْل
Descendants	دُرِّيَّة	People, Nation	شَعْب
Flock	قَطِيع	Horses	خَيْل
Herd of Gazelles	سِرْب	Multitude	مَلَأ
Tribe	قَبِيْلَة	Company of Men	
Family	أُسْرَة	up to ten	رَقَط
Family	عَائِلَة	Associates	بِطَانَة
Sect	طَائِفَة	Individuals	فَر
Troop	عُضْبَة	Company	جَمَاعَة
Troop	عِصَابَة	Birds	طَيْر
		Courtiers	حَاشِيَة

II. شِبْهُ الْجَمْعِ.

Bees	نَخْل	Pebbles	حَصَى
Figs	تَيْن	Hair	شَعْر
Words	كَلِم	Datestone	نَوَى
Seeds	حَب	Fish	سَمَك
Verses (Koran, Bible)	آي	Steps	دَرَج
Eggs	بَيْض	Net	شَبَك
Leaves	وَرَق	Brick	أَجْر
Palm trees	نَخْل	Spear	قَنَا, قَنَى
Ducks	بَط	Ostrich	نَعَام

Trees	شَجَر	Reed, Spear	أَسَل
Doves	حَمَام	Stomach	مَعِد
Flowers	زَهْر	Head	هَام
Roses	وَرْد	Reed-pen	يَرَاع
Apples	تَفَّاح	Reed	قَصَب
Geese	إِوَز	Pomegranate	رُؤْمَان
Hens	دَجَاج	Cows	بَقَر
Needs	حَاج	Wild Pigeon	يَمَام
Brushwood	أَجَم	Owl	نُوم

PART SECOND.

SYNTAX. النُّحُو

from نَحَا to *purpose*.

Nahu is the branch of Arabic grammar which treats of the state of the final letters of words as arranged in sentences, in respect to the Declension or Indeclension of such words.

Sentences may be composed of nouns only or of nouns and verbs together; the particle merely intensifies the meaning of the sentence.

DECLENSION. الْأَعْرَابُ

from أَهْرَبَ to *speak plainly*.

Declension is the change in the final vowels of words to shew the function of the words in a sentence. This change is caused by governing words or regents, which may be either expressed لَفْظِيَّةٌ or understood مَعْنَوِيَّةٌ.

INDECLENSION. الْبِنَاءُ

from بَنَى to *build*, and therefore what is immovable. Indeclension is the retention of a particular vowel or

سُكُون on the end of a word for some assignable reason.

Note. Some words retain their سُكُون or vowels not because they are indeclinable but because they end in Aleph (أ, إ) which does not admit of any vowel being placed over it; as

Youth أَلْفَتَى Stick أَلْعَصَا

Or, because they have always the same function in a sentence, as سُبْحَانَ which is always the absolute object.

The signs of Indecension أَوْجُهَ الْإِنْمَاء are ِ, َ, =, ُ. The ِ and ُ are common to the three parts of speech, as particles هَذَا, رَبِّ, verbs قُمْ, قَامَ, nouns لَدُنْ, أَيْنَ the ِ and = to the (a) noun and (b) particle.

(b) مِنْذُ, جَيْرِ (a) حَيْثُ, أَمْسِ

REGENTS. أَلْعَوَامِلُ

Words which stand alone are never declined; to be declined they must be arranged in a sentence and stand in some relation to other words. The words which govern others are called regents. The regents which are expressed are:

(a) the verb, (b) the preposition, (c) the particles of apocopation جَوَازِمُ أَلْفِعْلِ, (d) the subjunctive particles نَوَاصِبُ أَلْفِعْلِ, (e) words which affect the form and meaning of the subject and predicate أَلنَّوَاسِخُ, (f) words

derived from the verb, viz. the nouns of agent, object, attribute, superiority, and action.

(g). Adverbs which have the function of verbs **أَسْمَاءُ** **الْفِعْلِ**. The regents which are understood are **الْأَبْتِدَاءُ** and **التَّجَرُّدُ**. The governing word should always precede the word governed.

CASES.

There are four cases in Arabic:

رَفْعٌ Nominative **نَصْبٌ** Accusative
جَرٌّ or **خَفْضٌ** Genitive and **جَزْمٌ** Apocopative i. e.,
 the dropping of the last vowel or weak letter. The nominative and accusative cases are common to nouns and verbs, the genitive is peculiar to nouns, and the apocopative to verbs.

The Signs of Declension are of two kinds:

I. Letters viz. **ن**, **ي**, **أ**, **و**.

II. Vowels viz. **ِ**, **َ**, **ُ**, **ُ**.

The latter are the original signs.

The signs of declension are either **ظَاهِرَةٌ** *expressed*, or **مُقَدَّرَةٌ** *implied*.

I. Words which take letters for their signs of declension, **مَوَاطِنُ الْأَعْرَابِ بِالْحُرُوفِ** are:

(a). The five nouns — viz.

أَبٌ father **أَخٌ** brother **حَمٌ** father-in-law **فَمٌ** mouth
 and **ذُوٌ** possessing, when in construction with nouns

and pronouns other than the suffix of the first person singular **يَا أَيُّهَا الْمَتَكَلِّمُ**.

(b). The dual, **أَيُّهُنَّ**.

(c). The regular masculine plural and the like, viz. the decades.

(d). The five forms which occur in the conjugation of the aorist:

يَفْعَلَانِ, تَفْعَلَانِ, يَفْعَلُونَ, تَفْعَلِينَ, تَفْعَلُونَ

II. Words which take vowels, **مَوَاطِنُ الْأَعْرَابِ بِأَلْحَرَكَاتِ**; are:

(a). The singular noun (b) the irregular plural (c) the regular feminine plural (d) the aorist when without the **ن** feminine and **ن** of assurance, and the expressed pronoun in the nominative case, **الضَّيِّيرُ الْبَارِزُ وَالْمَرْفُوعُ**.

DIVISION OF THE SIGNS OF DECLENSION.

أَوْجُهُ الْأَعْرَابِ

This is as follows for the

Nominative **ن, ا, و, ة**.

Accusative **ن, ي, ا, ة, ة**, suppression of **ن**.

Genitive **ن, ي, ة**.

Apocopative **ن, ة**, suppression of **ن, ا, و, ة** and weak letters.

THE NOMINATIVE.

ء is the sign of the nominative in every word which takes a vowel as a sign of declension; as

Zaid went ذَهَبَ زَيْدٌ

و in the five nouns and in the regular masculine plural; as

Thy father and the believers came جَاءَ أَبُوكَ وَالْمُؤْمِنُونَ

ا in the dual; as

The two men strove together الرَّجُلَانِ تَخَاصَمَا

ن, is retained in the five verbs as a sign of their being in the nominative (indicative); as

The men know الرَّجَالُ يَعْلَمُونَ

THE ACCUSATIVE.

ة is the sign of the accusative in every word which admits of a vowel as the sign of declension except the regular feminine plural; as

I saw Zaid رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا

ة in the regular feminine plural; as

The women came riding جَاءَتِ النِّسَاءُ رَاكِبَاتٍ

ا in the five nouns; as

He loved thy brother أَحَبَّ أَخَاكَ

ي in the regular masculine plural and dual; as

I saw the two infidels and the believers رَأَيْتُ الْكَافِرَيْنِ وَالْمُؤْمِنِينَ

Suppression of ن, الْأَعْرَابُ, in the five verbs, as

They will never return لَنْ يَرْجِعُوا

THE GENITIVE.

ـِ is the sign of the genitive in every word where a vowel is used as a sign of declension except in words imperfectly declined; as

This is the son of Zaid هَذَا ابْنِ زَيْدٍ

ـِ in nouns imperfectly declined; as

I saw the son of Ahmad رَأَيْتُ ابْنَ أَحْمَدٍ

ـِ in the five nouns, the dual, and regular masculine plural; as مَرَرْتُ بِأَبِيكَ وَالْكَافِرَيْنِ وَالْمُؤْمِنِينَ.

I passed thy father, the two unbelievers and the believers.

THE APOCOPATIVE.

ـِ is the sign of the apocopative in verbs ending with strong letters not joined to expressed pronouns in the nominative case; as

I did not know لَمْ أَعْرِفْ

Suppression of ن occurs in the five verbs; as

Do not (ye two) strive with one another لَا تَتَخَاصَمَا

Suppression of the weak letters occurs in verbs ending with such letters when not joined to a manifest pronoun in the nominative case; as

Do you not know أَلَمْ تَدْرِ

IMPLIED SIGNS OF DECLENSION. تَقْدِيرُ الْأَعْرَابِ

I. All the vowels are implied on ا, ي because of
رَأَيْتُ الْفَتَى *impossibility*; as

The youth came جَاءَ الْفَتَى I saw the youth رَأَيْتُ الْفَتَى
I beat him with the stick ضَرَبْتَهُ بِالْعَصَا

II. َ and ِ are implied on the و and ي when not
preceded by َ, لَيْسَتْ نِقَالٌ *for heaviness*; as

Behold the judge prays هُوَذَا الْقَاضِي يَدْعُو

III. Vowels are implied in nouns when in construction
with the ي, الْمُنْكَلِمُ, as this must be preceded by َ,
لِلْمُبَاجَانَسَةِ *for agreement*; as

My friend went ذَهَبَ صَدِيقِي
I saw my friend رَأَيْتُ صَدِيقِي
I wrote with my pen كَتَبْتُ بِقَلْبِي

The و of the regular masculine plural is changed into
ي according to the rules of الْأَعْلَالُ and is incorporated
with the ي; as

These are my lovers (Nominative) هَؤُلَاءِ مُحِبِّي

The َ is implied when it is followed by هَمْرَةٌ الْوَصْلِ; as
Serve God أُعْبُدِ اللَّهَ

The vowels are implied in the pause and in rhyme; as
Fear God and you will be safe
from others خَفِ اللَّهَ تَأْمِنِ الْغَيْرَ

Only he who fears God is
the hero

إِنَّمَا مَنْ يَتَّقِي اللَّهَ الْبَطَلُ

The ن of declension which follows the five verbs in the nominative case may be implied when followed by the ن of protection الْوَقَايَةِ and always when followed by the ن of assurance التَّوَكُّيدِ; as

Do you love me? أَتُحِبُّونِي or أَتُحِبُّونِي

Will not ye two serve God? أَلَا تَعْبُدَانِ اللَّهَ

ي, ا, و are implied in pronunciation when followed by هَمْزَةُ الرَّمْلِ; as

This is the judge's father هَذَا أَبُو الْقَاضِي

When the last letter in a word is dropped the sign of declension is implied upon it; as

This is a just judge هَذَا قَاضٍ عَادِلٌ

The ِ is implied upon the ي and not on the ص.

The ن is omitted for تَخْفِيفٍ, *lightening*, and the ي, ا, و are dropped because of two silent letters coming together.

THE NUNATION. التَّنْوِينُ

The Tanween or Nunation is a quiescent ن annexed to a declinable word, the ن being suppressed and the final vowel doubled; as رَجُلٌ, رَجُلَانِ.

The tanween is of various kinds, the chief of these are:

I. تَنْوِينُ التَّمَكِينِ which is annexed to wholly declinable nouns; as رَجُلٌ, رَجَالٌ

II. تَنْوِينُ الْعَرَضِ which is annexed to the forms of

certain forms of Plurals, when they end in weak letters in the nominative and genitive cases, the weak letter being dropped; and to the words **كُدَّ**, **بَغَضَ** instead of placing them in construction, **أَلْمُضَافُ إِلَيْهِ**; and to **إِذْ** when in construction with a noun of time; as

Maidens **جَوَارِي** for **جَوَارِي**, **كُدَّ يَنْوَتْ** for **كُدَّ يَنْوَتْ**, **وَحِينَ إِذْ** for **سَأَذْهَبُ إِلَى غَزَّةٍ وَحِينَئِذٍ أَرَاكَ**.

III. **تَنْوِينُ الْمَقَابِلَةِ** which is annexed to the regular feminine plural so that it may resemble the **ن** of the regular masculine plural; as **مُؤْمِنَاتٍ**, (**مُؤْمِنِينَ**).

IV. **تَنْوِينُ التَّنْكِيرِ** which is annexed to certain proper nouns that become indeclinable when used as common nouns; as

I passed Sibewaih and
another Sibewaih

مَرَرْتُ بِسَيْبَوَيْهِ وَ سَيْبَوَيْهِ آخَرَ

V. **تَنْوِينُ التَّرْنَمِ** which is used in poetry.

STATES OF THE NOUN IN DECLENSION AND INDECLENSION.

أَحْوَالُ الْأَسْمِ فِي الْأَعْرَابِ وَالْبِنَاءِ

Nouns originally admit of declension.

Verbs originally do not admit of declension.

Particles are always indeclinable.

The Noun may be:

I. Wholly Declined مُعْرَبَةٌ تَمَامًا admitting of the = and تَنْوِينُ التَّمَكِينِ.

II. Imperfectly Declined مِنَ الصَّرْفِ مَمْنُوعٌ not admitting of the = or تَنْوِينُ التَّمَكِينِ.

III. Indeclinable مَبْنِيٌّ.

Nouns which resemble verbs resemble them also in being imperfectly declined, that is, they do not take the تَنْوِينِ or =, and those nouns which resemble particles, resemble them also in being indeclinable.

الْمَمْنُوعُ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ

The word صَرْفٍ in this connexion signifies the tanween or according to some grammarians the tanween and =; therefore the expression مِنَ الصَّرْفِ مَمْنُوعٌ is the inability of a word to take the tanween and =. All words which are مِنَ الصَّرْفِ مَمْنُوعَةٌ take = in the genitive and accusative cases.

IMPERFECTLY DECLINED NOUNS.

الْأَسْمَاءُ الْمَمْنُوعَةُ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ

These are the following:

I. Nouns.

(a). Proper Nouns which have undergone change in form but not in meaning, they are:

مَضْرُ	جَمَحُ	دَلْفُ	جُشَمُ	عُمَرُ
هَبْدُ	جُحَى	عَصَمُ	قَمَمُ	زَحَلُ
هَدَلُ	بَلَعُ	ثَعْلُ	قَرَحُ	زَفَرُ

(b). Proper Nouns which are on measures peculiar to the verb, as **فَعَلٌ**, **فَعِلٌ**, and those measures which have as their prefix a servile letter which is also peculiar to the verb; as

شَمْرٌ، أَحْمَدُ، تَدْمُرُ، يَزِيدُ، يَشْكُرُ

(c). Proper Nouns which have **ان** affixed to them; as

عُثْمَانُ، حَمْدَانُ، سَرْحَانُ

(d). Compound Proper Nouns when the second part only is declined **مُرَكَّبٌ مَرْجِيٌّ**; as

بَعْلَبَكُ، حَضْرَمَوْتُ، مَعْدِي كَرِبُ

(e). Foreign Proper Nouns which have (1) more than three letters or (2) three letters with the second one vowelless; as

إِبْرَاهِيمُ، يُوسُفُ

(f). Proper Nouns ending with **ة** whether masculine or feminine; as

طَلْحَةَ (Masc.) فَاطِمَةَ (Fem.)

(g). Feminine Proper Nouns (1) not ending with **ة** and of more than three letters, or (2) of three letters, or (2) of three letters with the second vowelless; as

زَيْنَبُ، هَدَانُ.

II. Adjectives (1) which have undergone change in form but not in meaning; as

I saw other women **أَخَرَ** رَأَيْتُ نِسَاءَ **أَخَرَ**

(Nouns of Superiority are not made plural, dual, or feminine, unless they have the article or are in construction).

(2). Adjectives on the measure of verbs as **أَحْمَرٌ** red. (These are the nouns of attribute and the nouns of superiority).

(3). Adjectives ending with **ان** having **ء** on the **ف**; as

Fem. **سَكْرَى** drunken **سَكْرَان**

Adjectives come under these rules when they do not form their fem. with **ة** and when they are originally adjectives; but nouns used as adjectives; as **أَرْبَعٌ** and **صَفْرَان** are wholly declinable.

III. All Nouns ending with an additional **آء** or **ى**; as

سَلْمَى, **حُبْلَى**, **مَرْضَى**, **فُضْلَى**
خَنْسَاءٌ, **حَمْرَاءٌ**, **أَصْدِقَاءٌ**, **صَحْرَاءٌ**

IV. Plural Nouns on the measure of the plural of plurals i. e. nouns which have after the **ل** of plural two letters, or three letters the middle one being **ى** silent, as **مَغَانِمٌ**, **دِرَاهِمٌ**; if **ة** is added to the latter then the noun is wholly declinable, as **أَسَافَةَ**.

All these nouns when in construction or joined to the article take the **ـ** as a sign of the genitive.

OF NOUNS WHICH ARE INDECLINABLE.

بِنَاءِ الْأَسْمِ

When nouns resemble the particle they are indeclinable. Nouns resemble the particle:

I. When they have less than three radical letters.

II. When they have the meaning of the particle or

need like it other words to complete their meaning.

III. When they take the place of the verb without being affected by it.

IV. When they have no function in the sentence
 مَهْمَل as وَيْهٍ alas!

INDECLINABLE NOUNS. الْأَسْمَاءُ الْمَبْنِيَّةُ

Indeclinable Nouns are:

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| I. The Personal Pronouns | الضَّمَائِرُ (الشَّخْصِيَّةُ) |
| II. The Demonstrative Pronouns | أَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ |
| III. The Conditional Nouns | أَسْمَاءُ الشَّرْطِ |
| IV. The Interrogative Pronouns | أَسْمَاءُ الْاِسْتِفْهَامِ |
| V. The Relative Pronouns | أَسْمَاءُ الْمَوْضُولِ |
| VI. The Interjections | أَسْمَاءُ الْأَصْوَاتِ |
| VII. The Names of Verbs | أَسْمَاءُ الْأَفْعَالِ |
| i. e. Adverbs which perform the function of Verbs. | |
| VIII. Some Adverbs | بَعْضُ الظَّرُوفِ |

These nouns always resemble particles and are therefore always indeclinable. Nouns which sometimes resemble particles are only at such times indeclinable; these are:

- I. Nouns directly addressed by
 the vocative

الْمَقْصُودُ بِالْمَدَّاءِ

II. The subject of the Absolute

Negative in certain states

لَا النَّايَةَ لِلْجِنْسِ

III. The Compound Numerals from 11 to 19.

IV. Some Adverbs.

Indeclinable words should have the ة, but if the word is of one letter only, or if its penultimate is a silent letter, it cannot take the ة.

Words which are indeclinable because of their position in the sentence do not take the ة.

The preterite, imperative, and the aorist with the ن of assurance or ن feminine affixed to it, are indeclinable; the aorist in other forms is declinable.

Sometimes the signs of indeclension are implied; as

O Hathami

يَا حَٰمِ

There is no youth with you

لَا تَتَىٰ عِنْدَكُمْ

DEFINITE NOUNS.

The Noun is either Definite مَعْرُوفَةٌ or Indefinite نَكِيرَةٌ.

The Definite Nouns are:

(a). The personal pronoun, (b) proper noun, (c) demonstrative pronoun, (d) relative pronoun, (e) noun made definite by the article, (f) noun in construction with a definite noun, (g) noun definitely addressed by the vocative.

السَّكَلَامُ. SPEECH.

Speech consists of sentences **جُمْلٌ** pl. of **جُمْلَةٌ**, each of which has necessarily a subject and predicate.

The subject is called **الْمُسْنَدُ إِلَيْهِ**, *that upon which the attribute leans*, that to which something is attributed, the predicate **الْمُسْنَدُ** *that which leans upon or is supported*, whilst the relation between them is called **الْإِسْتِنَادُ** *the act of leaning*.

The principal part of a sentence or clause (which is absolutely essential to the meaning) is called **الْعُمْدَةُ** *the support*, and the subordinate part (which may be dispensed with), as for instance the objective complement of the verb, **الْفَضْلَةُ** *that which is in excess*.

Under the term **عُمْدَةٌ** are included (a) **الْفَاعِلُ** the agent, (b) **نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ** the substitute for the agent, and (c) **الْمُبْتَدَأُ وَ الْخَبَرُ** the subject and predicate; the term **فَضْلَةٌ** includes all other nouns in the sentence.

Sentences which begin with the subject (substantive or pronoun) are called **جُمْلٌ اِسْمِيَّةٌ** *Nominal Sentences*.

A nominal sentence is distinguished by the absence of a logical copula either expressed by or contained in a finite verb; but a sentence where the predicate is a verb preceding the subject, as **قَامَ رَيْدٌ** or one consisting of a verb which includes both subject and predi-

cate, as **مَاتَ** he died, is called **جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ** *Verbal Sentence*.

The subject of a nominal sentence is called **الْمُبْتَدَأُ** *that with which a beginning is made*, the inchoative; and its predicate **الْخَبَرُ** *the announcement*.

The subject of a verbal sentence is called **الْفَاعِلُ** *the agent*, and its predicate **الْفِعْلُ** *the action or verb*.

A verbal sentence relates an act or event, while as a rule, a nominal sentence is descriptive of a person or thing; as **الْمَلِكُ مَرِيضٌ** the king is ill; and in nominal sentences the **مُبْتَدَأٌ** always implies contrast with another **مُبْتَدَأٌ**

زَيْدٌ قَامَ وَعَمْرٌو جَلَسَ Zaid rose and Amr sat, whilst in the verbal sentence the emphasis rests solely upon the verb.

In order to avoid difficulties and misconceptions it is necessary that these terms agent and **مُبْتَدَأٌ** be maintained.

THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

The following are in the Nominative case:

I. The Agent **الْمَرْفُوعَاتُ الْفَاعِلُ**.

II. The Substitute for the Agent **نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ** Subject of a passive verb.

III. The Subject }
IV. The Predicate } **الْمُبْتَدَأُ وَالْخَبَرُ**.

V. The Subject *اسم* of *كَانَ وَ أَخَوَاتِهَا*.

VI. The Predicate of *إِنَّ وَ أَخَوَاتِهَا* and of *لَا النَّافِيَةِ* *لِلْجِنْسِ* the Absolute Negative.

VII. The Aorist when not acted upon by particles, nor followed by *ن* of feminine, or *ن* of Assurance.

VIII. Appositives or nouns in apposition to Nominatives.

THE VERBAL SENTENCE. *أَلْفَاعِلُ وَالْفِعْلُ*

The Agent and the Verb.

The Noun is called the agent when it is preceded by the verb in the active voice.

It may be a noun *إِسْمٌ ظَاهِرٌ* or a personal pronoun expressed or understood *صَمِيرٌ بَارِزٌ أَوْ مُسْتَتِرٌ*.

The agent in both dual and plural of the masc. and fem. takes the verb in the singular; as

The believers came

جَاءَ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ

The women spoke

تَكَلَّمَتِ النِّسَاءُ

The two men rose

قَامَ الرَّجُلَانِ

The two women sat

جَلَسَتِ الْمَرْأَتَانِ

The verb must have the sign of feminine when the agent is a real fem. noun singular not separated from the verb; also when the agent is a feminine personal pronoun; as

Mary feared the angel

مَرْيَمُ خَافَتْ مِنَ الْمَلَكِ

Mary understood

فَهَيْتَ مَرْيَمَ

In the first of these sentences مَرْيَمَ is Muftada and خَافَتْ a sentence composed of the verb and the implied fem. pronoun هِيَ which refers to Mary.

The verb may or may not take the sign of fem. in the following cases:

I. Where the verb is separated from its agent in the fem.; as

Mary came to-day جَاءَتْ or جَاءَ أَلْيَوْمَ مَرْيَمَ

Note if إِلَّا separates them, it is best to drop the ت fem.; as

No one came but Mary مَا جَاءَ إِلَّا مَرْيَمَ

II. Where the agent is not a real feminine; as

The sun rose طَلَعَتْ or طَلَعَ السَّمْسُ

III. In all plurals except the reg. masc. plural; as

The believers came (fem.) جَاءَتْ or جَاءَ الْمُؤْمِنَاتُ

The men knew عَرَفَتْ or عَرَفَ الرَّجُلُ

The winds blew هَبَّتْ or هَبَّ الرِّيحُ

IV. Where the verb does not admit of conjugation; as

Hind is praise worthy نِعِمَّتْ, نِعِمَ هِنْدُ

Hind is not standing لَيْسَتْ, لَيْسَ هِنْدُ وَاقِفَةً

POSITION OF THE AGENT IN THE SENTENCE.

The agent should immediately follow the verb, but in the following cases it is preceded by the object:

I. When the action of the verb is confined to the agent by **إِلَّا** preceded by **مَا**, **لَا**, or **إِنَّمَا**; as

No one provides for mankind
except God

مَا يَرْزُقُ الْخَلْقَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

Only Zaid struck Amr

إِنَّمَا ضَرَبَ عَمْرًا زَيْدٌ

II. When the object is an attached pronoun and the agent a noun; as

My father loves me

يُحِبُّنِي أَبِي

III. When the agent contains a pronoun which refers to the object; as

The blossom beautified the trees

زَانَ الشَّجَرَ زَهْرُهُ

THE AGENT PRECEDES THE OBJECT.

I. When the action is restricted to the latter by the particles **إِنَّمَا** or **إِلَّا**; as

The sailor hears nothing
but the waves

لَا يَسْمَعُ الْمَلْحُ إِلَّا الْأَمْوَاجَ

II. When it is an attached pronoun; as

I honoured the king

أَكْرَمْتُ الْمَلِكَ

III. When it cannot be distinguished from the object by case endings or by meaning; as

This person loved that

أَحَبَّ هَذَا ذَاكَ

Jesus lived in the same age as John

عَامَرَ عَيْسَى يَحْيَى

The verb may be omitted but the agent must always be either expressed or understood; as

Who came? Zaid (came)

مَنْ جَاءَ؟ (جَاءَ) زَيْدٌ

The verb is necessarily omitted when a noun in the nominative case follows a particle which is specially used with verbs; as **إِن إِذَا**.

If thou honourest the honourable one, thou wilt have gained him; and if thou honourest the base one, he will rebel

إِذَا أَنْتَ أَكْرَمْتَ الْكَرِيمَ مَلَكَتَهُ وَإِنْ أَنْتَ أَكْرَمْتَ اللَّئِيمَ تَمَرَدَ

The nouns of agent, attribute, object, superiority, action, names of verbs, and nouns resembling any of these, may also have an agent.

THE SUBJECT OF A PASSIVE VERB.

نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ

Substitute for the Agent.

The object of a passive verb is put in the nominative case; as

Thou wast struck

ضُرِبْتَ

No one was struck but thyself

مَا ضُرِبَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ

The thief was imprisoned

سُجِّنَ اللَّصُّ

If, however, the object is not found in the sentence the noun of action or an adverbial or prepositional phrase stands for the agent, and must be made definite by (1) being qualified or (2) being in construction or (3) being a proper noun or (4) being numbered; as

(1). A just judgment was decreed

قُضِيَ قَضَاءٌ عَدْلٌ

(2). The place of the prince was occupied

جَلَسَ مَكَانَ الْأَمِيرِ

(3). Zaid was passed by

مَرَّ بِزَيْدٍ

(4). The Sabbath was kept

حَفِظَ السَّبْتَ

Many sayings were spoken

قِيلَ أَقْوَالٌ

The noun of action, adverb, and preposition must be مُنْصَرَفٌ i. e. capable of having different functions in the sentence, unlike

رَأَى الْقَسَمَ، عِنْدَ، سُبْحَانَ

The Agent is omitted:

(a). Because unknown or well-known or unimportant; as

The house was robbed

سُرِقَ الْبَيْتُ

The bell was rung

قُرِعَ الْجَرَسُ

The world was created

خُلِقَتِ الدُّنْيَا

(b). Brevity of speech, rhyme or measure in poetry, or concealment.

When a verb has two or more objects in the active voice, the first takes the place of the agent in the passive voice; as

Zaid was clad in a coat

كُسِيَ زَيْدٌ جُبَّةً

Amr clothed Zaid with a coat

كَسَا عَمْرُو زَيْدًا جُبَّةً

I informed the men that

the prince was coming

أَخْبَرْتُ النَّاسَ الْأَمِيرَ قَادِمًا

The men were informed that

the prince was coming

أُخْبِرَتِ النَّاسُ الْأَمِيرَ قَادِمًا

THE NOMINAL SENTENCE. **الْمُبْتَدَأُ وَالْخَبَرُ**

الْمُبْتَدَأُ *that which begins* or stands at the head of a sentence is the noun **إِسْمٌ** or subject of a nominal sentence and is put in the nominative case on account of the absence of any word governing it.

It is originally a substantive **مَوْضُوفٌ** *that which admits of description* forming the subject of the sentence. It is also an adjective **صِفَةٌ** forming the predicate of the sentence when it occurs after a negative or interrogative particle, in which case it takes an agent instead of a **خَبَرٌ** predicate.

The term **مَوْضُوفٌ** comprises common and proper nouns, the nouns of time and place, and nouns of instrument. The term **صِفَةٌ** comprises the nouns of agent, object, adjective resembling the agent, and the nouns of superiority and excess.

EXAMPLES OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

الْمُبْتَدَأُ وَالْخَبَرُ

	الْمُبْتَدَأُ	الْخَبَرُ
Study is pleasant	الْمُبْتَدَأُ	لَدِيدٌ
Are you forsaking my gods, O Abraham	أَنْتَ عَنِ آلِهَتِي يَا إِبْرَاهِيمَ	أَرَاغِبُ
Zaid his father is a learned man	أَبُوهُ عَالِمٌ	رَيْدٌ
God provides for us	يَرْزُقُنَا	اللَّهُ
The patient how is he this morning?	كَيْفَ أَصْبَحَ	الْمَرِيضُ
My friend let him come	لِيَأْتِ	صَدِيقِي
The age is two days, a day for you and a day against you	يَوْمَانِ لَكَ عَلَيْكَ	الدَّهْرُ يَوْمٌ وَيَوْمٌ
The orator is on the platform	فَوْقَ الْمِنْبَرِ	الْكَاطِبُ
Men continue in their fol- lies whilst the mill stone of death grinding	فِي غَفْلَاتِهِمْ تَطْحَنُ	النَّاسُ وَرَحَى الْمَيِّتَةِ
Examples of	الْمُبْتَدَأُ	الْخَبَرُ
To every disease there is a remedy	دَوَاءٌ	لِكُلِّ دَاءٍ
The beloved of my beloved is beloved to my heart	حَبِيبٌ حَبِيبِي	حَبِيبٌ إِلَى قَلْبِي

THE PREDICATE.

The predicate completes the meaning of the subject.
It must be indefinite and follow the subject.

It may be:

I. **مُفْرَدٌ** that is a singular, dual, or plural noun; as

The two boys are coming **الْفُلَّامَانِ قَادِمَانِ**

The believers are happy **الْمُؤْمِنُونَ سَعْدَاءُ**

Knowledge is useful **الْعِلْمُ نَافِعٌ**

II. **جُمْلَةٌ** a sentence. This sentence may be:

1). **خَبَرِيَّةٌ** Enunciative.

(a) Nominal **اِسْمِيَّةٌ**, (b) verbal **فِعْلِيَّةٌ**, (c) conditional **شَرْطِيَّةٌ**; as

(a). The man his son is rich **الرَّجُلُ ابْنُهُ غَنِيٌّ**

(b). The man is praying **الرَّجُلُ يُصَلِّي**

(c). The king, if you obey
him, will honour you **الْمَلِكُ إِنْ أَطَعْتَهُ يُكْرِمَكَ**

2). **جُمْلَةٌ اِنْشَائِيَّةٌ** Inceptive, expressing volition or beginning.

(a) imperative, (b) interrogative, (c) prohibitive.

(a). Zaid let him stand **زَيْدٌ لِيَقِفْ**

(b). Zaid is he standing? **زَيْدٌ هَذَا هُوَ قَائِمٌ؟**

(c). You there is no welcome for you **أَنْتُمْ لَا مَرَحَبَاتَا بِكُمْ**

III. **شِبْهُ اَلْجُمْلَةِ**. An adverbial or prepositional phrase.

The believers are in Paradise **الْمُؤْمِنُونَ فِي اَلْجَنَّةِ**

The angels are with God الْمَلَائِكَةُ عِنْدَ اللَّهِ

An adverbial phrase expressing time cannot be the predicate of a concrete noun. We cannot say

The man is to-day الرَّجُلُ الْيَوْمَ

The house is to-morrow الْبَيْتُ غَدًا

but we may say

The prayer is to-day الصَّلَاةُ الْيَوْمَ

The departure is on the morrow الرَّحِيلُ غَدًا

When the predicate is an adverbial or prepositional phrase, a verb or adjective implying simple existence is understood, and this verb or adjective forms the predicate; as

The war (will be) to-morrow الْحَرْبُ (تَكُونُ) غَدًا

The king (is) upon his throne الْمَلِكُ (كَائِنٌ) عَلَى عَرْشِهِ

The predicate must always be connected with the subject by a *رَابِطٌ* binder. This may be:

(a). A personal or demonstrative pronoun; as

Zaid I know him زَيْدٌ أَعْرِفُهُ

The garment of piety, that is better لِبَاسُ التَّقْوَى دَالِلًا خَيْرٌ

(b). A simple repetition of the subject, or the subject may be included in the predicate; as

The day of judgment: what is the day of judgment? يَوْمَ الدِّينِ مَا يَوْمَ الدِّينِ

Zaid is a good man of men نَعَمَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ

The prophets هُمْ are holy الْأَنْبِيَاءُ قَدِيسُونَ

The men هُمْ arose الرَّجَالُ قَامُوا

but when there is no such pronoun there may or may not be agreement; as

Knowledge is of two kinds الْعِلْمُ عِلْمَانِ

Declinable nouns are of two kinds الْأَسْمَاءُ الْمَعْرُوبَةُ قِسْمَانِ

The subject should be definite and precede the predicate مَعْرِفَةٌ مُقَدَّمَةٌ, but it may be indefinite:

I. When it is preceded (a) by a negative or an interrogative particle; or (b) by an adverbial or a prepositional phrase as خَيْرٌ; as

(a). I have not a book مَا كِتَابٌ لِي

Is anything impossible هَلْ شَيْءٌ غَيْرٌ مُسْتَطَاعٍ

(b). To every good horse there is a fall لِكُلِّ جَوَادٍ كَبْوَةٌ

II. When it is qualified or an adjective, or has the signification of an adjective; as

One who prays and performs not is as a bow without a string دَاعٍ بِلَا عَمَلٍ كَقَوْسٍ بِلَا وَتَرٍ

A believer is better than an infidel مُؤْمِنٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْ كَافِرٍ

Something (great) made him good مَا أَحْسَنَهُ

III. When it is in construction; as

The conscience of a man in his guide صَبِيرُ الْإِنْسَانِ دَلِيلُهُ

An hour's righteousness is better than a thousand years' worship بَرٌّ سَاعَةٍ خَيْرٌ مِنْ عِبَادَةٍ أَلْفِ سَنَةٍ

IV. When it expresses condition, or is an answer to a question; as

He who comes to me will find rest مَنْ يَأْتِ إِلَيَّ يَسْتَرْحِ
 Who has come to you? مَنْ جَاءَ عِنْدَكَ
 A man (has come to me) رَجُلٌ (جَاءَ عِنْدِي)

V. When it is (a) an inclusive expression or (b) denotes separation into kinds; as

(a). All die كُلُّ يَمُوتُ
 A date tree is better than a fig tree نَخْلَةٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْ تِينَةٍ
 (b). One day is against us and

another for us فَيَوْمٌ عَلَيْنَا وَ يَوْمٌ لَنَا

VI. When it expresses supplication or imprecation; as

A curse upon Satan لَعْنَةُ عَلَى الشَّيْطَانِ
 Peace upon you سَلَامٌ لَكُمْ

VII. When it is joined by a conjunction to (a) a definite noun, (b) an adjective, or (c) a qualified noun; as

(a). A man and his friend
 hold converse رَجُلٌ وَصَدِيقُهُ يَتَحَا دَتَانِ

A book and the Bible are lost كِتَابٌ وَالتَّوْرَةُ مَفْقُودَانِ

(b). A man and a wise man are
 travelling رَجُلٌ وَعَالِمٌ سَاطِعَانِ

(c). A man and a strong
 lion strive together رَجُلٌ وَأَسَدٌ قَوِيٌّ يُصَارِعَانِ

VIII. If it follow إِذَا (الْتَجَائِيَّةُ) وَلَوْ, وَأَلَا or كَمْ (الْطَبَرِيَّةُ).

I entered and behold a
 thief in the house دَخَلْتُ فَإِذَا سَارِقٌ فِي الْبَيْتِ
 Had it not been for love I would
 have become weary لَوْلَا مَحَبَّةٌ لَكَالْتُ
 I went forth whilst a star
 was shining خَرَجْتُ وَنَجْمٌ قَدْ أَضَاءَ
 How many she-camels you have كَمْ نَاقَةً لَكَ

The Predicate may be definite when it is to the person addressed as an indefinite noun; as

This is my brother هَذَا أَخِي
 said to one who does not know him.

Also when the noun is made definite by the article; as
 This is the horse هَذَا الْخِصَانُ
 said to a man to whom the horse was mentioned.

THE SUBJECT PRECEDES THE PREDICATE

I. When both are either definite or indefinite; as

My brother is my friend أَخِي صَدِيقِي
 A book is better كِتَابٌ أَفْضَلُ
 God is the creator اللَّهُ الْخَالِقُ

II. When the predicate is a verb containing a pronoun in the nominative case referring to the subject; as

Love suffereth long and is kind الْمَحَبَّةُ تَتَأَنَّى وَتَرْفُقُ

III. When the predicate is restricted by **إِنَّمَا** or by **لَا** after the negatives **مَا** and **لَا**; as

Victory is only to those who
are patient

إِنَّمَا الْفَوْزُ لِلصَّابِرِينَ

Paradise is not except for
the good (lit.)

مَا الْجَنَّةُ إِلَّا لِلصَّالِحِينَ

IV. When the **ل**, **الْإِتِّدَادُ** of assurance is prefixed to the subject; as

Of a truth thou art Lord

لَأَنْتَ سَيِّدٌ

V. When the subject expresses (a) condition, (b) interrogation, or (c) when it is in construction with either of these; as

(a). Whomsoever I looked for I did
not find

أَيُّ طَلَبْتُهُ لَمْ أَجِدْهُ

(b). Who is present

مَنْ حَاضِرٌ

(c). Whose son is in the house

إِبْنُ مَنْ فِي الْبَيْتِ

THE PREDICATE PRECEDES THE SUBJECT

I. When the **مُبْتَدَأٌ** is indefinite and the **خَبَرٌ** is (a) an adverbial or (b) a prepositional phrase; as

(a). I have a pen

عِنْدِي قَلَمٌ لِي قَلَمٌ

(b). Between prodigality and miserliness there is a
medium

بَيْنَ تَبْدِيرٍ وَبُخْلِ رُتَبَةٌ

To everything which inflicts an injury however trifling
there is pain (lit.)

لِكُلِّ مَا يُرْدِي وَلَوْ قَلَّ أَلَمٌ

II. When the subject contains a pronoun referring to the predicate; as

The pleasure of the eye is its beloved (lit. filling)

مِلءُ عَيْنِي حَبِيبُهَا

In the house is its owner

فِي الدَّارِ صَاحِبُهَا

III. When the subject is restricted by *إِنَّمَا* or by *إِلَّا* with the negatives *مَا* and *لَا*.

There is no guide but God

مَا هَادٍ إِلَّا اللهُ

Only God is forgiving

إِنَّمَا العَافِرُ اللهُ

IV. When it has the chief place in the sentence; as

Whose son are thou?

إِبْنُ مَنْ أَنْتَ

Where is the way?

أَيْنَ الطَّرِيقِ

SUPPRESSION OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

Either subject or predicate may be omitted in such sentences as

Who is with you? Zaid (is with me)

مَنْ عِنْدَكَ زَيْدٌ (عِنْدِي)

How is Zaid? (Zaid) is well

كَيْفَ زَيْدٌ (زَيْدٌ) صَاحِحٌ

Also after *إِذَا* expressing suddenness; as

I went forth and behold!

the lion (standing)

خَرَجْتُ فَإِذَا الأَسَدُ (وَاقِفًا)

The snake, the snake, (is here)!

الأَكْبِيَّةُ الأَكْبِيَّةُ (هُنَا)

A gazelle, a gazelle!

(هَذَا) غَزَالٌ غَزَالٌ

(This is) the first chapter

(هَذَا) الأَصْحَاحُ الأَوَّلُ

The subject must be omitted in the following places:

I. Where the qualifying adjective is used as a predicate to an omitted subject **رَأَيْتُ الْمَقْطُوعَ**; as

I saw a man (he is) a generous man **رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا (هُوَ) كَرِيمًا**

II. After verbs of praise or blame; as

Good the man (the praised)

Abdullah **نِعْمَ الرَّجُلُ (الْمُدْرَحُ) عَبْدُ اللَّهِ**

Evil the man (the blamed)

Mohammed **بِئْسَ الرَّجُلُ (الْمُدْمُونُ) مُحَمَّدٌ**

III. When the predicate is a noun of action taking the place of the verb; as

(My patience is) excellent patience **(صَبْرِي) صَبْرٌ جَيِّدٌ**

(His love is) a great love **(مَحَبَّتُهُ) مَحَبَّةٌ عَظِيمَةٌ**

IV. When the predicate is an oath, the subject must be omitted, and conversely when the subject is an oath, the predicate must be omitted; as

I swear by my conscience

that I will do this **فِي ذِمَّتِي (بِيبِينِ) لَأَفْعَلَنَّ كَذَا**

I swear by thy life there is no one remaining upon

earth **لَعَنُوكَ (قَسَمِي) تَيْسَ فَوْقَ الْأَرْضِ بَاقٍ**

The Predicate is omitted (*a*) after **لَوْلَا** when it signifies simple existence; as

Had Zaid not been present

I must have perished **لَوْلَا زَيْدٌ (حَاضِرٌ) لَهْلَكْتُ**

but it cannot be omitted when anything but mere existence is implied; as

Had Zaid not acted graciously
I would have perished لَوْلَا رَيْدٌ مُّخْسِنٌ لَهَلَكْتُ

(b) after , having the meaning of with; as

Every man and his work كُلُّ رَجُلٍ وَعَمَلُهُ (مُقْتَرِنَانِ)

The Subject may have more than one predicate; as

The dog is sagacious (and) faithful الْكَلْبُ نَبِيْهٌ أَمِيْنٌ
here the conjunction may be used.

The predicate may be introduced by **ف** when the subject is (a) a relative pronoun, (b) an indefinite noun qualified by a sentence, or (c) an adverbial or prepositional phrase; as

A man outrunning gains
the prize رَجُلٌ يَسْبِقُ فَيَكْسِبُ الْجَائِزَةَ

THE ADJECTIVE. **الْمُبْتَدَأُ الصِّفَةُ**

This is the singular adjective preceded by an interrogative or negative particle and has for its nominative a noun or a detached pronoun which forms the subject of the sentence. This noun is the agent and takes the place of the predicate; as

Are you ready? هَلْ مُسْتَعِدٌّ أَنْتَ
here مُسْتَعِدٌّ is the adjective and أَنْتَ the pronoun in the nominative case.

This sentence admits of two grammatical explanations (a) **مُسْتَعِدٌّ** is the **مُبْتَدَأٌ** and **أَنْتَ** is the agent which takes the place of the **خَبَرٌ**, (b) **مُسْتَعِدٌّ** is the predicate and **أَنْتَ** is the subject with the order reversed.

When without the particle of interrogation or negation the sentence is of the first kind, as the adjective is always the predicate and the noun the subject.

If the noun is dual or plural, the adjective is the subject; as

Are the two men standing?

هَلْ قَائِمٌ الرَّجُلَانِ

Are thy sons beloved?

هَلْ مَحْبُوبٌ بَنُوكَ

The **صِفَةٌ** has the action of the verb, and this action is strengthened when the **صِفَةٌ** is preceded by particles which are originally peculiar to verbs. The **إِسْمٌ** which follows the **صِفَةٌ** is therefore called the agent.

WORDS WHICH AFFECT THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE. **النَّوَاسِخُ**

from **نَسَخَ** to cancel.

النَّوَاسِخُ are certain verbs and particles which precede the subject and predicate and change the declension and meaning of the latter.

The Verbs are:

كَانَ وَ **أَخْرَأَتْهَا** **الْأَفْعَالُ النَّاقِصَةُ** Abstract Verbs.

كَادَ وَ **أَخْرَأَتْهَا** **أَفْعَالُ الْمَقَارِبَةِ** Approximate Verbs.

ظَنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا أَعْمَالُ الْقُلُوبِ Verbs denoting a Mental Process.

صَيَّرَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا أَعْمَالُ التَّحْوِيلِ Verbs of Change.
 أَعْلَمَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا Verbs which take three Objects.

The Particles are:

الْمُشَبَّهَاتُ بِلَيْسَ Particles which resemble لَيْسَ
 لَا النَّافِيَةُ لِلْجِنْسِ the Absolute Negative
 إِنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا إِنَّ and Sisters.

Some of these verbs take the subject and predicate as their objects, viz.

ظَنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا صَيَّرَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا أَعْلَمَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا

Some take the subject as their *إِسْمِ* noun and the predicate as their *خَبَرِ* (predicate), viz.

كَانَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا لَا النَّافِيَةُ لِلْجِنْسِ
 كَادَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا إِنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا
 الْمُشَبَّهَاتُ بِلَيْسَ

As regards government they are divided into three classes:

I. Those which put the subject in the nominative, and the predicate in the accusative, viz.

كَانَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا كَادَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا الْمُشَبَّهَاتُ بِلَيْسَ

II. Those which put the *إِسْمِ* in the accusative and the predicate in the nominative, viz.

لَا النَّافِيَةُ لِلْجِنْسِ إِنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا

III. Those which put the subject and predicate in the accusative as their objects:

ظَنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا صَيَّرَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا أَعْلَمَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا

كَانَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا

I. Conjugated throughout and form derived nouns.	{ To be To become To be or do something in the morning " " " " " before noon " " " " " in the day " " " " " in the evening " " " " " in the night	}	كَانَ
			صَارَ
			أَصْبَحَ
			أَصْحَى
			ظَلَّ
			1) أَمْسَى
			بَاتَ

To continue: —

II. Used in preterite and aorist only.	{ He did not cease He did not leave off He desisted not from He relinquished not	}	مَا زَالَ
			مَا بَرِحَ
			مَا أَنْفَكَ
			مَا فَتَى
III. Preterite only.	{ As long as Not	}	مَا دَامَ
			لَيْسَ

1) These verbs are commonly used without reference to the special times implied in their meanings; so that **أَصْبَحَ أَمْسَى أَصْحَى** have the meaning of **صَارَ** to become; **ظَلَّ بَاتَ** signify a longer duration of time.

EXAMPLES.

The earth was with-
out form and void

كَانَتْ الْأَرْضُ خَرَبَةً وَخَالِيَةً
صَارَ الْوَقْتُ قَرِيبًا

The time became near
He, who overcomes,
may be overcome

قَدْ يُضِيحُ الْغَالِبُ مَغْلُوبًا

The horseman became
a captive

أَصْحَى الْفَارِسُ أُسِيرًا

The army remained
in readiness

ظَلَّتِ الْجُنُودُ مُسْتَعِدَّةً

My friend became
distant (space)

أَمْسَى صَدِيقِي بَعِيدًا

The camel-driver has
kept on driving fast

قَدْ بَاتَ الْكَادِي يَزْجُرُهَا

The beloved one will
not cease to be loved

لَا يَزَالُ الْكَئِيبُ حَبِيبًا

I did not cease to live
in Jerusalem

لَمْ أَبْرَحْ سَاكِنًا فِي أُورُشَلِيمَ

He will not cease to
be angry

لَا يَنْفَكُ يَغْضَبُ

He will not cease to
interfere in our affairs

مَا فَتَى يَتَدَاخِلُ فِي أُمُورِنَا

Walk in the light, as long
as the light is with you

أَسْلُكُوا فِي النُّورِ مَا دَامَ النُّورُ لَكُمْ

A highwayman is not
a hero

لَيْسَ مَنْ يَقْطَعُ طَرِقًا بَطَلًا

الْأَنْعَالُ الْمَاتِصَةُ **كَانَ** and **وَآخَوَاتُهَا** are called *incomplete verbs* because they require more than the subject to complete their meaning.

The conjugated forms of these verbs have the same action as the preterite.

كَانَ only may take a verb in the preterite as predicate in which case it may be preceded by **قَدْ**; the remainder require the verb to be in the aorist; as

Zaid had departed كَانَ زَيْدٌ قَدْ أَنْطَلَقَ

The predicate may precede a verb which is conjugated throughout; but with the other verbs the order must be preserved.

The **إِسْمٌ** with the verb follows the rules of the agent with its verb in all respects; that is, the verb takes its **إِسْمٌ** in the nominative and its **خَبَرٌ** in the accusative; as

Zaid was standing كَانَ زَيْدٌ قَائِمًا

Zaid beat Amr ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا

The **إِسْمٌ** with the predicate follows the same rules as the subject and predicate **الْمُنْبَتَدُ** and **الْخَبَرُ** of a nominal sentence; as

No one was standing except Zaid مَا كَانَ قَائِمًا إِلَّا زَيْدٌ

All these verbs except **مَا دَامَ**, **تَيْسَ** and **مَا فَتِيَ** may be used as perfect verbs when their meaning is made complete by the agent; as

Zaid existed **كَانَ زَيْدٌ** Zaid spent the night **بَاتَ زَيْدٌ**

What we have done we have done **قَدْ كَانَ مَا كَانَ مِنَّا**

The particle of negation **مَا** which precedes **زَالَ**, **بَرِحَ**, **أَلْفَكْتُ** may be replaced by (a) **لَا أَلْدَعَاءَ** *supplication*, (b) **لَا النَّهْيَ** *prohibition* or (c) **أَلْإِنكَارِي** *denial*:

(a). May you ever be blessed **لَا زِلْتَ مُبَارَكًا**

(b). Do not cease to be patient **لَا تَزَلْ صَابِرًا**

(c). Will the lad continue ignorant **هَلْ يَبْرُحُ الْعِلْمُ جَاهِلًا**

Any particle, verb, or noun having the meaning of the negative may be substituted for **مَا**; as

Zaid does not cease to be generous **زَيْدٌ غَيْرُ زَائِلٍ كَرِيمًا**

The judge does not cease to judge **لَيْسَ يَنْفَكُ الْقَاضِيُ يَقْضِي**

The **مَا** which precedes **دَامَ** is the **مَصْدَرِيَّةٌ زَمْنِيَّةٌ**.

I will not accompany you

as long as I live **لَا أَصْحَبُكَ مَا دُمْتُ حَيًّا**

Note: There are other verbs which are incomplete with a subject alone; they are made to follow **كَانَ**; as

To go in the morning **غَدَا** To go in the evening **رَاحَ**

To return **عَادَ، رَجَعَ، إِرْتَدَّ** To become **أَصْرَ**

Zaid returned disappointed **عَادَ زَيْدٌ خَائِبًا**

Like **زَالَ مَا** are **رَامَ مَا** and **وَنَى مَا**.

After the conditional particles **إِنْ** and **لَوْ**, **كَانَ** and its **إِسْمٌ** may be omitted; as

The witness, if he is alone, is

as nothing **أَلشَّاهِدُ إِنْ فَرَدًا عَدَمٌ**

Seek, even though it be
a ring of iron

إِلْتَمِسْ وَتَوَّ حَاتِمًا مِنْ حَدِيدٍ

The apocopated form of كَانَ when occurring in the middle of a sentence and not joined to a pronoun may drop the ن; as

Be not afraid

لَا تَكُ حَاتِمًا

APPROXIMATE VERBS. **أَفْعَالُ الْمَقَارِبَةِ**

1 and 2 may have an aorist. To be on	}	كَانَ
the point of being or doing		أَوْشَكَ
Express approximation	}	كَرِبَ
		عَسَى
Express hope or desire	}	لِلرَّجَاءِ
		إِخْلَوْلَقَ
	}	شَرَعَ
		أَنشَأَ
		جَعَلَ
		إِنْبَرَى
Express beginning		أَفْعَالُ الشَّرُوعِ
		طَفِقَ
		أَخَذَ
		قَامَ
		إِبْتَدَأَ
		عَلِقَ
	هَبَّ	

These are called approximate verbs because they begin with **كَانَ** *about to be or do*.

EXAMPLES.

His breathing was about
to cease

كَادَتْ أَنْفَاسُهُ أَنْ تَنْقَطِعَ

The crops were about to
dry up

أَوْشَكَتِ الزَّرْعُ أَنْ تَيْبَسَ

The heart was about to
melt with longing

كَرِبَ الْقَلْبُ يَذُوبُ شَوْقًا

May God relieve our diffi-
culties

عَسَى اللَّهُ أَنْ يَفْرِجَ كُرُوبَنَا

The heavens appeared as
though they would rain

إِخْلَوْلَقَتِ السَّمَاءُ أَنْ تُمَطَّرَ

The wise man began to
relate his story

شَرَعَ الْعَالِمُ يَقُصُّ قِصَّتَهُ

Zaid began to read

أَنْشَأَ زَيْدٌ يَقْرَأُ

The poet began to recite

جَعَلَ الشَّاعِرُ يُنْشِدُ

The runner began to run

إِنْبَرَى السَّاعِي يَجْرِي

The preacher began to
preach

طَفِقَ الْوَاعِظُ يَعْظُ

The men began to question
one another

أَخَذَ النَّاسُ يَتَسَاءَلُونَ

The bird began to sing

قَامَ الطَّيْرُ يَغْرِدُ

My friend began to expect me

إِبْتَدَأَ صَدِيقِي يَنْتَظِرُنِي

The traveller began to go
about the country

عَلِقَ السَّائِحُ يَجُولُ الْبِلَادَ

The merchant began to
offer his goods for sale

هَبَّ التَّاجِرُ يَعْرِضُ بَضَائِعَهُ

All these verbs govern in the same way as كَانَ; i. e.
they take an **إِسْم** in the nominative and a predicate

in the accusative. **كَادَ** and **أَوْشَكَ** may have an aorist and at times a noun of agent; the remainder are not conjugated. **كَادَ**, **عَسَى**, **أَوْشَكَ**, **إِخْلَوْلَقَ** may take **أَنَّ** before the predicate. The predicate of all these verbs must be in the aorist having as its agent a pronoun referring to the **إِسْمِ**.

عَسَى, **أَوْشَكَ**, **إِخْلَوْلَقَ** are sometimes treated as perfect verbs and take for their agent the noun of action composed of **أَنَّ** and the verb following it; as

I hope you will visit us **عَسَى رِيَارُتُكَ = عَسَى أَنَّ تَزُورَنَا**
 Rain was about to fall **إِخْلَوْلَقَ نُزُولُهُ = الْمَطَرُ إِخْلَوْلَقَ أَنَّ يَنْزِلُ**

Sometimes **عَسَى** takes as its nominative the pronoun in the accusative case; as

May you come **عَسَاكَ أَنْ تَأْتِيَ**

The **ك** is in the place of **ت** in **عَسَيْتَ**.

The predicate may precede the **إِسْمِ**; as

Zaid almost died **كَادَ يَمُوتُ زَيْدٌ**

PARTICLES WHICH RESEMBLE. **لَيْسَ**

لَا . إِنَّ . لَمَّا

The particle **مَا** governs as **لَيْسَ** when the negation and order are preserved; as

Zaid is not standing **مَا زَيْدٌ قَائِمًا**

but if we say

No one but Zaid is standing مَا قَائِمٌ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ
 or Zaid is only standing مَا زَيْدٌ إِلَّا قَائِمٌ
 or Zaid is not standing مَا قَائِمٌ زَيْدٌ

the مَا does not govern because the first example is a positive assertion, and in the second and third the order is reversed.

لَا governs as لَيْسَ and follows the rules of مَا except that its subject and predicate must be indefinite; as

There is not a man present alone لَا رَجُلٌ حَاضِرًا

This negatives the individual only; so that the sentence may mean that there are two or more men present; it is therefore called **الْأَنَافِيَةُ لِلرَّحْدَةِ**.

When مَا and لَا have the same government as لَيْسَ they are called **الْحِجَابِيَّتَيْنِ**.

إِن governs as لَيْسَ and follows the rules of مَا.

I am not standing إِنْ أَنَا قَائِمًا

A man is not dead by the mere ending of his natural life إِنْ الْمَرْءُ مَيِّتًا بِأَنْتِهَاءِ حَيَاتِهِ

لَات governs as لَيْسَ when its predicate is a noun of time and its اِسْم is not mentioned; as

It is not the time for study لَاتَ (الْوَقْتُ) وَقْتُ دَرَسٍ

لَات takes the same word for its اِسْم as the predicate; so that the word mentioned indicates what is omitted.

PARTICLES WHICH RESEMBLE VERBS.

الْحُرُوفُ الْمَشَبَّهَةُ بِالْأَفْعَالِ

إِنَّ أَنْ *certainly, surely, verily*; express assurance.

كَأَنَّ *like, as if*; has the meaning of resemblance when the predicate is a primitive noun, but of doubt when the predicate is a derived noun.

لَكِنَّ *but, yet, nevertheless*; is used to correct the opinion formed from the previous sentence.

لَيْتَ *would that*; expresses a wish for what is impossible or difficult of attainment.

لَعَلَّ *perhaps, per chance, if haply*; expresses expectation. These particles resemble verbs in having (a) at least three letters, (b) $\bar{\text{ـ}}$ on their final letter, (c) the meaning and government of verbs; but in order to distinguish them from verbs their government is reversed.

Surely God is forgiving,
merciful

إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَغَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ

here the subject has $\bar{\text{ـ}}$ instead of ـ

Verily the time is nigh
I knew that study would

إِنَّ الْوَقْتَ قَرِيبٌ

increase knowledge

عَلِمْتُ أَنَّ الْمَطَالَعَةَ تَزِيدُ الْمَعْرِفَةَ

As if Zaid were a lion

كَأَنَّ زَيْدًا أَسَدٌ

Amr is rich but he is

a miser

عَمْرٌ غَنِيٌّ لَكِنَّهُ بَخِيلٌ

I wish that youth would
return

لَيْتَ الشَّبَابَ يَعُودُ

Fear God, if haply ye
may find mercy

اتَّقُوا اللَّهَ لَعَلَّكُمْ تُرْحَمُونَ

The particles **إِنَّ** and **أَنَّ** are really the same.

They are written with ـ when governed; as

Amr informed me that
Zaid is dead

أَخْبَرَنِي عَمْرُو أَنَّ زَيْدًا مَيِّتٌ

إِنَّ is found in the following places:

I. The beginning of a sentence.

II. After a relative pronoun.

III. Introducing an answer to an oath having **ل** prefixed to the predicate.

IV. Introducing a statement following **قَالَ** and its derivatives; as

He said that he was ready

قَالَ إِنَّهُ مُسْتَعِدٌّ

V. Beginning a **جُمْلَةٌ حَالِيَّةٌ** a sentence expressing state or condition; as

I visited him, and am
assured of his generosity

زُرْتُهُ وَإِنِّي مُتَيَقِّنٌ بِكَرَمِهِ

VI. After **ظَنَّ وَأَخَوَانُهَا** when their predicate is preceded by **ل**.

I knew that Zaid was
really standing

عَلِمْتُ أَنَّ زَيْدًا لِقَائِمٌ

VII. After **أَلَا**.

Am I not a traveller?

أَلَا إِنِّي سَاطِعٌ

VIII. After **حَيْثُ**.

I sat where Zaid was sitting **جَلَسْتُ حَيْثُ إِنَّ زَيْدًا جَالِسٌ**

IX. Beginning a sentence which is predicate to a concrete noun; as

Zaid surely is a generous man **زَيْدٌ إِنَّهُ كَرِيمٌ**

In the following places **إِنَّ** or **أَنَّ** may be used:

I. After **إِذَا** expressing suddenness; as

I wenth forth and, behold!

the tiger was standing **خَرَجْتُ وَإِذَا أَنَّ النَّيْمَ وَاقِفٌ**

II. Where it begins the answer to an oath whose predicate is not introduced by **ل**; as

I swore that I would go **حَلَفْتُ أَنِّي أَذْهَبُ**

III. After **ف** of reward **فَاءَ الْجَزَاءِ**; as

Who comes to me will have honour **مَنْ يَأْتِ إِلَيَّ فَإِنَّ لَهُ الْكَرَامَةَ**

IV. After a subject which is a common saying; as

The best saying, God is one **خَيْرُ الْقَوْلِ أَنَّ اللَّهَ وَاحِدٌ**

أَنَّ and its sentence must be convertible into a noun of action in construction with its **اسْمٌ**; as

Your faithfulness pleases me **يُغْنِيَنِي أَنَّكَ صَادِقٌ = صِدْقُكَ**

إِنَّ may take the **ل** before its predicate when it has its true position in the sentence and also before the subject **مُبْتَدَأٌ** when the order is reversed; as

Surely Zaid is standing **إِنَّ زَيْدًا لَقَائِمٌ**

مَا may be affixed to these particles, in which case

with the exception of **لَيْتَ** they cease to govern; as

Zaid only is standing **إِنَّمَا زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ**

With these particles the predicate may precede the subject when the former is an adverbial or prepositional phrase; as

Would that I had a friend **لَيْتَ لِي صَدِيقًا**

When a second noun occurring after the predicate is joined by a conjunction to the **إِسْمِ** of **لَكِنَّ**, **أَنَّ** or **إِنَّ** it may take either the nominative or accusative case; as **إِنَّ زَيْدًا قَائِمٌ وَعَمْرًا عَمْرٌ**.

THE ABSOLUTE NEGATIVE. **لَا النَّفَابَةُ لِلْجِنْسِ**

The Negative Particle **لَا** denies the existence of a thing absolutely; as

There is no man good **لَا رَجُلٌ صَالِحٌ**

It governs in the same manner as **إِنَّ** taking an **إِسْمِ** in the accusative and a predicate in the nominative; both the **إِسْمِ** and predicate must be indefinite and the **لَا** introduce the **إِسْمِ**.

The **إِسْمِ** is either (a) in construction, (b) governing another word, (c) followed by a preposition or adverb which completes its meaning, or (d) a single word **مُفْرَدٌ**. In the first three cases **لَا** governs like **إِنَّ**, in the last, the **إِسْمِ** is indeclinable and takes the sign of the accusative which it had when declinable; as

(a). I have not a lead pencil لَا قَلَمَ رِصَاصٍ عِنْدِي

(b). There is no climber of
the mountain in the way لَا صَاعِدًا جَبَلًا فِي الطَّرِيقِ
Here صَاعِدًا governs جَبَلًا.

(c). There is no man upon
the house top sleeping لَا رَجُلًا فَوْقَ السَّطْحِ نَائِمٌ

(d). There is no infidel who
shall enter heaven لَا كَافِرٍ يَدْخُلُ الْجَنَّةَ

The reg. fem. plural may take the ة or ـ.

There are no female believers
in the town لَا مُؤْمِنَاتٍ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ
or مُؤْمِنَاتٍ

If the لَا is repeated and its conditions are observed
we may have any of the following five forms:

- | | | |
|------|--|---|
| I. | There is no power and strength save in God | لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ |
| II. | ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” | لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ |
| III. | ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” | لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ |
| IV. | ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” | لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ |
| V. | ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” | لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ |

In the first example each negative is regarded as introducing a separate sentence; in the second the repetition of the negative is regarded as preventing its characteristic action; in the third the first negative governs and the second is regarded as joined to the sentence composed of لَا with its إِسْم and حَبْر which

is virtually in the nom. case. In the fourth example the first **لَا** is regarded as not governing because of repetition; the second governs because it is regarded as introducing a new sentence. The fifth example is seldom used.

If the noun is (a) separated from **لَا** or if it is (b) definite, the **لَا** ceases to govern and must be repeated; as

(a). There is not a man and

not a woman in the house **لَا فِي الدَّارِ رَجُلٌ وَلَا امْرَأَةٌ**

(b). Neither Zaid nor Amr

is with us **لَا زَيْدٌ عِنْدَنَا وَلَا عَمْرٌ**

The predicate of **لَا** may be omitted; as

No harm **لَا بَأْسَ** Zaid (came) not another **جَاءَ زَيْدٌ لَا غَيْرَ**

The adjective qualifying the **إِسْم** may take the **ء**, **ة** or **ه** when the **إِسْم** and adjective are **مُفْرَدَاتٌ** individual words not separated from one another. Otherwise it takes **ه** or **ة**.

The Hemzeh of Interrogation may be prefixed to **لَا** without affecting its government.

ظَنَّ وَأَخَوَانُهَا

VERBS DENOTING A MENTAL PROCESS

أَفْعَالُ الْقُلُوبِ

These express Certainty	}	To see	رَأَى
		To know	عَلِمَ
		To find	أَلْفَى
		To know	دَرَى
		To find	وَجَدَ
		Learn	تَعَلَّمَ
These express Doubt	}	To think	ظَنَّ
		To reckon	جَعَلَ
		To suppose	زَعَمَ
		To reckon	عَدَّ
		To suppose	حَسَبَى حَسَبًا
		To reckon	حَسِبَ
		To imagine	خَالَ
Grant	هَبَّ		

EXAMPLES.

I see (that) men are
heedless

أَرَى النَّاسَ غَافِلِينَ

Know (that) love is the
greatest virtue

إِعْلَمِ الْمَحَبَّةَ أَفْضَلَ الْفَضَائِلِ

Zaid found Amr generous	أَلْفَى زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا كَرِيمًا
Do you know who is with us?	أَتَدْرِي مَنْ عِنْدَنَا
I find a friend is needful	أَجِدُ الصَّدِيقَ لَازِمًا
Learn (that) men are different	تَعَلَّمَ النَّاسَ أَنْوَاعًا
I thought the thief was a guest	ظَنَنْتُ السَّارِقَ ضَيْفًا
You have made the night as day	جَعَلْتَ اللَّيْلَ نَهَارًا
Do you suppose (that) Zaid loves you	أَتَرَعَمُ زَيْدًا يُحِبُّكَ
Men count knowledge the most profitable of things	عَدَّ النَّاسُ الْعِلْمَ أَنْفَعَ الْأُمُورِ
Do you reckon (that) the pupils are in the school?	أَتَحْسِبُ التَّلَامِيذَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ
Do not imagine (that) Zaid is your friend	لَا تَحْكُلْ زَيْدًا صَدِيقَكَ
Grant that you are absent	هَبْ أَنَّكَ غَائِبٌ

When these verbs precede the subject and predicate they take them as their objects; but when they come between they may or may not have their special government. If however they follow their objects they govern.

Some of them are conjugated throughout; others are defective or not conjugated at all.

تَعَلَّمَ and هَبْ are only used in the imperative.

رَأَى to see (by dreams) follows these verbs in taking a double accusative, and also قَالَ to say when it means to think, but only when in the second person aorist, and immediately following an interrogative particle; as

Do you say that rain in the summer is harmful?

أَتَقُولُ الْمَطَرَ فِي الصَّيْفِ مُضِرًّا

If the particles مَا إِنْ لَا of negation, جَوَابُ الْقَسَمِ, لَوْ of condition, كَيْمِ الْخَبَرِيَّةِ and particles of interrogation come between one of these verbs and its objects, the verb does not govern, as these particles are regarded as having the chief function in the sentence.

These verbs are reflexive; the agent and the object may be two personal pronouns referring to the same person; as

I see myself ill

أَرَانِي مَرِيضًا

Either one or both objects may be omitted when the meaning is known; as

Do you think that Zaid is standing

أَتَظُنُّ زَيْدًا قَائِمًا

I think that (Zaid is standing)

أَظُنُّ

صَبَّرَ وَأَخَوَّانَهَا

VERBS DENOTING CHANGE.

أَفْعَالُ التَّحْوِيلِ

To leave	غَادَرَ	To make	صَبَّرَ
” ”	تَرَكَ	” ” and reckon	جَعَلَ
To make, give	وَهَبَ	To take as	تَتَخَذَ
To change into	رَدَّ	” ” ”	إِتَّخَذَ

These verbs are all conjugated except وَهَبَ.

They govern like ظَنَّ i. e. they take the subject and predicate as their objects, and exert their characteristic action independently of their position in the sentence.

EXAMPLES.

I made the clay into earth-
enware

صَبَّرْتُ الطِّينَ خَزْفًا

Zaid made the branch into
a bow

جَعَلَ زَيْدُ الْغُصْنِ قَوْسًا

I took him as a friend

تَتَخَذْتُهُ صَدِيقًا

I used the stick as a crutch

إِتَّخَذْتُ الْعَصَا عِكَاظًا

I left him sick

غَادَرْتُهُ مَرِيضًا

I left him standing

تَرَكَتُهُ قَائِمًا

May I be your ransom

وَهَبْنِي فِدَاكَ

It changed the heat into cold

رَدَّ الْحَرَّ بَرْدًا

VERBS WHICH TAKE THREE OBJECTS.

أَعْلَمَ وَأَخْبَرَ

To inform	أَخْبَرَ	To make to know	أَعْلَمَ
” ”	خَبَرَ	To make to see (mentally)	أَرَى (أَرَى)
To relate	حَدَّثَ	To inform beforehand	أَنْبَأَ
	”	”	نَبَأَ

أَرَى and أَعْلَمَ are conjugated throughout; the remaining five are mostly used in the passive voice. Particles may be introduced before the second and third objects; as

I was informed that the

physician was not present أُنبئتُ مَا الطَّيِّبُ حَاضِرٌ

The first object is the فاعِلِ نَائِبُ and the sentence which follows the particle is in the accusative عِوَضِ (instead of the two objects).

If we say:

I knew that Zaid was coming عَلِمْتُ أَنَّ زَيْدًا قَادِمٌ

or, I shewed him that the rain

was beneficial أَرَيْتُهُ أَنَّ الْمَطَرَ مُفِيدٌ

أَنَّ with its إِسْمِ and predicate takes the place of the two objects in the first example, and that of the second and third objects in the second, so that they are thus virtually in the accusative فِي مَحَلِّ نَصْبٍ.

EXAMPLES.

I made him know that
knowledge is profitable

أَعْلَمْتُهُ الْعِلْمَ نَافِعًا

God caused men to see
that Job was patient

أَرَى اللَّهُ النَّاسَ أَيُّوبَ صَابِرًا

The children of Israel
were foretold that Christ
would come

أَنْبِيَّ بَنُو إِسْرَائِيلَ الْمَسِيحَ قَادِمًا

I was informed that
my friend was absent

نَبَّئْتُ صَدِيقِي غَائِبًا

I informed him that
my love is great

أَخْبَرْتُهُ مَحَبَّتِي عَظِيمَةً

The men were informed
that the locusts were
distant

خَبَّرَ النَّاسَ الْجَرَادَ بَعِيدًا

Amr informed his bro-
ther that he is sick

حَدَّثَ عَمْرُو أَخَاهُ أَنَّهُ مَرِيضٌ

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE. **النَّصْبُ**

The following take the accusative case **الْمَنْصُوبَاتُ**

I. The Absolute Object

الْمَفْعُولُ الْمُبْتَدِئُ

II. The Objective Complement

الْمَفْعُولُ بِهِ

III. The Vocative

الْمُنَادَى

IV. The Adverbial Accusative of Time and

Place

الْمَفْعُولُ فِيهِ

- V. The Adverbial Accusative of Cause or Reason الْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ
- VI. The Object following , of Association الْمَفْعُولُ مَعَهُ
- VII. That which is Excepted الْمُسْتَثْنَى
- VIII. The Adverbial Accusative of State or Condition الْحَالُ
- IX. The Specification التَّنْيِيزُ
- X. The Predicate of خَبْرُ كَانَ وَكَادَ وَالْمُشَبَّهَاتِ بِلَيْسَ
- XI. The Subject of إِسْمٌ أَنْ وَلَا آتَا فِيهِ لِلْجِنْسِ
- XII. The Aorist when preceded by the Accusative Particles تَوَاصِبُ الْفِعْلِ
- XIII. The Appositives or words in Apposition to Accusatives تَوَاصِبُ الْمَنْصُوبَاتِ

These are called **فَصَلَاتٌ** and are used either objectively or adverbially.

The transitive verb governs its object in the accusative case. When, however, the object follows a preposition connecting it with the verb, the presence of the preposition puts the object in the genitive.

THE ABSOLUTE OBJECT. الْمَفْعُولُ الْمَطْلُوقُ

The Absolute Object is so called because it has not a preposition attached to its name, limiting or defining its action, like the other **مَفَاعِيلٌ**.

It expresses simple action of the verb, and is originally the noun of action of the same verb; as

He surely killed قَتَلَ قَتْلًا He surely beat ضَرَبَ ضَرْبًا
I greatly approved it اِسْتَحْسَنْتُهُ اِسْتِحْسَانًا عَظِيمًا

This noun of action must follow:

(a). A strong verb, not such as نَعِمَ, مَا أَحْسَنَ, كَانَ, كَادَ

(b). Another noun of action, or (c) an adjective expressing accidental qualities; as

(a). I loved him with a great love أَحْبَبْتُهُ حُبًّا عَظِيمًا

(b). I wondered at thy

striking Zaid severely عَجِبْتُ مِنْ ضَرْبِكَ زَيْدًا ضَرْبًا شَدِيدًا

(c). Zaid is very accomplished زَيْدٌ فَاصِلٌ فَضْلًا

THE ABSOLUTE OBJECT IS OF TWO KINDS:

(I). **الْمُرَكِّدُ** *that which assures*, is the noun of action of the same verb and simply strengthens its meaning thereby removing the idea of metaphor. This noun of action is always in the singular; as

I assuredly killed him قَتَلْتُهُ قَتْلًا

(II). **الْمُبَيِّنُ** *that which makes manifest*. This noun of action gives more meaning than the verb itself, and is used to express number and form; it may be made dual or plural; as

He ran swiftly رَكَضَ رَكْضًا سَرِيعًا I squatted تَعَدْتُ الْقُرْصَاءَ

I took two steps حَظَرْتُ حَظْرَتَيْنِ I sat upright جَلَسْتُ جُلُوسًا مُسْتَقِيمًا

The Absolute Object is originally the noun of action

of the same verb; but the following may take its place

فَوَائِبُ الْمَفْعُولِ الْمُبْتَلِقِ.

1. The noun of action of another verb having a similar meaning; as

I rejoiced greatly

فَرِحْتُ أَتَمَّهَا جَا

2. The noun of action of the same verb but on a different measure; as

I washed myself

تَغَسَّطْتُ أَغْتَسَا لَا

3. *إِسْمُ الْمَبْدَرِ* which has the signification of the noun of action; as

I prayed

صَلَّيْتُ صَلَاةً

4. *كُلُّ وَبَعْضٌ* when in construction with a noun of action; as

I loved him greatly

أَحْبَبْتُهُ كُلَّ الْمَحَبَّةِ

5. A demonstrative pronoun; as

I read that sort of reading

قَرَأْتُ تِلْكَ الْقِرَاءَةَ

6. An adjective; as

I ran with all my might

رَكَضْتُ أَشَدَّ الرَّكْضِ

7. Number; as

I struck him three blows

صَرَبْتُهُ ثَلَاثَ صَرَبَاتٍ

8. Form; as

I sat in a squatting posture

قَعَدْتُ الْقَرْئِصَاءَ

9. Instrument; as

I beat him with a whip

صَرَبْتُهُ سَرْطًا

10. The pronoun of a noun of action; as

I loved him with such
love as I did not love others **أَحْبَبْتُهُ مَحَبَّةً لَمْ أُحِبَّهَا غَيْرَهُ**

11. **مَا** and **أَيُّ** which imply interrogation; as

Speak what you wish **مَا شِئْتَ تَكَلَّمْ**

The verb is necessarily implied when the noun of
action takes its place; as

(Go) slowly **(أَمْهَلْ) مَهْلًا**

I heard and I obeyed **سَمِعْتُ سَمْعًا, أَطَعْتُ طَاعَةً, سَمِعًا وَطَاعَةً**

THE OBJECTIVE COMPLEMENT. **الْمَفْعُولُ بِهِ**

The Objective Complement receives the action of the
verb. The verb must therefore be transitive and in this
respect differs from the other **مَفَاعِيلُ** whose verbs may
be either transitive or intransitive. If the verb is not
originally transitive it is made so by a preposition; as

I rode the mare **رَكَبْتُ الْفَرَسَ**

I sat in a chair **جَلَسْتُ عَلَى كُرْسِيٍّ**

I clothed him with a beautiful garment **الْمَسْتَهَ ثَوْبًا جَمِيلًا**

I informed him that you were present **أَخْبَرْتُهُ أَنَّكَ حَاضِرٌ**

I brought a book **أَتَيْتُ بِكِتَابٍ**

THE VOCATIVE. **الْمُنَادَى**

The object addressed **الْمُنَادَى** is a part of the objec-
tive complement.

The vocative particles take the place of the implied verb to call **أُنَادِي، نَادَى** *I call*.

If the noun addressed is definite **مَعْرِفَةٌ** and single **مُفْرَدٌ** it becomes indeclinable, and takes the sign of the nominative, but when neither definite nor single it is put in the accusative; as

يَا مُحَمَّدُ O Mohammed! **يَا رَجُلًا** O Man!

When the noun addressed is in construction with **يَا** and does not end with a weak letter, the **ي** may be changed into **ا**; as

O my brother! **يَا أَخِي** for **يَا أَخَا**

In **أَبٌ** and **أُمٌ** the **ي** may be changed into **ت**; as

O my father **يَا أَبَتِ** O my mother **يَا أُمَّتِ**

If the word **ابْنٌ** follows the vocative the noun addressed takes the **ـ** in place of the **ـ**; as **يَا زَيْدَ بْنَ عَمْرٍو**

O Zaid son of Amr.

If the noun addressed has the article, the word **أَيُّ** or **أَيُّهُ** with **هَآءُ التَّنْبِيْهِ**, is introduced between the particle and the noun; in this case the noun takes the **ـ**.

If the noun is a derived one it is regarded as an adjective and if primitive it is **بَدَلٌ**; as

O you generous one **يَا أَيُّهَا الْكَرِيمُ**

O Man **يَا أَيُّهَا الرَّجُلُ**

Sometimes the noun addressed follows the demonstrative pronoun instead of **أَيُّهَا**; as

O (you) this man يَا هَذَا الرَّجُلِ

The word God although possessing the article may be addressed, as يَا اَللّٰهُ O God! also اَللّٰهُمَّ or اَللّٰهُمَّ يَا اَللّٰهُمَّ.

The vocative particle or the noun addressed may be omitted; as

(O) Joseph hear my saying يُوْسُفُ اَسْمِعْ قَوْلِيْ

O (people) worship يَا اَسْجُدُوْا

The Vocative Particles are:

اَ for a near object.

اَيَّ, اَيِّ, اَيَّا, اَيِّهَا, اَيِّهَا, اَيِّهَا for a distant object.

يَا for both near and distant objects.

THE ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND PLACE.

اَلْمَفْعُوْلُ فِيْهِ

This expresses the time and place of the action of the verb, and is so called because the nouns have the meaning of *in* فِي; as

I prayed (in) to day صَلَّيْتُ (فِي) اَلْيَوْمِ

I sat aside جَلَسْتُ (فِي) نَاحِيَةٍ

The noun of time whether definite or indefinite is put in the accusative; as

I came yesterday جِئْتُ اَلْبَارِحَةَ

I travelled for a time سَافَرْتُ مُدَّةً

The noun of place when indefinite is put in the accusative; as

I looked east and west,
north and south

تَطَلَّعْتُ شَرْقًا وَغَرْبًا شِمَالًا وَجُنُوبًا

When the noun of place is definite the preposition
في is introduced; as

I prayed in the mosque صَلَّيْتُ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ

The place of the adverb may be taken by (a) the
noun of action, (b) demonstrative pronoun, (c) adjective,
(d) numeral, (e) كُلُّ and بَعْضُ; as

(a). I awoke at sunrise (time of) اِسْتَيْقَظْتُ طُلُوعَ الشَّمْسِ

I sat near the table جَلَسْتُ قُرْبَ الْمَائِدَةِ

(b). I ran there رَكَضْتُ هُنَاكَ

(c). I fasted a little صُمْتُ قَلِيلًا

(d). I journeyed three days سَافَرْتُ ثَلَاثَةَ أَيَّامٍ

(e). I watched the whole night

or (part of it) سَهَرْتُ كُلَّ اللَّيْلِ (بَعْضَهُ)

The adverb is of two kinds:

I. مُتَصَرِّفٌ which may have different functions in a
sentence, as the word يَوْمٌ in the following sentences.

To-day is Friday اَلْيَوْمُ اَلْجُمُعَةُ I rode to-day رَكَبْتُ اَلْيَوْمَ

II. غير مُتَصَرِّفٍ which is always an adverb; as

In front of اَمَامٌ Where حَيْثُ

Behind خَلْفٌ At عِنْدَ

After بَعْدُ Before قَبْلُ

Where اَيْنَ Above فَوْقَ

These adverbs may take the preposition مِنْ before

them, with the exception of **مَتَى** which takes both **إِلَى** and **حَتَّى**, and **حَيْثُ** and **أَيْنَ** which take **إِلَى**; as

Until when will you not return? **إِلَى مَتَى لَا تَرْجِعُ**

How long, O Lord, how long? **حَتَّى مَتَى يَا رَبُّ حَتَّى مَتَى**

Whither are you going? **إِلَى أَيْنَ أَنْتَ ذَاهِبٌ**

He went wherever he wished **ذَهَبَ إِلَى حَيْثُ شَاءَ**

The following adverbs are always indeclinable:

Yesterday	أَمْسٍ	When	مَتَى	When	لَمَّا
Where	أَيْنَ	When	إِذَا	Here	هُنَا
Where	حَيْثُ	When	إِذْ	With	مَعَ
There	هُنَاكَ	There	هُنَالِكَ	Where	أَيَّانَ
Now	الآنَ	Where	أَنَّى	At all, never	قَطُّ

Some adverbs become indeclinable when in construction with a sentence beginning with a verb in the preterite; as

He came when Zaid came **جَاءَ حِينَ جَاءَ زَيْدٌ**

THE ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE OF CAUSE

OR REASON. **الْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ**

This expresses the cause of the action. It must be a noun of action but not of the same verb, and agree with the verb in respect to agent and time, and also be indefinite; as

I fled from fright **هَرَبْتُ خَوْفًا**

I visited him from love

زُرْتُهُ حُبًّا

here حَرُوفٌ expresses the cause of flight; it is a noun of action although not of the same verb, and agrees with the verb to flee as to its agent, because the one who fled is the one who feared; it is also indefinite. If any of these conditions are not fulfilled, the noun of action must be introduced by one of the particles of causation; as

I fled on account of fear

هَرَبْتُ لِلسُّخْرِفِ

I went to him for water

قَصَدْتُهُ لِلْمَاءِ

I visited you to-day for your

honouring me yesterday زُرْتُكَ الْيَوْمَ لِإِكْرَامِكَ لِي الْبَارِحَةَ

The Particles of Causation are اِبٍ فِي مِّنْ

Sometimes الْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ is itself the cause of the action and must then be a noun of action of a verb denoting a mental process; as

The Messiah died from love to us مَاتَ الْمَسِيحُ حُبًّا لَنَا

At other times the verb is the cause of the action and then الْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ may be the noun of action of any verb; as

I beat him to correct him

صَرَبْتُهُ تَأْدِيبًا لَهُ

If the مَفْعُولُ لَهُ is made definite by the article, it may be put in the accusative; as

I fled from fear

هَرَبْتُ السُّخْرِفَ

Also if in construction it may be put in the accusative; as

I fled fearing slaughter هَرَبْتُ خَوْفَ الْقَتْلِ
 but it is better to use the preposition.

THE OBJECT IN RELATION TO WHICH SOMETHING
 IS DONE. الْمَفْعُولُ مَعَهُ

This object follows , having the meaning of *with*.

The , is called وَإِوَاءُ الْمَصَاحِبَةِ or وَإِوَاءُ الْعَيْتَةِ the *إِوَاءُ* of
association.

The , must not have the meaning of the conjunction; as
 I travelled in the morning سَافَرْتُ وَالصُّبْحِ

Zaid went along the road مَشَى زَيْدٌ وَالطَّرِيقِ

Here the , cannot be the conjunction because it does
 not join the word صُبْحِ to the pronoun, as the noun
 cannot be joined to an attached pronoun except the
 latter be repeated; as

I came, together with Zaid جِئْتُ أَنَا وَزَيْدًا

The مَفْعُولُ مَعَهُ is also found after كَيْفَ and مَا of
 interrogation; as

How art thou, together with Zaid كَيْفَ أَنْتَ وَزَيْدًا

What has thou to do with thy brother? مَا لَكَ وَأَخَاكَ

THAT WHICH IS EXCEPTED. الْمُسْتَشْنَى

The particles of exception are إِلَّا غَيْرِ سِوَى عَدَا خِلَا حَاشَا

That which is excepted is either (a) of the same kind
 as the noun preceding, and is called مُتَّصِلٌ *joined*, or

(b) of a different kind and called مُنْقَطِعٌ *severed from, cut off*; as

(a). The people came except Zaid جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا

(b). The army returned except
a cannon

رَجَعَ الْجَيْشُ إِلَّا مَدْفَعًا

الْمُسْتَثْنَى بِإِلَّا

When the preceding sentence is affirmative and complete in meaning, that which is excepted is put in the accusative; as

The trees yielded fruit except
a fig-tree

أَثْمَرَتِ الشَّجَرُ إِلَّا تِينَةً

When the preceding sentence is negative and complete in meaning, that which is excepted may be put in the accusative or be made بَدَل and take the case of the preceding word; as

I fear no one except God لَا أَخَافُ أَحَدًا إِلَّا اللَّهَ

No one came except Zaid مَا جَاءَ أَحَدٌ إِلَّا زَيْدًا أَوْ زَيْدٌ

When the part excepted precedes the whole or is of a different kind it is put in the accusative; as

No one came except Zaid مَا جَاءَ إِلَّا زَيْدًا أَحَدٌ

No one returned from
the army except a horse مَا رَجَعَ مِنَ الْجَيْشِ إِلَّا حِصَانًا

When the sentence is negative and incomplete, that which is excepted completes the sentence and is declined according to its regent; as

Only Zaid came	مَا جَاءَ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ
I saw Zaid only	مَا رَأَيْتُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا
I passed by Zaid only	مَا مَرَرْتُ إِلَّا بِزَيْدٍ

غَيْرَ وَسَوَى

غَيْرَ وَسَوَى are put in construction with the noun excepted and themselves take the same case as the noun when excepted after إِلَّا; as

The people came except Zaid جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ غَيْرَ زَيْدٍ
i. e. if إِلَّا were used instead of غَيْرَ Zaid would be in the accusative; therefore غَيْرَ is in the accusative.

No one came but Zaid مَا جَاءَ غَيْرَ زَيْدٍ

عَدَا خَلَا حَاشَا

These words may be regarded as verbs or prepositions. When verbs they govern that which is excepted in the accusative, as مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ and their agents are necessarily implied pronouns; as

The men read except Amr قَرَأَ الْقَوْمُ عَدَا عَمْرًا

When preceded by مَا they cannot be regarded as prepositions; but when used as prepositions they govern as prepositions; as

I saw the children except Fareed رَأَيْتُ الْوِلْدَانَ خَلَا فَرِيدٍ

Sometimes لَيْسَ and لَا يَكُونُ are used as particles

of exception; that which is excepted being **خَبَر** and the **إِسْم** an implied pronoun.

بَيْدَ is used in the same manner as **غَيْرَ** but is restricted to **أَلَا سْتَيْثَاءَ الْمُنْقَطِعِ**. It is always in the accusative and in construction with **أَنَّ** and its sentence; it cannot be used as an adjective.

THE ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE OF STATE OR CONDITION. **أَلْحَالُ**

This shows the state of the agent or the object at the time of the action of the verb. It must be an indefinite derived adjective expressing a transitory condition and coming after a complete sentence; and is therefore a **فَضْلَةٌ**; as

The prince came riding **جَاءَ الْأَمِيرُ رَاكِبًا**

The object may be any of the **مَفَاعِيلِ**; as

I rode the horse saddled **بِهِ رَكِبْتُ الْفَرَسَ مُسَرَّجًا**

I struck severely **مُطَلَقٍ صَرَبْتُ الْأَضْرَبَ شَدِيدًا**

I fasted the whole month **فِيهِ صُمْتُ الشَّهْرَ كَامِلًا**

I fled for fear only **لَهُ هَرَبْتُ لِلْخَوْفِ مُجَرَّدًا**

I walked along the Nile

while it overflowed **مَعَهُ مَشَيْتُ وَالنَّيْلُ فَائِضًا**

The subject or object of the action to which the **حَال** refers **صَاحِبُ الْحَالِ** should be definite and precede

the **حَال**. If the **صَاحِبُ الْحَالِ** is indefinite the **حَال** must come first; as

A man came riding جَاءَ رَاكِبًا رَجُلٌ

When the **حَال** is definite it must be treated as if indefinite; as

The prince came alone جَاءَ الْأَمِيرُ وَحَدَهُ (مُنْفِرِدًا)

The **حَال** may be a primitive noun when (a) convertible into a derivative noun, and also when it expresses
b) order (c) division or (d) price; as

(a). I sold him, hand to hand بِعْتُهُ مُقَابَضَةً = بِعْتُهُ يَدًا بِيَدٍ

(i. e. for ready money)

I spoke to him face

to face كَلَّمْتُهُ فَمَالْفِيمِ (مُشَافِهَةً)

(b). Enter, man by man أَدْخَلُوا رَجُلًا رَجُلًا

(c). I taught him nahu, chapter by chapter عَلَّمْتُهُ النَّحْوَ بَابًا بَابًا

(d). I bought the cloth for a majēdee a yard اِشْتَرَيْتُ الْجُورْحَ الدَّرَاعَ بِرِيَالٍ

When the **حَال** follows two definite nouns each of which may be **صَاحِبُ الْحَالِ** it is best to ascribe it to the noun which directly precedes it; as

I met Zaid riding لَقِيتُ زَيْدًا رَاكِبًا

but if we wish to ascribe it to the pronoun we must say;

I met Zaid whilst I was riding لَقِيتُ رَاكِبًا زَيْدًا

In such a sentence as

I walking met Zaid riding لَقِيتُ زَيْدًا مَاشِيًا رَاكِبًا

it is better to ascribe the first *حَال* to the subject and the second to the object.

The *حَال* may be an indicative sentence or quasi sentence; as

Zaid came running جَاءَ زَيْدٌ يَرُكُضُ

Zaid died, and his son a minor مَاتَ زَيْدٌ وَابْنُهُ قَاصِرٌ

I entered the house, and there

was a lion in it دَخَلْتُ الْبَيْتَ وَفِيهِ أَسَدٌ

The *حَال* must be connected with its noun by a *رَابِطٌ binder* and this may be:

I. An implied pronoun; as

I came running جِئْتُ أَرْكُضُ (أَنَا is in the verb).

I bought the grapes a rotal of them for a dirham

إِشْتَرَيْتُ الْعِنَبَ الرَّطْلَ (مِنْهُ) بِدِرْهَمٍ

II. *وَإِوَاءُ الْحَالِ*, و.

I journeyed while the men were

sleeping سَافَرْتُ وَالنَّاسُ نِيَامٌ

III. *وَإِوَاءُ الْحَالِ* with a pronoun; as

Zaid came with his hand

upon his head جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَيَدُهُ عَلَى رَأْسِهِ

IV. *قَدْ* with *و*, introducing the preterite in the affirmative; as

I came when the sun had risen جِئْتُ وَقَدْ طَلَعَتِ الشَّمْسُ

THE SPECIFICATION. التَّمْيِيزُ

التَّمْيِيزُ is the primitive noun which explains what would otherwise have been indefinite; this indefiniteness has respect either to دَاتُ substance, or نِسْبَةُ relation.

I. التَّمْيِيزُ النَّسْبَةِ limits or defines the predicate; as

Zaid is honourable in respect to birth كَرَمَ زَيْدٌ مَوْلِدًا

How noble a man is Zaid! مَا أَكْرَمَ زَيْدًا رَجُلًا

Zaid has more relatives than Amr زَيْدٌ أَكْثَرُ مِنْ عَمْرٍو أَقْرَابٍ

II. التَّمْيِيزُ الدَّاتِ explains what is indefinite in respect to number, weight, measure, quantity, similarity, dissimilarity or area; as

He has twenty she-camels لَهُ عِشْرُونَ نَاقَةً

I bought a rotal of butter, and a saa of wheat, and two miles of land اِشْتَرَيْتُ رَطْلًا زُبْدًا وَصَاعًا تَمْحًا وَمِائِلَيْنِ اَرْضًا

I have a handful of flour,

and the like of it of rice عِنْدِي حَفْنَةٌ طَحِينًا وَمِثْلُهَا رُزًّا

The noun which is specified must not be deprived of any of the signs of declension.

التَّمْيِيزُ may be put in construction with the الدَّاتُ and the تَمْيِيزُ may be put in the genitive by مِنْ; as

I have a shekel of silver عِنْدِي شَاكِلٌ بِيضَةٌ

We planted the land with trees عَرَسْنَا اَلْاَرْضَ مِنَ الشَّجَرِ

I have a ring of gold لِي خَاتَمٌ مِنْ ذَهَبٍ

THE GENITIVE CASE. **الْجَرُّ**

The Genitive Case is peculiar to the Noun.

The nouns in the genitive case, **الْمَجْرُورَاتُ**, are of two kinds:

- I. Those governed by prepositions **الْدَّخِلَةُ عَلَيْهَا**
حُرُوفُ الْجَرِّ.
- II. Those which are the complement in the case of two nouns in construction **الْمُضَافُ إِلَيْهِ**.

I. PREPOSITIONS. **حُرُوفُ الْجَرِّ**

The prepositions are: **عِنْدَ**, **لِ**, **بِ**, **عَلَى**, **فِي**, **إِلَى**, **مِنْ**,
حَاشَا, **عَدَا**, **خَلَا**, **كَيْ**, **مُنْذُ**, **مُنْذُ**, **حَتَّى**, **رُبَّ**, **تَ**, **وَ**, **كَ**
and some authorities say **مَتَى**, **لَعَلَّ**.

Chief meanings of the prepositions

مِنْ with pronominal suffixes **مِنِّي**, **مِنَّا**, **مِنْكَ**, **مِنْهُ**.

Meanings.

from	I came forth from the house	خَرَجْتُ مِنَ الْبَيْتِ
some of	I took some of the dirhams	أَخَذْتُ مِنَ الدَّرَاهِمِ
„ „	He drank some of the water	شَرِبَ مِنَ الْمَاءِ
of	I have a ring of gold	لِي خَاتَمٌ مِنْ ذَهَبٍ

on account of	He died from fear	مَاتَ مِنَ الْخَوْفِ
by	He entered by the door	دَخَلَ مِنَ الْبَابِ
to	Draw nigh to me	اقْتَرِبْ مِنِّي
from	I knew the truth from falsehood	عَرَفْتُ الْحَقَّ مِنَ الْبَاطِلِ
than	The sea is larger than the land	الْبَحْرُ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْبَرِّ
at all	No one at all came	مَا جَاءَ مِنْ رَجُلٍ
rather than	Are ye contented with the life of this world rather than the next	هَلْ رَضَيْتُمْ بِالْحَيَاةِ الدُّنْيَا مِنَ الْآخِرَةِ
because of	about	مِنْ أَمْرِ
from the presence	without	مِنْ دُونِ، مِنْ غَيْرِ
of this sort	before	مِنْ قَبْلِ
the next day	from this time	مِنْ ذِي قَبْلِ
on account of	at once	مِنْ سَاعَتِهِ، مِنْ وَقْتِهِ
by itself	behind him	مِنْ وَرَائِهِ
by habit	must	لَا بُدَّ مِنْ
from his youth	a little	شَيْءٍ مِنْ
to-morrow	the same day	مِنْ يَوْمِهِ
at night		مِنْ اللَّيْلِ

	إِلَيْهِ، إِلَيْكَ، إِلَيَّ with pronominal suffixes	
until	I fasted until sunset	صُنْتُ إِلَى الْمَغْرَبِ
„	He ate until he was satisfied	أَكَلَ إِلَى الشَّبَعِ
to	I went to the market	ذَهَبْتُ إِلَى السُّوقِ
unto	Come unto me	تَعَالَوْا إِلَيَّ
beside	I sat beside the guest	جَلَسْتُ إِلَى الضَّيْفِ
comparison	I like truth more than gain	أَلْصِدْقُ أَحَبُّ إِلَيَّ مِنَ الرَّبْحِ
addition	Add this to that	أَصِفْ هَذَا إِلَى ذَلِكَ
multiplication	Three times five	ثَلَاثَةٌ فِي خَمْسَةٍ
how long	إِلَى مَتَى، إِلَى كَمْ	As long as God
until	إِلَى أَنْ	إِلَى مَا شَاءَ اللَّهِ pleases
and so on	إِلَى غَيْرِ ذَلِكَ	إِلَيْكَ عَنِّي Get you gone!
et cetera	إِلَى آخِرِهِ (الخ)	أَلْبَشَارِ إِلَيْهِ referred to
	فِيهِ، فِيكَ، فِيَّ with pronominal suffixes	
	It is used as an adverb of time or place.	
in	I sat in the house	جَلَسْتُ فِي الْبَيْتِ
„	He was born in summer	وُلِدَ فِي الصَّيْفِ
„	I came in the evening	جِئْتُ فِي الْمَسَاءِ
with	The prince rode with his host	رَكَبَ الْأَمِيرُ فِي جُنْدِهِ
on account of	He was killed because of his crime	قُتِلَ فِي ذَنْبِهِ

among	There is not a learned man		
	among them	مَا فِيهِمْ عَالِمٌ	
in my power	فِي يَدِي	It has nothing to do with	
in my knowledge	فِي عِلْمِي	it	لَيْسَ فِي شَيْءٍ مِنْ ذَلِكَ
in the proper time	فِي حِينِهِ	Leave what you are	
in the past	فِيمَا مَضَى	about	دَعْ مَا أَنْتَ فِيهِ
immediately	فِي الْحَالِ	None among them is	
about	فِي أَمْرٍ	generous	مَا فِيهِمْ كَرِيمٌ
meanwhile	فِي أَثْنَاءِ ذَلِكَ		

عَلَيْهِ , عَلَيْكَ , عَلَيَّ with pronominal suffixes

upon, on He sat upon his throne جَلَسَ عَلَى عَرْشِهِ

on account of Thank God for His

mercy أَشْكُرُوا اللَّهَ عَلَى رَحْمَتِهِ

at The army entered at an unexpected

time دَخَلَ الْجَيْشُ عَلَى حِينٍ غَفْلَةٍ

to And we preferred some to

others وَفَضَّلْنَا بَعْضَهُمْ عَلَى بَعْضٍ

” I preferred study to

sleep إِخْتَرْتُ الدَّرْسَ عَلَى النَّوْمِ

against He went out against him خَرَجَ عَلَيْهِ

” He owes a debt I owe thee a debt

لَكَ عَلَيَّ دَيْنٌ عَلَيْهِ دَيْنٌ

” You ought to do this عَلَيْكَ أَنْ تَعْمَلَ هَذَا

on	On this condition	After this manner
	عَلَى هَذَا الشَّرْطِ	عَلَى هَذَا النَّبْطِ
With caution	عَلَى حَدَرٍ	عَلَى حِينٍ
as much as	عَلَى قَدَرٍ	عَلَى يَدٍ
aside	عَلَى جَانِبٍ	عَلَى كُلِّ أَحْوَالٍ
I covenant	عَلَى الْعَهْدِ عَلَيَّ	عَلَى قِسِّ عَلَيَّ
certainly	عَلَى كُلِّ حَالٍ	عَلَى وَجْهِ
by heart	عَلَى ظَهْرِ الْقَلْبِ	عَلَى حَسَبٍ
in his time	عَلَى عَهْدِهِ	عَلَى أَنْ
according to their		نَدِيمٍ عَلَيَّ
saying	عَلَى قَوْلِهِمْ	to fall upon the
to enter upon	أَقْبَلَ عَلَيَّ	face
to induce, attack	حَمَلَ عَلَيَّ	to be pleased with
to be informed	وَقَفَ عَلَيَّ	to disapprove
to appoint, invest	أَقَامَ عَلَيَّ	

He did it in spite of his old age **فَعَلَهُ عَلَيَّ كِبَرِ سِنِيهِ**

بِ with pronominal suffixes **بِي، بِكَ، بِي**.

making neuter verbs active	I brought him	أَتَيْتُ بِهِ
”	He took him	دَهَبَ بِهِ
”	He came with his people	جَاءَ بِأَهْلِهِ
in	I dwelt in Jaffa	سَكَنْتُ بِيَافَا
”	Go in peace	إِذْهَبْ بِسَلَامٍ

with	I struck him with a sword	ضَرَبْتُهُ بِسَيْفٍ
on account of	He was imprisoned for	
	stealing	سَجِنَ بِسَرِقَةٍ
by	By grace we are	
	saved	بِالنِّعْمَةِ نَحْنُ مُتَكَلِّمُونَ
for	An eye for an	This for that
	eye	هَذَا بِذَاكَ عَيْنٌ بِعَيْنٍ
„	A rotal for a dirham	رَطْلٌ بِدِرْهَمٍ
swearing	By thy head	بِاللَّهِ بِرَأْسِكَ
unjustly	By God	بِاللَّهِ بِغَيْرِ
because	without	بِغَيْرِ الْحَقِّ
	so that	بِمَا أَنْ يَكْفِيَتْ
It is best for you	in some way or other	
		بِوَجْهِ مِنَ الْوُجُوهِ
to dwell in a place		سَكَنَ، حَلَّ، نَزَلَ بِالْمَكَانِ
You are more deserving		الْأُخْرَى بِكَ

لِ with pronominal suffixes لِي، لَكَ، لِي.

ownership	Zaid has property	لِزَيْدٍ مَالٌ
„	Paradise is for the	
	righteous	الْجَنَّةُ لِلصَّالِحِينَ
„	Majesty belongs to God	الْعَظَمَةُ لِلَّهِ
„	Praise belongs to God	الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ
purpose	I came for study	جِئْتُ لِلدَّرْسِ
„	Build for destruction	ابْنُوا لِلْخَرَابِ

of or for	Saving the world	مُخَلِّصٌ لِلْعَالَمِ
strengthening	He does what he wishes	هُوَ فَعَالٌ لِمَا يُرِيدُ
admiration	What a learned man	
	you are	يَا لَكَ مِنْ عَالِمٍ
„	What a horseman	يَا لَكَ مِنْ فَارِسٍ
swearing	By your life	لَعْنَتِكَ
because of	لِسَبَبِ He is concerned in, or	
	has power	لَهُ يَدٌ
called	يُقَالُ لَهُ He is well versed	
	in	لَهُ أَلَيْدٌ الطُّورَى فِي
instantly	لِسَاعَتِهِ لَوَقْتِهِ I thank you	لَكَ مِنِّي الشُّكْرُ
for the length of	you shall have what	
time since	لَطَوَّلَ عَهْدِهِ بَ you like	لَكَ مِنِّي مَا نَحِبُّ
It is better or best	because it	لِأَنَّهُ
for you	أَلَاؤُفَى لَكَ to speak to	قَالَ لَهُ
I owe Mr.	عَلَيَّ لِفُلَانٍ	

عَنْهُ, عَنْكَ, عَنَّا, عَنِّي with pronominal suffixes عَنْ

at	Sit at my right hand	إِجْلِسْ عَن يَمِينِي
from	He did it with a	
	good will	فَعَلَهُ عَن نَفْسٍ رَاضِيَةٍ
„	Go from me, Satan	إِذْهَبْ عَنِّي يَا شَيْطَانُ
by or near	He travelled past the	
	town	سَافَرَ عَنِ الْمَدِينَةِ

for	One soul shall not make satisfaction for another	لَا تُجْزِي نَفْسٌ عَنْ نَفْسٍ شَيْئًا
on account of	Pay instead of me	إِدْفَعْ عَنِّي
”	May God reward you for me	جَزَاكَ اللَّهُ عَنِّي
”	He only came because he was called	لَمْ يَأْتِ إِلَّا عَنْ دَعْوَةٍ
about	He asked me about your name	سَأَلَنِي عَنِ اسْمِكَ
source	He acquired knowledge from him	أَخَذَ الْعِلْمَ عَنْهُ
above	God is exalted above the worlds	تَعَالَى اللَّهُ عَنِ الْعَالَمِينَ
to	May God be gracious unto him	رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ
”	They were killed to the last man	قُتِلُوا عَنْ آخِرِهِمْ
	He died aged seventy	مَاتَ عَنْ سَبْعِينَ سَنَةً
	He died leaving a son	مَاتَ عَنِ ابْنٍ
	After a little	عَنْ or عَمَّا قَلِيلٍ
	by the agency of	عَنْ يَدٍ
	He did it without intention	عَمَلَهُ عَنْ غَيْرِ قَصْدٍ
	To quote	انْقَلَ عَنْ
	To relate a narrative as heard from another	حَدَّثَ عَنْ

كَ

resemblance: Zaid is like a lion

زَيْدٌ كَأَسَدٍ

as, as if, as though

كَأَنَّ

وَ

swearing: By God وَاللَّهِ

By your father وَأَبِيكَ

تَ

اللَّهُ, الرَّحْمَنُ, رَبُّ by, is only used with the words رَبُّ, الرَّحْمَنُ, اللَّهُ for swearing; as

Lord, The Merciful, God

تَاللَّهِ, تَالرَّحْمَنِ, تَرَبِّي

رَبُّ many a

Many a generous man will travel رَبُّ رَجُلٍ كَرِيمٍ يُسَافِرُ

مُنْذُ, مُنْذُ since, when, the word governed by these signifies past time; as

I have not seen him since

Friday last

مَا رَأَيْتَهُ مُنْذُ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ

I have not seen him to-day

مَا رَأَيْتَهُ مُنْذُ الْيَوْمِ

From everlasting

مُنْذُ الْأَزَلِ

كَيْ in order that; as

Man works in order that

he may live

الْإِنْسَانُ يَسْتَعِدُّ كَيْ يَعْيشَ

I came that I might see you

جِئْتُ كَيْ أَنْظُرَكَ

حَاشَا, حَاشَا see the particles of exception.

مَتَى has the force of مِنْ when used as a preposition.

لَوْأ if followed by a pronoun is regarded by some authorities as a preposition; as

Had it not been for you I would not
have stayed

لَوْلَا لَمْ أَبْقِ

لِ, بِ, عَلَيَّ, عَنْ, فِي, إِلَى, مِنْ
are used with both
nouns and pronouns.

رُبَّ, تَ, وَ, كَ, مَتَى, حَاشَ, عَدَا, خَلَا, كَيْ, مُنْذُ, مُدَّ, حَتَّى
are not used with personal pronouns.

رُبَّ governs an indefinite but qualified noun.

The noun is virtually in the nominative because it
is مُبْتَدَأٌ and the predicate is the verb in the preterite
which follows; as

Many a generous man visited us رُبَّ رَجُلٍ كَرِيمٍ زَارَنَا

When مَا is affixed it ceases to act as a preposition.

رُبَّ though omitted still governs after the particles
بِ, فِ, حَتَّى.

حَتَّى until, as far as, even; as

I ate the fish even its head أَكَلْتُ السَّمَكَةَ حَتَّى رَأْسِهَا

I watched until the dawn (i. e.

the whole night)

سَهَتُ حَتَّى الْفَجْرِ

إِلَى implies motion to; as

I ate the fish to its head أَكَلْتُ السَّمَكَةَ إِلَى رَأْسِهَا

مُنْذُ, مُدَّ govern nouns of time; they may be prepo-
sitions or adverbs; adverbs when the following noun
is in the nominative; also when they are followed by
verbs; as

I have not seen him since he came مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مُنْذُجَاءِ

I have not spoken to him for
two days

لَمْ أَكَلِمَةَ مَنْذُ يَوْمَانِ

كَي: when this particle governs the مَا of interrogation
the ا of the مَا may be replaced by ة; as
for what كَيْمَا or كَيْبَةً or كَيْمًا

The ي of عَلَى and إِلَى become ي when they govern
pronouns; as إِلَيْكَ to you عَلَيْهِ upon it.

ل has َ with all pronouns except لِيَاءِ الْبُنْتِكَلِمِ; with
other nouns and the ي it has َ.

ب takes َ, ت, ك take َ.

مُد is changed into مَنْدُ when it governs a noun be-
ginning with هَمْزَةُ الرَّوْضِ; عَنْ takes َ and مِنْ takes َ
(before the article however َ); as

From the roof	مِنَ السَّطْحِ	from among	مِنْ بَيْنِ
from the house	مِنَ الْبَيْتِ	below	مِنْ تَحْتِ
from above	مِنْ فَوْقِ	around	مِنْ حَوْلِ
before	مِنْ قَبْلِ	after	مِنْ بَعْدِ
from	مِنْ حِنْدِ	from behind	مِنْ وَّرَاءِ
during this day	مُدَّ الْيَوْمِ	„ „	مِنْ خَلْفِ

Certain of the prepositions are used as nouns, being
put in construction with the noun which follows them,
and are themselves generally governed by other pre-
positions; as

From my right hand

مِنْ عَن يَمِينِي

I took the book from
the table

أَخَذْتُ الْكِتَابَ مِنْ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ

The prepositions may be omitted before **أَنَّ** and **أَنْ**; as

I commanded him to do so **أَمَرْتُهُ (بِ) أَنْ يَفْعَلَ كَذَا**;

the sentence introduced by **أَنَّ** is then in the accusative.

The preposition may be omitted after a conjunction which connects a word to another governed by the same preposition; as

I passed by Zaid and Amr **مَرَرْتُ بِزَيْدٍ وَعَمْرٍو**

Prepositions and adverbs are always dependent upon a verb or quasi verb.

When the verb or that which takes its place signifies simple existence, it is omitted; as

My brother is with my
father in Jerusalem

أَخِي عِنْدَ أَبِي فِي أُورُشَلِيمَ

but if it signifies more than mere existence, it is expressed; as

My brother lived in Jaffa **أَخِي سَكَنَ فِي يَافَا**

This omission is peculiar to the **حَال**, **نَعْت**, and **خَبَر**.

The verb, or the word resembling it, may be implied in the first three; in the **صِلَة** the verb alone is implied.

NOUNS IN CONSTRUCTION. **الْإِضَافَةُ**

from **أَصَافَ** to add, ascribe or attribute.

The antecedent is called **الْمُضَافُ** that which is ascribed; the complement **الْمُضَافُ إِلَيْهِ** that to which ascription is made.

The believers of Gaza مُؤْمِنُو (بِ) غَزَاةَ

This preposition is **مِنْ** when the second noun denotes the material of the first; as

A silver cup كَأْسٌ فَضَّةٌ

In other cases the preposition **لِ** is implied; as

The servant of the king خَادِمٌ الْمَلِكِ (لِلْمَلِكِ)

When the second noun is definite, the first also becomes definite; and when indefinite, the first is specialized; as

The brother of Zaid أَخُو زَيْدٍ A garment of silk ثَوْبٌ حَرِيرٍ

The second of the two nouns may give the gender to the first; as

The mercy of God is nigh رَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ قَرِيبٌ

Some of his fingers were cut off قَطِطَتْ بَعْضُ أَصَابِعِهِ

A second kind of **إِضَافَةٌ** is found which consists in having the form of construction without the meaning *الْإِضَافَةُ اللَّفْظِيَّةُ verbal construction.*

The first noun is always a derived adjective, viz. the noun of agent, or the noun of object with the present or future signification, or the noun of attribute; as

A beater of Zaid ضَارِبُ زَيْدٍ

The beloved one of the king مَحْبُوبُ الْمَلِكِ

One who is of good stature حَسَنُ الْقَامَةِ

This part of **إِضَافَةٌ** is only for **التَّخْفِيفُ** *lightening* as ضَارِبُ زَيْدًا instead of ضَارِبُ زَيْدٍ.

The article may precede the first noun, when the second noun has it prefixed; as

He that loves good الْمُحِبُّ الْخَيْرِ

If the first noun is in the dual form or is the regular masc. plural it may take the article whether the second has it or not; and also when the second noun is in construction with another noun which has the article; as

The two who are of many cunning devices الْكَثِيرَا الْكَيْدِ

Those who hate Zaid الْمُبْغِضُوا زَيْدٍ

The striker of the man's lad الضَّارِبُ غُلَامِ الرَّجُلِ

Certain nouns require always to be put in construction. This construction may be (a) in form and meaning or (b) in meaning although not in form.

The first are such nouns as *عِنْدَ* by, *لَدُنْ* in presence of; the second are such as *بَعْضُ* some of, *كُلُّ* all of; as

All die (every one dies) *كُلُّ أَحَدٍ يَمُوتُ* for *كُلُّ يَمُوتُ*

I know some of them *أَعْرِفُ بَعْضَهُمْ* for *أَعْرِفُ بَعْضًا*

Certain adverbs; as *إِذَا* when, *إِذْ* when, *حَيْثُ* where, are put in construction always with sentences, in which case the latter are convertible into sing. nouns; as

I went where you commanded me ذَهَبْتُ حَيْثُ أَمَرْتَنِي

The following adverbs are indeclinable when the second noun though omitted is implied, and they take the 2.

Behind	<i>خَلْفَ</i> first	<i>أَوَّلَ</i> after	<i>بَعْدَ</i>
in front	<i>أَمَامَ</i> according	<i>حَسْبُ</i> before	<i>قَبْلَ</i>

below	تَحْتُ	left	شِمَالُ	right	يَمِينُ
below	دُونُ	above	فَوْقُ		
I came before	جِئْتُ قَبْلُ				

The adverbs take ة when in construction with a noun expressed or implied; as

Who came first, you or Zaid مَنْ جَاءَ قَبْلًا أَنْتَ أَمْ زَيْدٌ

I came before Zaid جِئْتُ قَبْلَ زَيْدٍ

When not in construction they take the ة.

I came beforehand جِئْتُ قَبْلًا

Some useful Adverbs are:

towards, about	نَحْوُ	yes, certainly	أَجَلٌ
by, by the side of	إِزَاءَ	yes	جَبْرٌ
opposite, in front		ever	قَطُّ
of	تِلْقَاءَ, قُبَالَةَ	thus	كَذَا
between	بَيْنَ	likewise	كَذَلِكَ
in the middle	وَسَطَ	not at all	كَلَّا, أَلْبَتَّةَ
near	قُرْبَ	gratis	مَجَانًا
as far as	بُعْدَ	left (hand)	شِمَالُ
the distance of	مَسَافَةَ	around	حَوْلَ
before	قُدَّامَ	after	غِبُّ بَعْدُ
in front	أَمَامَ		

Words and expressions used adverbially:

to-morrow	غَدًا	yesterday	الْبَارِحَةَ
to-day	الْيَوْمَ	before yesterday	قَبْلَ أَمْسٍ

now	الآن	early	بَاكِرًا
after an hour	بَعْدَ سَاعَةٍ	late	مُتَأَخِّرًا
after a day	بَعْدَ يَوْمٍ	formerly	سَابِقًا
firstly	أَوَّلًا	lately	مُؤَخَّرًا
lastly	أَخِيرًا	also	أَيْضًا
sometimes	أَخْيَانًا	slowly	رُؤْيِدًا رُؤْيِدًا
many times	مِرَارًا	little by little	شَيْئًا فَشَيْئًا
always	دَائِمًا	every morning	صَبَاحَ مَسَاءَ
oftentimes, generally	غَالِبًا	and evening	
never, not at		by day	نَهَارًا
all	أَبَدًا أَضَلًّا قَطْعًا	by night	لَيْلًا
especially, above		at one time,	
all	خُصُوصًا , لَا سِيَّمَا	once	طَوْرًا ... وَتَارَةً
together	مَعًا	at another,	
very, exceedingly	جِدًّا	again	تَارَةً ... وَطَوْرًا
wholly, in		inside	دَاخِلًا
general	بِالْإِجْمَالِ	outside	خَارِجًا
all	جَمِيعًا	inwardly	بَاطِنًا
quickly, soon		outwardly	ظَاهِرًا
	عَاجِلًا , سَرِيعًا , عَلَى الْفَوْرِ	vainly	بَاطِلًا
presently	حَالًا , فِي الْحَالِ	by force	غَضَبًا , جَبْرًا
slowly	مَهْلًا	in spite	رَغْمًا عَن
suddenly	بَغْتَةً	being obliged	إِضْطِرَارًا

legally	شَرْعًا	to the left	شِمَالًا		
truly	بِالْحَقِيقَةِ	حَقًّا	to the right	يَمِينًا	
aside	جَانِبًا	عَلَى جَانِبٍ	much	كَثِيرًا	
instead of	عِوَضًا	عَنْ	بَدَلًا	لِ	قَلِيلًا
certainly			eagerly	رُغْبَةً	
	عَلَى	كُلِّ حَالٍ	مِنْ	كُلِّ بُدٍ	أَبَدًا
by all means	عَلَى	كُلِّ أَحْوَالٍ	with a good will	حُبًّا وَكَرَامَةً	
every place and time	فِي	كُلِّ مَكَانٍ وَزَمَانٍ	welcome	أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا	
undoubtedly	لَا	مَتَحَالَةً	ever, never	قَطُّ	
in the meantime	فِي	أَثْنَاءِ ذَلِكَ	with aversion	كَرْهًا	
may it do you good	هَبْنِيئًا	مَرِيئًا	only	فَقَطُّ	
obediently	سَمِعًا	وَطَاعَةً			

التَّوَابِعُ. THE APPOSITIVES.

The Appositive follows the declension of the noun to which it stands in apposition by way of description or designation.

It is of five kinds:

- I. الْلَعْتُ The Adjective.
- II. عَطْفُ الْبَيَانِ The Explanatory Apposition.
- III. التَّوَكِيدُ The Corroborative.
- IV. الْبَدَلُ The Substitution.
- V. عَطْفُ النَّسْقِ The Connexion of Sequence.

THE ADJECTIVE. **الْفَعْلُ**

الْفَعْلُ is the **تَائِعٌ** which qualifies the preceding noun **الْمَتَّبِعُ**. It is originally a derived adjective i. e. a noun of agent, object, attribute or superiority: but it may be:

(a). A masdar but not **مِيَمِي** of a trilateral verb in the masc. sing.; as

A just man **رَجُلٌ عَدْلٌ**

(b). A demonstrative or relative pronoun qualifying a definite noun; as

This man came **جَاءَ الرَّجُلُ هَذَا**

Give me the book which
is on the table **أَعْطِنِي الْكِتَابَ الَّذِي عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ**

(c). **ذُو** *possessing*; as

I love a pious man **أُحِبُّ رَجُلًا ذَا تَقْوَى**

(d). A noun of relation **الْمَنْسُوبُ**; as

I am an Arab **أَنَا رَجُلٌ عَرَبِيٌّ**

(e). A common noun **إِسْمٌ جِنْسٍ** when the latter can be regarded as an adjective; as

This is Zaid the lion (the brave) **هَذَا زَيْدٌ الْأَسَدُ**

(f). An indicative sentence or phrase qualifying an indefinite noun; as

This is a horse I like **هَذَا حِصَانٌ أُحِبُّهُ**

All these must admit of being changed into an adjective.

If the noun is definite the adjective makes clearer the definiteness; as

Zaid the merchant came جَاءَ زَيْدٌ التَّاجِرُ

If the noun is indefinite, it is specialized by the adjective; as

A little boy opened the door وَلَدٌ صَغِيرٌ فَتَحَ الْبَابَ

The adjective may denote (a) praise, (b) blame or (c) assurance; as

(a). In the name of the most merciful God

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

(b). I seek the protection of God from Satan the vile one

أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ

(c). Yesterday which is past أَمْسِ الدَّابِرِ

النَّعْتُ is of two kinds:

I. النَّعْتُ الْحَقِيقِيُّ qualifies the noun which it follows; as

This is a profitable book هَذَا كِتَابٌ مُفِيدٌ

II. النَّعْتُ السَّبْبِيُّ qualifies the noun which it precedes; as

This book is profitable: its subject

هَذَا كِتَابٌ مُفِيدٌ مَوْضُوعُهُ

النَّعْتُ الْحَقِيقِيُّ agrees with the noun preceding it in being definite, or indefinite, and in number, gender, and case as;

I saw two accomplished men رَأَيْتُ رَجُلَيْنِ فَاصِلَيْنِ
 The accomplished woman came جَاءَتِ النِّرَاةُ الْفَاصِلَةُ
 A good man, the good man رَجُلٌ صَالِحٌ، الرَّجُلُ الصَّالِحُ
 Firm Mountains جِبَالٌ رَاسِيَةٌ

رَأَيْتُ agrees with the preceding noun as to definiteness or indefiniteness and, with what follows it in gender; as

These are the two men,
 whose mother is good هَذَانِ الرَّجُلَانِ الْكَسَنَةُ أُمَّهُمَا
 These are the two men whose children are many
 هَذَانِ الرَّجُلَانِ الْكَثِيرُونَ أَوْلَادُهُمْ

When two adjectives qualify a noun, the conjunction may or may not be used; as

This is a learned man and intelligent هَذَا رَجُلٌ عَالِمٌ وَنَبِيٌّ

When a noun in the dual or plural is followed by different adjectives in the sing. number the conjunction must be used; as

Three men came a scribe, a poet and a lawyer
 جَاءَ ثَلَاثَةُ رِجَالٍ كَاتِبٌ وَشَاعِرٌ وَنَقِيٌّ

The adjective may be separated from its noun when the meaning of the latter is obvious; as

Truly this is a great oath if you had known
 إِنَّهُ لَقَسَمٌ لَوْ تَعْلَمُونَ عَظِيمٌ

Our God is a God really generous إِلَهِنَا إِلَهٌ حَقِيقَةٌ كَرِيمٌ
 but if the noun is vague in meaning the adjective must follow it; as

I saw this generous person رَأَيْتُ هَذَا الْكَرِيمَ

لَا not, and إِمَّا either, when separating adjectives from their nouns must be repeated with the و; as

This is a day not hot and not cold

هَذَا يَوْمٌ لَّا حَارٌّ وَلَا بَارِدٌ

To every soul there is a time of death; either near at hand or distant لِكُلِّ نَفْسٍ أَجَلٌ إِمَّا قَرِيبٌ وَإِمَّا بَعِيدٌ

The adjective may be regarded as a new expression when it forms the predicate of an implied مُبْتَدَأٌ in which case it is called *النَّعْتُ الْمَقْطُوعُ*; as

I passed by a man, (he is) a tall man مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ طَوِيلٍ

When a noun has two or more adjectives one of them being *مَقْطُوعٌ* this one comes last; as

I saw a man learned, a poet, an old man

رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا عَالِمًا شَاعِرًا شَيْخًا

Zaid beat Amr, the two poets ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا الشَّاعِرَيْنِ

When one adjective qualifies two nouns in different cases and the regents are different the adjective must be *مَقْطُوعٌ*; as

I honoured Zaid and I beat Amr, the two poets

أَكْرَمْتُ زَيْدًا وَضَرَبْتُ عَمْرًا الشَّاعِرَيْنِ

THE EXPLANATORY APPOSITION. عَطْفُ الْبَيَانِ

This is the *تَابِعٌ* which is more definite than the *مَتَّبِعٌ* the noun which is qualified.

The two women themselves came **جَاءَتِ الْمَرْأَتَانِ أَنْفُسُهُمَا**

An indefinite noun does not admit of this kind of corroboration. When an attached pronoun in the nom. case needs corroboration it must be repeated in a separate form; as

I came myself

جِئْتُ أَنَا نَفْسِي

instead of

جِئْتُ نَفْسِي

In the sentence, I passed by him **مَرَرْتُ بِهِ بِهِ** the attached pronoun must be repeated with the preposition.

The **إِسْم** of **إِنَّ** must be repeated; as

Surely Zaid, surely Zaid is

standing

إِنَّ زَيْدًا إِنَّ زَيْدًا قَائِمٌ

Corroboration may also take place by the use of synonyms; as

He threw the book, he threw it

أَلْقَى الْكِتَابَ رَمَاهُ

Yes, certainly

نَعَمْ جَبْرٌ

and by the following words **تَوْكِيدُ الشُّمُولِ**

all **جَمِيعٌ** all **أَجْمَعُ** all **كُلُّ**

all **قَاطِبَةً** all **بِأَسْرِ كَافَّةً** both **كِلْتَا** both **كِلَا**

These are put in construction with the pronoun of the noun to which they refer; as

The people came, all of them

جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ كُلُّهُمْ

I saw the two women, both

of them

رَأَيْتُ الْمَرْأَتَيْنِ كِلْتَيْهِمَا

كِلَا masc. **كِلْتَا** fem. *both*, when in construction with

a noun have vowels implied upon the **ا** as signs of declension; as

Both the men came جَا كِلَا الرَّجُلَيْنِ

I saw both the men رَأَيْتُ كِلَا الرَّجُلَيْنِ

but when in construction with the pronoun of the noun to which they refer they have the ordinary declension of the dual; as

I passed by the two girls,

both of them مَرَرْتُ بِالْأَبْنَتَيْنِ كِلْتَيْهِمَا

أَجْمَعُ any or all of these may follow أَكْتَعُ, أَبْتَعُ, أَبْصَعُ

أَجْمَعُ is made fem. and plural and generally follows كُلُّ

كُلُّ is common to both singular and plural; as

The army came, all of it جَاءَ الْعَجِيشُ كُلُّهُ

The men came, all of them جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ كُلُّهُمْ

The separate pronoun in the nominative case may be used as تَوْكِيدٌ to any attached pronoun; as

I came جِئْتُ أَنَا I saw thee رَأَيْتَكَ أَنْتَ

I passed by him, him مَرَرْتُ بِهِ هُوَ

الْبَدَلُ. THE SUBSTITUTION.

الْبَدَلُ is the تَابِعٌ which is substituted for the noun which it follows; it is of five kinds:

(a). بَدَلُ الْكُلِّ substitution of the whole for the whole; as

The man came Zaid جَاءَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ

Amr thy brother came جَاءَ عَمْرُو أَخُوكَ

(b). *بَدَلُ الْبَعْضِ* substitution of the part for the whole; as

I ate the fish, the half of it *أَكَلْتُ السِّكَّةَ نِصْفَهَا*

(c). *بَدَلُ الْأَشْتِمَالِ* the comprehensive substitution indicating something inherent in the preceding word; as

I love Zaid, his name *أَحِبُّ زَيْدًا إِسْمَهُ*

(d). *بَدَلُ الْغَلَطِ وَالنِّسْيَانِ* substitution of error and forgetfulness; as

I rode the mare, the she-camel *رَكَبْتُ الْفَرَسَ النَّاقَةَ*

I saw Zaid, Amr *رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا عَمْرًا*

(e). *بَدَلُ التَّفْصِيلِ* substitution denoting separation; as

In the book are two chapters, a chapter on etymology and a chapter on syntax

فِي الْكِتَابِ فُصْلَانِ فُصْلٌ فِي الصَّرْفِ وَفُصْلٌ فِي النَّحْوِ

In the second and third kinds the *بَدَلُ* must be in construction with the pronoun of the noun preceding.

When the regent governs the genitive is repeated; as

I passed by a man, by Zaid *مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ بِزَيْدٍ*

A verb may be substituted for a verb when they agree in tense; or a sentence for a sentence. In the sentence *جَاءَ أَخُوكَ زَيْدٌ* thy brother Zaid came Zaid may be either *بَدَلُ* or *عَطْفُ بَيَانٍ*. If Zaid shews which brother came it is *عَطْفُ بَيَانٍ* but if it is only substituted for the words *أَخُوكَ* it is *بَدَلُ*.

THE CONNEXION OF SEQUENCE. عَطْفُ النَّسَفِ

This "contextual" apposition is produced by the use of the conjunctions. The conjunctions may join two words or two sentences; as

His saying is truth and right قَوْلُهُ صِدْقٌ وَحَقٌّ
 God giveth life and taketh it اللَّهُ يُحْيِي وَيُمِيتُ

Life and death are in the hand
 of God الْكَيْفَرَةُ وَالْمَوْتُ بِيَدِ اللَّهِ
 and the world and what is in it are His وَالْكَوْنُ وَمَا فِيهِ لَهُ

It is better to join a noun with a noun and a verb with a verb, and one sentence with another; the verbs of the two sentences being of the same mood and tense.

The conjunctions are:

II. Disjunctive.

but	لَكِنْ
not	لَا
but rather, or rather	بَلْ
or, or rather	أَمْ
or	أَوْ
either, or	إِمَّا

I. Conjunctive.

and	وَ
and then	فَ
then	ثُمَّ
even	حَتَّى

وَ is used without reference to order or time; as

I led armies and fed guests قَدَدْتُ الْأَصْفُوفَ وَقَتُّتُ الضُّيُوفَ

فَ denotes (a) sequence and (b) consequence; as

(a). The men entered and then
 the children

دَخَلَ الرَّجَالُ فَالْأَوْلَادُ

I read it page by page قَرَأْتُ وَجْهَهَا فَوَجَّهَهَا

(b). He reviled me and I struck him شَتَمَنِي فَضَرَبْتَهُ

Depart from me Satan for اذْهَبْ عَنِّي يَا شَيْطَانَ فَإِنَّكَ

It is also used to join the conditional clause with that expressing the result of the condition; as

If ye love me keep my commandments

إِنْ كُنْتُمْ تُحِبُّونَنِي فَاحْفَظُوا وَصَايَايَ

and after **أ** of interrogation; as

Do you also not understand أَلَا تَأْتَانْتُمْ أَيْضًا غَيْرُ فَاهِمِينَ

and as the correlative of **أَمَّا**; as

But ye have known me أَمَّا أَنْتُمْ فَقَدْ عَرَفْتُمُونِي

ثُمَّ denotes succession extending over a longer period than **ف**; as

God humbled me then he exalted me حَطَّنِي اللَّهُ ثُمَّ رَفَعَنِي

حَتَّى joins two common nouns together provided that the latter expresses part of the former; as

The pilgrims came even

those on foot قَدِمَ الْحُجَّاجُ حَتَّى الْأَنْشَاءِ

The people died even the

prophets مَاتَ النَّاسُ حَتَّى الْأَنْبِيَاءِ

لَكِنْ without the **و**, prefixed, is always used after a negative or prohibitive sentence; as

Zaid did not come but Amr مَا جَاءَ زَيْدٌ لَكِنْ عَمْرٌو

لَا denotes simple negation and is always used after affirmation or command; as

The man came and not another جَاءَ الرَّجُلُ لَا غَيْرُهُ

Take the bow and not the sword خَذِ الْقَوْسَ لَا السِّيفَ

بَلْ is used after any of these sentences; as

The man or rather the child died مَاتَ الرَّجُلُ بَلِ الْوَلَدُ

Do not fear your enemy but

rather your brother لَا تَخَفْ عَدُوَّكَ بَلِ أَخَاكَ

أَمْ is used after the أ of interrogation; as

Did you hold up the heavens or your fathers?

أَأَنْتُمْ رَفَعْتُمُ السَّمَوَاتِ أَمْ آبَاؤُكُمْ

When not preceded by the أ it means *or rather*; as

Did you create man or rather have you given him

reason? هَلْ خَلَقْتُمُ الْإِنْسَانَ أَمْ هَلْ أَعْطَيْتُمُوهُ الْعَقْلَ

أَوْ denotes choice or division; as

Take a dirham or a dinar خُذْ دِرْهَمًا أَوْ دِينَارًا

Be good or evil كُنْ صَالِحًا أَوْ شَرِيرًا

إِمَّا *either, or*, is always followed by another إِمَّا with
, prefixed; as

Speech is either prose or verse الْكَلَامُ إِمَّا نَثْرٌ وَإِمَّا شِعْرٌ

لَا, لَا *neither, nor*

Neither this nor that is mine لَا هَذَا يَخْصُنِي وَلَا ذَاكَ

The detached pronoun must be introduced and the
regent of the genitive repeated in such sentences; as

I came and Zaid جِئْتُ أَنَا وَزَيْدٌ

He sat between Zaid and

between Amr جَلَسَ بَيْنَ زَيْدٍ وَبَيْنَ عَمْرٍو

THE MOODS OF THE VERB. اَعْرَابُ الْفِعْلِ وَبِنَاؤُهُ

The aorist like the noun admits of declension; i. e. its final vowel may undergo certain changes to express the moods. These changes are produced by the action of certain particles. These particles are of two kinds:

I. Those which change the final vowel of the aorist اَ into اِ to express the subjunctive mood.

II. Those which apocopate the final vowel of the aorist to express the conditional and imperative moods.

The aorist is in the indicative mood when its final letter is vowelled with اَ , or, as we may say, when not governed by the particles of **نَصْبٍ accusative**, or **جَزْمٍ apocopation**.

I. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. نَوَاصِبُ الْفِعْلِ

The subjunctive mood is governed by the particles **أَنَّ**, **لَنْ**, **إِذَنْ** and by **كَيْ** with **ل** prefixed to prevent its being a preposition, and occurs only in subordinate clauses.

أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَصَاحِبَكَ *that, as I wish to accompany you*

(لَا يَكُونُ أَنْ = لَا أَنْ) = لَنْ *it will not happen that, never; as*

He did not enter it and
shall never enter it

لَمْ يَدْخُلْهَا وَلَنْ يَدْخُلَهَا

إِذْنٌ *then, in that case*, in answer to the question "what if".

What if I believe God	}	إِنْ آمَنْتُ بِإِلَهِهِ
then thou shalt enter Paradise		إِذْنٌ تَدْخُلُ الْجَنَّةِ

كَيْ *in order*; as

Learn in order that you may teach تَعَلَّمُوا لِكَيْ تَعَلِّمُوا
 أَنْ is called الْمَصْدَرِيَّةُ because with the verb it governs it is equivalent in meaning to the masdar of that verb; as

I hope to assist you أَرْجُو أَنْ أَسَاعِدَكَ، مُسَاعِدَتَكَ
 أَنْ has the meaning of longing or desire for something الطَّمَعُ, and its verb can neither have a future signification nor follow another verb expressing certainty.

أَنْ may be omitted in the following cases:

(a). After the preposition لِ، التَّغْلِيلُ expressing the cause of an event; as

I came to study جِئْتُ لِلدَّرْسِ، جِئْتُ لِالدَّرْسِ

(b). After a conjunction connecting a verb and noun; as

I prefer flight and to be safe أَوْفَضْتُ الْهَرَبَ وَأَسْلَمَ

أَنْ although not expressed may affect the declension of the aorist; this ellipse is to be assumed in the following cases:

(a). After كَيْ a preposition which has not the لِ; as

He sat in order that he might rest جَلَسَ كَيْ يَسْتَرِيحَ

(b). After حَتَّى a preposition

I asked him to come دَعَوْتُهُ حَتَّى يَأْتِي

(c). After أَوْ which has the meaning of إِلَى or إِلَّا till, lest, or else; as

Beat the thief till he confesses اِضْرِبِ اللِّصَّ أَوْ يُقِرَّ

Sit, or else the prince will rise اِجْلِسْ أَوْ يَقُومَ الْأَمِيرُ

(d). After لُ الْجَحْوُودُ denial

This لُ is prefixed to the predicate of كَانَ when it is in the negative, thereby strengthening the negation, as God surely will not

torment the good مَا كَانَ اللَّهُ لِيُعَذِّبَ الصَّالِحِينَ

(e). After فَ السَّبَبُ expressing result or effect, and وَ, الْمُصَاحَبَةُ association, following negation or request; as

I. Negation:

Zaid did not visit me that I might honour him لَمْ يَزُرْنِي زَيْدٌ فَأَكْرَمَهُ

The sheik is not present

that we might ask him لَيْسَ الشَّيْخُ حَاضِرًا وَتَسْأَلُهُ

II. Request.

Under request the following are included:

I. Command. II. Prohibition. III. Interrogation. IV. Exhortation. V. Threatening. VI. Wishing. VII. Hoping.

I. Strive and you will derive benefit جَدُّ فَنَعَالَ الْخَيْرِ

II. Do not speak or you will make a slip لَا تَتَكَلَّمَنَّ فَعَرَلُ

III. Where are you going that I

may follow you أَيَّنْ تَذْهَبُ فَاتَّبِعْكَ

IV. Will you not study and
please your teacher

أَلَا تَدْرُسُ فَتَرْضَىٰ مُعَلِّمَكَ

V. Why do you not believe and be safe

هَلَّا تُؤْمِنُ وَتَأْمَنَ

VI. Would that you were a
learned man to profit us

لَيْتَكَ عَالِمٌ وَتُفِيدَنَا

VII. Perhaps I may go to Jerusalem then I will
visit you

لَعَلِّي أَذْهَبُ إِلَى الْقُدْسِ وَأُزَوِّدُكَ

II. THE CONDITIONAL AND IMPERATIVE MOODS.

جَوَازِمُ الْفِعْلِ

The particles which apocopate the final vowel of the
aorist are of two kinds:

I. Those which apocopate the final vowel of one
verb only.

II. Those which apocopate the final vowel of two verbs.

I. These are لَا, لِي, لَمَّا, لَمْ.

لَمْ, لَمَّا *not, not yet*, are always used before the aorist
and give it the signification of the preterite; as

لَمْ يَأْتِ ثُمَّ جَاءَ He did not come and then he came

I plucked the fruit when it

was not yet ripe

قَطَعْتُ الثَّمَرَ وَلَمَّا يَنْضَجُ

The conditional particle *إِنْ* may precede *لَمْ* but not
لَمَّا, and the verb which follows *لَمَّا* but not that which
follows *لَمْ* may be dropped.

لِي *let*, and لَا *not*, give the aorist a future signification.

لِ is used imperatively and in prayer; as

May God bless us

لِيُبَارِكْنَا اللَّهُ

Let every one know

لِيَعْلَمَ كُلُّ وَاحِدٍ

لَا is used for prohibition *أَلْتَهَى*, and prayer; as

Do not be angry with us

لَا تَغْضَبْ عَلَيْنَا

Do not kill

لَا تَقْتُلْ

لِ when preceded by *فَ* or *وَ* may drop its *ـَ*; as

May our God bless us

فَلْيُبَارِكْنَا إِلَهُنَا

II. Particles which apocopate the aorist of two Verbs

حَيْثُمَا, *إِذَا مَا*, *أَيَّ*, *أَيَّانَ*, *أَيْنَ*, *مَتَى*, *أَيَّ*, *مَهْمَا*, *مَا*, *مَنْ*, *إِنْ*, *كَيْفَمَا* and *إِذَا* in poetry.

These, with the exception of *إِنْ*, *إِذَا*, and *مَا* when it signifies time, are all regarded as nouns and are all except *أَيَّ* indeclinable.

إِنْ *if*; as

If you seek you will find

إِنْ تَطَلَّبْتَ تَجِدْ

مَنْ *whosoever*; as

Whosoever cometh to me I will not cast out

مَنْ يُقْبِدْ إِلَيَّ لَا أُخْرِجُهُ خَارِجًا

مَا and *مَهْمَا* *whatsoever*; as

Whatsoever good you do God knoweth it

وَمَا تَفَعَّلُوا مِنْ خَيْرٍ يَعْلَمُهُ اللَّهُ

Whatsoever you bring us we will not believe

مَهْمَا تَأْتِنَا بِهِ لَا نُؤْمِنُ

أَيُّ or أَيَّمَا *whosoever, whatsoever, whichever*; as

By whatsoever you call upon Him He has the most excellent names
 أَيَّمَا تَدْعُوا فَلَهُ الْأَسْمَاءُ الْحُسْنَى

مَتَى or مَا مَتَى, أَيَّانَ and إِذْ مَا *whenever*; as

Whenever you meet us you die
 with fear مَتَى تَلْقَانَا تَمُتْ رُعْبًا

Whenever you come to us you
 will find good أَيَّانَ تَأْتِنَا تَلَقَّ حَيْرًا

أَيْنَ or أَيَّنَمَا and حَيْثُمَا *wherever*; as

Wherever you are death will
 overtake you أَيَّنَمَا تَكُونُوا يُدْرِكُكُمُ الْمَوْتُ

Wherever you go God will award you success

حَيْثُمَا قَدْ هَبَّ يُقَدِّرْ لَكَ اللَّهُ نَجَاحًا

أَنَّى *wherever, whenever*; as

Wherever you are I will be أَنَّى تَكُنْ أَكُنْ

كَيْفَ *however*; as

However you sit I will sit كَيْفَمَا تَجْلِسُ أَجْلِسُ

Those of the particles which express time or place are adverbs; the remainder may be (a) the subject, (b) the objective complement or (c) the absolute object, as

(a). He who seeks finds مَنِ يَطْلُبْ يَجِدْ

(b). Whomsoever you love I will love أَيًّا تُحِبُّ أُحِبُّ

(c). Whatever walk you walk I
 will follow أَيِّ سَيْرٍ تَسِيرُ أَتَّبَعُكَ

All these particles stand at the head of the sentence.

مَا must be affixed to إِذْ and حَيْثُ, but not to مَنْ, مَا, مَهْمَا or أَنَّى; it may or may not follow the other particles.

كَيْفَمَا can only be used when the verbs have the same root.

The first verb which is introduced by these particles is called فِعْلُ الشَّرْطِ *the conditional verb*, protasis, and the second جَوَابُ الشَّرْطِ *the answer to the condition*, apodosis, both are deprived of their final vowels on account of their dependence one upon the other.

فِعْلُ الشَّرْطِ must be indicative and admit of conjugation, and not be preceded by س or سَوْفَ or قَدْ; جَوَابُ الشَّرْطِ must always follow the conditional verb, and be preceded by ف when it is (a) a neuter verb, or (b) denotes request or (c) is preceded by س, قَدْ, مَا or لَنْ of negation, or (d) is a nominal sentence.

A nominal sentence may be introduced by إِذَا, *as well*, and if it is in the aorist affirmative or preceded by لَا the ف may be introduced; in these instances, the verb is in the nominative (not apocopated) and the sentence is فِي مَحَلِّ جَزْمٍ because it is the answer to the conditional verb.

When the verbs of both clauses are in the aorist or the first only is in the aorist, apocopation takes place; but when the first verb is in the preterite and the

second in the aorist, the latter may or may not be apocopated.

If the **ف** is omitted, the second verb may be apocopated, in which case it is regarded as an answer to an implied verb of condition; as

Visit me and I will honour you زَرَيْتَنِي أُكْرِمَكَ
as though written

Visit me and if you visit me
I will honour you زَرَيْتَنِي وَإِنْ تَزَرَيْتَنِي أُكْرِمَكَ

The conditional verb has the form of the preterite and a future signification.

If the verb ends with a weak letter or **ن** masc. plur. or fem. sing. this is dropped لَمْ تَفْعَلِي, لَمْ يَفْعَلُوا.

THE CONDITIONAL PARTICLES.

أَمَّا, لَوْ, لَوْلَا, كَوْمَا, لَمَّا

أَمَّا *but, but as for*, takes **فَ** as its correlative; it is followed by a noun or pronoun; as

But as for me I shall die أَمَّا أَنَا فَأَمُوتُ

As for the poor man it is
he who has no sense أَمَّا الْفَقِيرُ فَمَنْ لَا عَقْلَ لَهُ

لَوْ *if*, denotes condition with reference to past time, and signifies the non-existence of the result because of the non-existence of the condition, حَرْفٌ أَمْتَنَاعٍ لِأَمْتَنَاعٍ; it must be followed by a verb; as

Had God pleased he would have guided you all in
the right way لَوْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ لَهَدَاكُمْ أَجْمَعِينَ

When followed by the aorist form of the verb the
past tense is signified; لَوْ is commonly used as its cor-
relative. It always changes the statement of the verb,
if negative into affirmative and vice versa; as

Had he come to me I would have
honoured him لَوْ جَاءَنِي لَأَكْرَمْتُهُ

Had he not known he would
not have been responsible لَوْ لَمْ يَعْلَمْ لَمْ يُطَالَبْ

لَوْلا and لَوْمًا (لَوْ with لَا and مَا) were it not for, had
it not been for, are conditional particles used with the
subject, the predicate of which is usually omitted; لَوْ is
generally used as their correlative; as

Had it not been for God we would
have perished لَوْلَا اللَّهُ لَهَلَكْنَا

It is called حَرْفُ آمْنِنَاعِ لَوْجُودٍ a particle denoting the
impossibility of one thing because of the existence of
another.

لَمَّا when, is an adverb expressing condition with
reference to past time and is only used with the pre-
terite; as

When he brought you safe to the land you turned
away فَلَمَّا نَجَّأَكُمْ إِلَى الْبَرِّ أَعْرَضْتُمْ

It is called حَرْفُ وُجُودِ لَوْجُودٍ a particle denoting the
existence of one thing because of the existence of another.

TENSES OF THE VERB. *أَزْمَنَةُ الْفِعْلِ*

The Arabic Verb expresses the state rather than the time of an action or event. The state may be complete, a finished act; or incomplete, an unfinished act.

There are two forms of the verb to express these states, the preterite *الْمَاضِي* *the past*, and the aorist *الْبَضَائِعُ* *resembling*.

THE PRETERITE.

The Preterite includes:

I. All Past Tenses of other languages; the particular time of an action or event is to be inferred from the context or some accompanying particle; as

Many of his disciples went back

رَجَعَ كَثِيرُونَ مِنْ تَلَامِيذِهِ إِلَى الْوَرَاءِ

Of a truth we have placed the gift of prophecy among the descendants of Jacob *لَقَدْ جَعَلْنَا النُّبُوَّةَ فِي نَسْلِ يَعْقُوبَ*

The particle *لِلتَّحْقِيقِ قَدْ* assures the action of the verb and necessarily limits the preterite to a time actually past.

To express the pluperfect *كَانَ* is used with the preterite; as

Amr had sat

كَانَ عَمْرٌو قَدْ جَلَسَ

II. The Present Tense with such verbs as *بَاعَ* to sell, *اشْتَرَى* to buy, when used at the time of selling or buying; as

I sell you the camel for two pounds بِعْتِكَ الْجَمَلَ بِلَيْرَتَيْنِ

These verbs are called

عُقُودُ الْأَنْشَاءِ

III. The Future Tense when it is (a) دُعَاءٌ, a prayer or curse; as

May God who is exalted above } رَحِمَكَ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى
all have mercy upon you

May God preserve your existence أَدَامَ اللَّهُ بَقَاءَكُمْ

May God curse thee لَعَنَكَ اللَّهُ

(b). After the negative لَا following an oath; as

By God I will not visit you } وَاللَّهِ لَا زُرْتُكَ حَتَّى تَزُورَنِي
until you visit me

(c). A condition or an answer to a condition; as

If you seek you will find إِنْ طَلَبْتَ تَجِدْ

THE AORIST.

The Aorist indicates:

I. Present or Future Tense.

It is limited to the Present Tense when preceded by (a) الْإِبْتِدَاءُ ل, (b) the negative مَا or إِنْ, (c) the verb كَيْسَ; as

The days are really passing إِنَّ الْأَيَّامَ لَتَمُرُّ

The ignorant one does not know } الْجَاهِلُ لَيْسَ يَعْلَمُ
his good from his evil } خَيْرَهُ مِنْ شَرِّهِ

It is limited to the Future Tense when preceded by

(a). The particles س a near future or سَوْفَ a remote future; as

The new moon will become a full
moon

سَيَسِيرُ الْهَيْلَالُ بَدْرًا
Your Lord will give to you and
سَرَفٌ يُعْطِيكَ رَبُّكَ فَتَرْضَى
you will be satisfied.

(b). Particles of *نَصْب*; as

I long to see you
أَشْتَأُقِ لِأَنَّ أَرَأَكَ

(c). Particles of Expectation *أَدَاةُ التَّرَوُّعِ*; as

Perchance I may come
لَعَلِّي آتِي

(d). *لَوْ* or *قَدْ*; as If you know
لَوْ تَعْلَمُونَ

(e). When it expresses *دُعَاءٌ* a prayer or curse; as

May God help you
يُسَاعِدُكَ اللَّهُ

(f). When it expresses condition or is an answer to
a condition; as

Whosoever studies will acquire
learning

مَنْ يَدْرُسُ يَحْفَظُ

II. Past Tense when preceded by *لَمْ* or *لَمَّا* particles
of *جَزْم*; as

I did not hear
لَمْ أَسْمَعْ

The day did not break
لَمْ يَطْلُعِ النَّهَارُ

III. An idiomatic use of the aorist is seen in such
phrases as

Zaid drinks wine *زَيْدٌ يَشْرَبُ الْخَمْرَ* i. e. is in the
habit of.

The negro bears the heat *الرِّجْلِيُّ يَحْتَمِلُ الْحَرَّ* i. e.
is able to.

IV. At times no special tense is indicated by the aorist; as

Zaid reads زَيْدٌ يَقْرَأُ

V. **كَانَ** with the aorist expresses the imperfect tense of the Greek and Latin languages.

THE NEGATIVE PARTICLES. **أَدَوَاتُ النَّفْيِ**

The negative particles are: **مَا**, **لَا**, **لَا تَ**, **إِنْ**, **لَنْ**, **لَمْ**, **لَيْسَ**; of these **لَيْسَ** is a verb.

لَمْ, **لَنْ**, **لَا تَ** precede the aorist only.

لَيْسَ *not*, is used only with nouns, adverbs and prepositions; as

The army is not prepared لَيْسَ الْجَيْشُ مُسْتَعِدًّا

لَمْ (*did*) *not yet*, **لَا تَ** (*did*) *not yet*, are used with the aorist and give it the signification of the past tense; they differ in that **لَمْ** is a simple negative, whilst **لَا تَ** negatives till a special time; as

The guest arose and had not eaten قَامَ الضَّيْفُ وَمَا يَأْكُلُ

لَنْ *never*, gives the aorist a future signification; as

He will never see death لَنْ يَرَى الْمَوْتَ

إِنْ *not*, does not precede the future tense.

لَا *not*, *no*, is a general negative for all tenses.

THE PARTICLES **سَ**, **سَوْفَ** and **قَدْ**

When these precede the aorist they give it a future signification.

سَوْفَ is called حَرْفُ تَسْوِيفٍ from سَوْفَ to *delay*.

س is called حَرْفُ تَنْفِيسٍ or حَرْفُ تَوْسِيعٍ *widening*.

قَدْ is called حَرْفُ التَّوَعُّعِ *particle of expectation*.

قَدْ precedes a verb in the indicative mood; with the preterite it expresses certainty; with the aorist doubt; as

We have believed

قَدْ آمَنَّا

The liar may sometimes speak

the truth

قَدْ يَصْدُقُ الْكَذُوبُ

THE LETTER نُونٌ

The نُونٌ is of five kinds:

I. نُونُ التَّوَكُّيدِ *assurance*, which is annexed for emphasis to the aorist when this has a future signification. It is either

(a). Silent, or (b) Doubled; as

(a). Worship thou God

أَسْجُدَنَّ لِلَّهِ

(b). Keep the commandments of

thy God

احْفَظَنَّ رِصَايَا إِلَهِكَ

II. نُونُ التَّنْوِينِ *the nunation*.

III. نُونُ الْإِنَاثِ *the ن of the feminine gender viz.*

(a) the personal pron. plural (b) sign of fem. plural; as

(a). The women knew and know النَّسَاءُ عَلِمْنَ وَيَعْلَمْنَ

(b). Ye women knew

أَفْتَنَّ عَلِمْتُنَّ

IV. نُونُ الْوَقَايَةِ *protection*, also called نُونُ الْعِمَادِ; it

separates the verb from the **يَاء**, **الْمُتَكَلِّمِ** and so prevents its final vowel from being changed into =.

It is also used with the particles that resemble verbs, the prepositions **مِنْ** and **عَنْ**, the **إِسْمُ الْفِعْلِ** and the particle **لَدُنْ**.

V. **نُونٌ زَائِدَةٌ** *pleonastic*.

(a). **نُونٌ الْأَعْرَابِ** which is found in the five verbs; as

All men know him **كُلُّ النَّاسِ يَعْرِفُونَهُ**

(b). **نُونٌ** of dual, **رَجُلَانِ** Two men.

(c). **نُونٌ** of plural **مُؤْمِنُونَ** Believers.

VERBS OF WONDER. **أَفْعَالُ التَّعَجُّبِ**

These are on two measures:

I. **مَا أَفْعَلُ**.

II. **أَفْعِلْ بِ**.

I. The **مَا** is an indefinite noun qualified by an implied adjective expressing greatness; as

How generous is Zaid **مَا أَكْرَمَ زَيْدًا**

How handsome he is **مَا أَحْسَنَهُ**

مَا is the **مُبْتَدَأُ** and **أَكْرَمَ** the verb of wonder with its agent implied **مُسْتَتِرٌ وَجُوبًا** referring to the **مَا**; and the sentence forms the predicate of **مَا** Zaid is the object in the accusative.

II. **أَفْعِلْ بِ** (the form is imperative).

The thing wondered at (الْمُتَعَجَّبُ مِنْهُ) is put in the genitive by ب and is the agent of the verb.

How noble he is أَكْرَمَ بِهِ How noble is Zaid أَكْرَمَ بِزَيْدٍ

These verbs cannot be conjugated; they follow the rules of the noun of superiority.

كَانَ signifying past time is sometimes introduced after مَا without having an اِسْمٌ or خَبْرٌ; as

How wise he was مَا كَانَ أَحْكَمَهُ

VERBS OF PRAISE AND BLAME.

أَفْعَالُ الْمَدْحِ وَالذَّمِّ

These are four in number, namely

نِعَمَ حَبْدًا for praise

يُسُّ سَاءً for blame.

The agent must either have the article or be in construction with a noun which has it; or be an implied pronoun, in which case the indefinite noun is put in the accusative as تَمَيَّزُ

He is a good man is Zaid نِعَمَ رَجُلًا زَيْدٌ

In the verb حَبْدًا, compounded of دَا and حَبٌّ, دَا is the agent and remains the same for all numbers and genders. The agent of يَسُّ سَاءً and نِعَمَ may take the dual, plural or feminine; as

She is a good woman is Hind نِعِمَّتِ الْمَرْأَةُ هِنْدٌ

They are bad men Zaid and Amr يَسُّ الرَّجُلَانِ زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرٌو

Evil are the people the infidels سَاءَ الْقَوْمُ الْكَافِرُونَ

The man is good that praised one Zaid نِعَمَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ

That which is praised or blamed is mentioned immediately after the agent. It is put in the nominative case either as مُبْتَدَأٌ مُؤَخَّرٌ in which case the verb with its agent forms the predicate, or as the predicate when the subject is the implied words of praise or blame; as

Good is the man (the
praised one) Zaid

نِعَمَ الرَّجُلُ (الْمَمْدُوحُ) زَيْدٌ

Other words for praise or blame are on the measure
فَعَلٌ.

A noble man is Zaid

شَرَفَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ

الْأَشْتِغَالُ Diversion from the original object.

In the sentence زَيْدٌ فَصَرَبْتُهُ Zaid is in reality the object of فَصَرَبَ but the verb governs the pronoun هـ in the accusative as object and Zaid as it stands at the head of the sentence is put in the nominative as مُبْتَدَأٌ. Zaid may, however, be put in the accusative as the objective complement, by assuming the ellipse of another verb.

If the word Zaid is preceded by a particle peculiar to verbs, as إِنَّ, it is put in the accusative but if by those peculiar to nouns it is put in the nominative; as

If you honour Zaid he will
honour you

إِنَّ زَيْدًا أَكْرَمْتَهُ يُكْرِمُكَ

I went out and behold they
were beating Zaid

خَرَجْتُ وَإِذَا زَيْدٌ يَضْرِبُونَهُ

This also occurs in the case of the agent; as

If Zaid rises I will rise

إِنْ زَيْدٌ قَامَ أَقُمُ

Zaid is the agent to an omitted verb.

DERIVED NOUNS WHICH GOVERN AS VERBS.

The nouns of agent, excess and object govern as verbs:

(a). When they have the article prefixed.

(b). When they are preceded by a particle of interrogation or negation; as

Is Zaid beating Amr

أَصَارِبُ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا

(c). When they have the present or future signification and are 1) *خَبَرٌ* or 2) *نَعْتٌ* or 3) *حَالٌ*; as

1). Zaid is riding a horse

زَيْدٌ رَاكِبٌ فَرَسًا

2) I saw a man riding a horse

رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا رَاكِبًا فَرَسًا

3) Zaid came riding a horse

جَاءَ زَيْدٌ رَاكِبًا فَرَسًا

The noun of object takes the *نَائِبُ الْفِعْلِ* substitute for the agent; as

Is your finger wounded

هَلْ مَجْرُوحٌ أَصْبَعُكَ

The noun of agent of a transitive verb takes both an object and an agent, whilst that of an intransitive verb takes an agent only; as

Zaid is not doing good

مَا صَانِعٌ زَيْدٌ خَيْرًا

The object of the noun of agent is in the accusative; as

I was pleased by Zaid's riding
of the horse

أَعَجَبَنِي رُكُوبُ زَيْدِ الْفَرَسِ

The noun of attribute may govern as a verb; as

Zaid is fair of face

زَيْدٌ حَسَنٌ وَجْهَهُ

The noun of superiority also governs as a verb but its agent is expressed only when the noun itself is convertible into a verb; as

There is no man to whom study is more beneficial than Zaid

لَا رَجُلٌ أَنْفَعُ لِي الدَّرْسُ مِنْ زَيْدٍ

جَمَدٌ from جَمَدٌ to *harden*.

The verb is either مُتَصَرِّفٌ conjugated throughout as to tenses, voices, and derivative nouns, or جَامِدٌ indeclinable. The verb is indeclinable when it resembles the particle in meaning, as لَيْسَ which has the meaning of لَا *not*, and عَسَى *perhaps*, which has the meaning of لَعَلَّ.

Some verbs are only indeclinable when they have special meanings as the verbs of wonder, in which case they must immediately precede the noun they govern.

APPENDIX.

TO FOLLOW LIST OF TRILITERAL VERBS.

DERIVED FORMS OF THE DOUBLED VERB.

Noun of Object. Noun of Action with Noun of Place and Time.	Noun of Agent.	Noun of Unity and Species.	Noun of Action.	Passive.		Imperative.	Active.	
				Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.
مَدَدَ	مَدِّدٌ	مَدِّدِيَّةٌ	تَدْيِيدٌ	يُمدُّ	مَدِدَ	مَدِّدٌ	يُمدُّ	مَدَدَ
مَدَّ	مَدَّادٌ	مَدَّادَةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)	مَدَّادٌ	يُمَدُّ	مَدَّ	مَدَّادٌ	يُمَدُّ	مَدَّ
مَدَّ	مَدِّدٌ	إِمْدَادَةٌ	إِمْدَادٌ	يُمدُّ	أَمَدٌ	أَمْدٌ	يُمدُّ	أَمَدٌ
مَتَدَّدَ	مَتَدِّدٌ	مَتَدَّدَةٌ	تَدَدٌ	يُتَدَدُّ	تَدَدَ	تَدَدٌ	يُتَدَدُّ	تَدَدَ
مَتَدَّادٌ	مَتَدَّادٌ	مَتَدَّادَةٌ	تَدَادٌ	يُتَدَادُّ	تَدَادَ	تَدَادٌ	يُتَدَادُّ	تَدَادَ
مُنَدَّدٌ	مُنَدِّدٌ	إِنْدَادَةٌ	إِنْدَادٌ	يُنَدَّدُ	أُنْدَدٌ	إِنْدَدٌ	يُنَدَّدُ	إِنْدَدٌ
مُنَدَّدٌ	مُنَدِّدٌ	إِمْتَدَادَةٌ	إِمْتَدَادٌ	يُمْتَدَّدُ	أَمْتَدٌ	إِمْتَدٌ	يُمْتَدَّدُ	إِمْتَدٌ
مُسْتَدَّدٌ	مُسْتَدِّدٌ	إِسْتَدَادَةٌ	إِسْتَدَادٌ	يُسْتَدَّدُ	أُسْتَدٌ	إِسْتَدٌ	يُسْتَدَّدُ	إِسْتَدٌ

DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH INITIAL HEMZEH.

Noun of Object. Noun of Action with Noun of Place and Time.	Noun of Agent.	Noun of Unity and Species.	Noun of Action.	Passive.		Imperative.	Active.	
				Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.
مَوَكَّلٌ	مَوَكِّلٌ	مَوَكَّلَةٌ	مَوَكَّلٌ	مَوَكَّلٌ	مَوَكَّلٌ	مَوَكِّلْ	مَوَكَّلَ	مَوَكَّلَ
مَوَاكِلٌ	مَوَاكِلٌ	مَوَاكِلَةٌ (وَاجِدَةٌ)	مَوَاكِلٌ	مَوَاكِلٌ	مَوَاكِلٌ	مَوَاكِّلْ	مَوَاكَّلَ	مَوَاكَّلَ
مَوَكَّلٌ	مَوَكِّلٌ	إِمَّاكَلَةٌ	إِمَّاكَلٌ	إِمَّاكَلٌ	إِمَّاكَلٌ	إِمَّاكِّلْ	إِمَّاكَّلَ	إِمَّاكَّلَ
مَتَاكِّلٌ	مَتَاكِّلٌ	تَاكَلَةٌ	تَاكَلٌ	تَاكَلٌ	تَاكَلٌ	تَاكِّلْ	تَاكَّلَ	تَاكَّلَ
مَتَاكِّلٌ	مَتَاكِّلٌ	تَاكَلَةٌ	تَاكَلٌ	تَاكَلٌ	تَاكَلٌ	تَاكِّلْ	تَاكَّلَ	تَاكَّلَ
مَنَاكِلٌ	مَنَاكِلٌ	إِنِّكَلَةٌ	إِنِّكَلٌ	إِنِّكَلٌ	إِنِّكَلٌ	إِنِّكِّلْ	إِنِّكَّلَ	إِنِّكَّلَ
مَوَكَّلٌ	مَوَكِّلٌ	إِنِّكَلَةٌ	إِنِّكَلٌ	إِنِّكَلٌ	إِنِّكَلٌ	إِنِّكِّلْ	إِنِّكَّلَ	إِنِّكَّلَ
مُسْتَاكِّلٌ	مُسْتَاكِّلٌ	إِسْتِكَلَةٌ	إِسْتِكَلٌ	إِسْتِكَلٌ	إِسْتِكَلٌ	إِسْتَكِّلْ	إِسْتَكَّلَ	إِسْتَكَّلَ

DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH MEDIAL HEMZEH.

Noun of Object, Noun of Action with م. Noun of Place and Time.	Noun of Agent.	Noun of Unity and Species.	Noun of Action.	Passive.		Imperative.	Active.	
				Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.
سَأَلَ	مُسَائِلٌ	مُسَائِلَةٌ	سُئِلَ	يُسَاءَلُ	سُئِلَ	سَأَلَ	يُسَائِلُ	سَأَلَ
سَاءَلَ	مَسَائِلٌ	مَسَائِلَةٌ (واحدة)	سُئِلَ بِسَاءَلٍ	يُسَاءَلُ	سُئِلَ	سَاءَلَ	يُسَائِلُ	سَاءَلَ
سَأَلَ	مُسَائِلٌ	مَسْأَلَةٌ	سُئِلَ	يُسَاءَلُ	سُئِلَ	سَأَلَ	يُسَائِلُ	سَأَلَ
مَسْأَلٌ	مُسَائِلٌ	مَسْأَلَةٌ	سُئِلَ	يُسَاءَلُ	سُئِلَ	مَسْأَلٌ	يُسَائِلُ	مَسْأَلٌ
مَسْأَلٌ	مُسَائِلٌ	مَسْأَلَةٌ	سُئِلَ	يُسَاءَلُ	سُئِلَ	مَسْأَلٌ	يُسَائِلُ	مَسْأَلٌ
مَسْأَلٌ	مُسَائِلٌ	مَسْأَلَةٌ	سُئِلَ	يُسَاءَلُ	سُئِلَ	مَسْأَلٌ	يُسَائِلُ	مَسْأَلٌ
مَسْأَلٌ	مُسَائِلٌ	مَسْأَلَةٌ	سُئِلَ	يُسَاءَلُ	سُئِلَ	مَسْأَلٌ	يُسَائِلُ	مَسْأَلٌ
مَسْأَلٌ	مُسَائِلٌ	مَسْأَلَةٌ	سُئِلَ	يُسَاءَلُ	سُئِلَ	مَسْأَلٌ	يُسَائِلُ	مَسْأَلٌ
مَسْأَلٌ	مُسَائِلٌ	مَسْأَلَةٌ	سُئِلَ	يُسَاءَلُ	سُئِلَ	مَسْأَلٌ	يُسَائِلُ	مَسْأَلٌ
مَسْأَلٌ	مُسَائِلٌ	مَسْأَلَةٌ	سُئِلَ	يُسَاءَلُ	سُئِلَ	مَسْأَلٌ	يُسَائِلُ	مَسْأَلٌ

DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH FINAL HEMZEH.

Noun of Object. Noun of Action with م. Noun of Place and Time.	Noun of Agent.	Noun of Unity and Species.	Noun of Action.	Passive.		Imperative.	Active.	
				Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.
مَقْرَأٌ	مَقْرِئٌ	مَقْرِيَّةٌ	مَقْرِيٌّ	يُقْرَأُ	قُرِيَ	قَرِّ	يُقْرَى	قَرَأَ
مُقَارَأٌ	مُقَارِئٌ	مُقَارِئَةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)	مُقَارِيٌّ	يُقَارَأُ	قُرِيَ	قَارِ	يُقَارَى	قَارَأَ
مَقْرَأٌ	مَقْرِئٌ	مُقَارِئَةٌ	مُقَارِيٌّ	يُقْرَأُ	قُرِيَ	قَرِّ	يُقْرَى	قَرَأَ
مَتَقْرَأٌ	مَتَقْرِئٌ	مَتَقْرِيَّةٌ	مَتَقْرِيٌّ	يَمْتَقْرَأُ	تَمَقْرِيٌّ	تَمَقْرَأْ	يَمْتَقْرَى	تَمَقْرَأَ
مَتَقَارَأٌ	مَتَقَارِئٌ	مَتَقَارِئَةٌ	مَتَقَارِيٌّ	يَمْتَقَارَأُ	تَمَقَارِيٌّ	تَمَقَارَأْ	يَمْتَقَارَى	تَمَقَارَأَ
مَنْقَرَأٌ	مَنْقَرِئٌ	مَنْقَرِئَةٌ	مَنْقَرِيٌّ	يَمَنْقَرَأُ	نَمَقْرِيٌّ	نَمَقْرَأْ	يَمَنْقَرَى	نَمَقْرَأَ
مَقْتَرَأٌ	مَقْتَرِئٌ	مَقْتَرِئَةٌ	مَقْتَرِيٌّ	يَمَقْتَرَأُ	نَمَقْرِيٌّ	نَمَقْرَأْ	يَمَقْتَرَى	نَمَقْرَأَ
مَسْتَقْرَأٌ	مَسْتَقْرِئٌ	مَسْتَقْرِئَةٌ	مَسْتَقْرِيٌّ	يَسْتَقْرَأُ	سَمَقْرِيٌّ	سَمَقْرَأْ	يَسْتَقْرَى	سَمَقْرَأَ

DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH INITIAL و

Noun of Object. Noun of Action with م. Noun of Place and Time.	Noun of Agent.	Noun of Unity and Species.	Noun of Action.	Passive.		Imperative.	Active.	
				Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.
مُوَعَّدٌ	مُوَعِّدٌ	تَوَعِيدَةٌ	تَوَعِيدٌ	يُوَعَّدُ	وُعِدَ	وَعِدْ	يُوَعِّدُ	وَعَدَ
مُوَاعِدٌ	مُوَاعِدٌ	مُوَاعِدَةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)	مُوَاعِدَةٌ وَوَعَادٌ	يُوَاعَدُ	وُوِعِدَ	وَاعِدْ	يُوَاعِدُ	وَاعَدَ
مُوَعَّدٌ	مُوَعِّدٌ	إِيْعَادَةٌ	إِيْعَادٌ	يُوَعَّدُ	أُوِعِدَ	أُوِعِدْ	يُوَعِّدُ	أُوَعَّدَ
مُتَوَعِّدٌ	مُتَوَعِّدٌ	تَوَعُّدَةٌ	تَوَعُّدٌ	يُتَوَعَّدُ	تَوَعَّدَ	تَوَعَّدْ	يُتَوَعَّدُ	تَوَعَّدَ
مُتَوَاعِدٌ	مُتَوَاعِدٌ	تَوَاعِدَةٌ	تَوَاعِدٌ	يُتَوَاعَدُ	تَوَوَعَّدَ	تَوَوَاعَدْ	يُتَوَاعَدُ	تَوَوَاعَدَ
مُنَوَعَّدٌ	مُنَوَعِّدٌ	أَنْوَعَادَةٌ	أَنْوَعَادٌ	يُنَوَعَّدُ	أَنْوَعِدَ	أَنْوَعِدْ	يُنَوَعِّدُ	أَنْوَعَّدَ
مُنَعَّدٌ	مُنَعِّدٌ	أَنْعَادَةٌ	أَنْعَادٌ	يُنَعَّدُ	أَنْعِدَ	أَنْعِدْ	يُنَعِّدُ	أَنْعَدَ
مُسْتَوَعَّدٌ	مُسْتَوَعِّدٌ	أَسْتِيْعَادَةٌ	أَسْتِيْعَادٌ	يُسْتَوَعَّدُ	أَسْتَوَعَّدَ	أَسْتَوَعَّدْ	يُسْتَوَعِّدُ	أَسْتَوَعَّدَ

DERIVED FORMS OF THE HOLLOW VERB.

Noun of Object, Noun of Action with Noun of Place and Time.	Noun of Agent.	Noun of Unity and Species.	Noun of Action.	Passive.		Imperative.	Active.	
				Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.
مُتَخَوِّفٌ	مُتَخَوِّفٌ	تَخَوِّيفَةٌ	تَخَوِّيفٌ	يُتَخَوِّفُ	خَوِّفٌ	خَوِّفْ	يُتَخَوِّفُ	خَوِّفَ
مُتَخَاوِّفٌ	مُتَخَاوِّفٌ	مُتَخَاوِّفَةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)	مُتَخَاوِّفٌ	يُنَخَاوِّفُ	خُوِّفٌ	خَاوِّفْ	يُنَخَاوِّفُ	خَاوِّفَ
مُتَخَوِّفٌ	مُتَخَوِّفٌ	أَخَافَةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)	أَخَافَةٌ	يُنَخَافُ	أُخِيفٌ	أَخِيفْ	يُنَخَافُ	أَخَافَ
مُتَخَوِّفٌ	مُتَخَوِّفٌ	تَخَوِّفَةٌ	تَخَوِّفٌ	يَتَخَوِّفُ	تَخَوِّفٌ	تَخَوِّفْ	يَتَخَوِّفُ	تَخَوِّفَ
مُتَخَاوِّفٌ	مُتَخَاوِّفٌ	تَخَاوِّفَةٌ	تَخَاوِّفٌ	يَتَخَاوِّفُ	تَخَوِّفٌ	تَخَاوِّفْ	يَتَخَاوِّفُ	تَخَاوِّفَ
مُتَخَاوِّفٌ	مُتَخَاوِّفٌ	أُنَخَوِّفَةٌ	أُنَخَوِّفٌ	يُنَخَوِّفُ	أُنَخَوِّفٌ	أُنَخَوِّفْ	يُنَخَوِّفُ	أُنَخَوِّفَ
مُتَخَاوِّفٌ	مُتَخَاوِّفٌ	أَخْتِيَاوِّفَةٌ	أَخْتِيَاوِّفٌ	يُخْتَاوِّفُ	أُخْتِيفٌ	أَخْتِيفْ	يُخْتَاوِّفُ	أَخْتِيفَ
مُسْتَخَوِّفٌ	مُسْتَخَوِّفٌ	أَسْتَخَوِّفَةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)	أَسْتَخَوِّفٌ	يُسْتَخَوِّفُ	أَسْتَخَوِّفٌ	أَسْتَخَوِّفْ	يُسْتَخَوِّفُ	أَسْتَخَوِّفَ

DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS BEGINNING WITH ي

Noun of Object. Noun of Action with م. Noun of Place and Time.	Noun of Agent.	Noun of Unity and Species.	Noun of Action.	Passive.		Imperative.	Active.	
				Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.
مَيْسِرٌ	مَيْسِرٌ	مَيْسِرَةٌ	كَيْسِيرٌ	يَيْسِرٌ	يَيْسِرٌ	يَيْسِرْ	يَيْسِرُ	يَيْسِرَ
مَيْسَرٌ	مَيْسِرٌ	مَيْسَرَةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)	مَيْسَرَةٌ	يَيْسَرُ	يُوسِرُ	يَيْسِرْ	يَيْسِرُ	يَيْسِرَ
مُوسِرٌ	مُوسِرٌ	اُمْسَارَةٌ	اُمْسَارٌ	يُوسِرُ	اُوسِرُ	اُوسِرْ	يُوسِرُ	اُوسِرَ
مَتَيْسِرٌ	مَتَيْسِرٌ	كَيْسِرَةٌ	كَيْسِرٌ	يَتَيْسِرُ	يَتَيْسِرُ	يَتَيْسِرْ	يَتَيْسِرُ	يَتَيْسِرَ
مَتَيْسَرٌ	مَتَيْسِرٌ	قَيْسَرَةٌ	قَيْسَرٌ	يَقْتَيْسِرُ	يَقْتَيْسِرُ	يَقْتَيْسِرْ	يَقْتَيْسِرُ	يَقْتَيْسِرَ
مَيْسِرٌ	مَيْسِرٌ	اُمْسَارَةٌ	اُمْسَارٌ	يُوسِرُ	اُوسِرُ	اُوسِرْ	يُوسِرُ	اُوسِرَ
مَتَسِرٌ	مَتَسِرٌ	اَقْسَارَةٌ	اَقْسَارٌ	يَتَسِرُ	اَقْتَسِرُ	اَقْتَسِرْ	يَتَسِرُ	اَقْتَسِرَ
مَسْتَيْسِرٌ	مَسْتَيْسِرٌ	اَسْتَيْسَارَةٌ	اَسْتَيْسَارٌ	يَسْتَيْسِرُ	اَسْتُوسِرُ	اَسْتُوسِرْ	يَسْتَيْسِرُ	اَسْتُوسِرَ

DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH FINAL ي

Noun of Object. Noun of Action with م. Noun of Place and Time.	Noun of Agent.	Noun of Unity and Species.	Noun of Action.	Passive.		Imperative.	Active.	
				Aorist.	Proterite.		Aorist.	Proterite.
مُعْرِي	(ر) مُعْرِي	تُعْرِيَّة (واحدة)	تُعْرِيَّة	يُعْرِي	عُرِيَ	عَرِّ	يُعْرِي	عَرِيَ
مُعَارِي	مُعَارِي	مُعَارَاة (واحدة)	مُعَارَاة غَرَام	يُعَارِي	يُعَارِي	عَارِ	يُعَارِي	عَارِيَ
مُعْرِي	مُعْرِي	مُعْرَاة	مُعْرَاة	يُعْرِي	عُرِيَ	عَرِّ	يُعْرِي	عَرِيَ
مُتَعْرِي	مُتَعْرِي	تُعْرِيَّة	تُعْرِيَّة	يُتَعْرِي	تُعْرِي	تَعَرِّ	يُتَعْرِي	تَعَرِيَ
مُتَعَارِي	مُتَعَارِي	تُعَارِيَّة	تُعَارِيَّة	يُتَعَارِي	تُعَارِي	تُعَارِ	يُتَعَارِي	تُعَارِيَ
مُنْعَرِي	مُنْعَرِي	اُنْعَرَاة	اُنْعَرَاة	يُنْعَرِي	اُنْعَرِيَ	اُنْعَرِ	يُنْعَرِي	اُنْعَرِيَ
مُنْعَرِي	مُنْعَرِي	اُعْتَرَاة	اُعْتَرَاة	يُعْتَرِي	اُعْتَرِيَ	اُعْتَرِ	يُعْتَرِي	اُعْتَرِيَ
مُسْتَعْرِي	مُسْتَعْرِي	اُسْتَعْرَاة	اُسْتَعْرَاة	يُسْتَعْرِي	اُسْتَعْرِيَ	اُسْتَعْرِ	يُسْتَعْرِي	اُسْتَعْرِيَ

DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH FINAL **ي**

Noun of Object. Noun of Action with م . Noun of Place and Time.	Noun of Agent.	Noun of Unity and Species.	Noun of Action.	Passive.		Imperative.	Active.	
				Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.
مُكْشِي	(ش) مُكْشِي	تَكْشِيَّة (وَاحِدَةٌ)	تَكْشِيَّة	يُكْشِي	كُشِيَ	كُشِ	يُكْشِي	كُشِيَ
مُكْشَى	مُكْشَى	مُكْشَاة (وَاحِدَةٌ)	مُكْشَاة حِشَاء	يُكْشَى	كُشِيَ	كُشِ	يُكْشَى	كُشِيَ
مُكْشَى	مُكْشَى	أُكْشَاء	أُكْشَاء	يُكْشَى	كُشِيَ	كُشِ	يُكْشَى	كُشِيَ
مُتَكْشَى	مُتَكْشَى	تَكْشِيَّة	تَكْشِش	يُتَكْشَى	تُكْشِي	تَكْشِش	يُتَكْشَى	تُكْشِي
مُتَكْشَى	مُتَكْشَى	تَكْشَايِيَّة	تَكْشَاش	يُتَكْشَى	تُكْشِي	تَكْشَاش	يُتَكْشَى	تُكْشِي
مُنْكَشَى	مُنْكَشَى	أُنْكَشَاء	أُنْكَشَاء	يُنْكَشَى	أُنْكَشِيَ	أُنْكَشِش	يُنْكَشَى	أُنْكَشِيَ
مُكْتَشَى	مُكْتَشَى	أُكْتَشَاء	أُكْتَشَاء	يُكْتَشَى	أُكْتَشِيَ	أُكْتَشِش	يُكْتَشَى	أُكْتَشِيَ
مُسْتَكْشَى	مُسْتَكْشَى	أُسْتَكْشَاء	أُسْتَكْشَاء	يُسْتَكْشَى	أُسْتَكْشِيَ	أُسْتَكْشِش	يُسْتَكْشَى	أُسْتَكْشِيَ

DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH MEDIAL, AND FINAL ي

Noun of Object. Noun of Action with م. Noun of Place and Time.	Noun of Agent.	Noun of Unity and Species.	Noun of Action.	Passive.		Imperative.	Active.	
				Aorist.	Proterite.		Aorist.	Proterite.
مَوْتِي	(ف) مَوْتِي	تَوْتِيَّة (وَاحِدَةٌ)	تَوْتِيَّة	يُوتِي	وُتِيَ	وَفِّ	يُوتِي	وَفِّ
مَوَاتِي	مَوَاتِي	مَوَاتِيَّة (وَاحِدَةٌ)	مَوَاتِيَّة	يُوتِي	وُتِيَ	وَأَفِّ	يُوتِي	وَأَفِّ
مَوْتِي	مَوْتِي	إِيْفَاءٌ	إِيْفَاءٌ	يُوتِي	وُتِيَ	تَوَفِّ	يُوتِي	تَوَفِّ
مَتَوْتِي	مَتَوْتِي	تَوْتِيَّة	تَوْتِيَّة	يُوتِي	وُتِيَ	تَوَفِّ	يُوتِي	تَوَفِّ
مَتَوَاتِي	مَتَوَاتِي	تَوَاتِيَّة	تَوَاتِيَّة	يُوتِي	وُتِيَ	تَوَفِّ	يُوتِي	تَوَفِّ
مَتَوْتِي	مَتَوْتِي	إِيْفَاءٌ	إِيْفَاءٌ	يُوتِي	وُتِيَ	إِنْفَرِّ	يُوتِي	إِنْفَرِّ
مَتَوَاتِي	مَتَوَاتِي	إِيْفَاءٌ	إِيْفَاءٌ	يُوتِي	وُتِيَ	إِنْفَرِّ	يُوتِي	إِنْفَرِّ
مَسْتَوْتِي	مَسْتَوْتِي	إِسْتِيْفَاءٌ	إِسْتِيْفَاءٌ	يُسْتَوِي	وُسْتِيَ	إِسْتَوَفِّ	يُسْتَوِي	إِسْتَوَفِّ

DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH MEDIAL, AND FINAL ي

Noun of Object. Noun of Action with م.	Noun of Place and Time.	Noun of Unity and Species.	Noun of Action.	Passive.		Imperative.	Active.	
				Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.
مَطْرَى	مَطْرَى (و)	مَطْرِيَّة (وَاحِدَةٌ)	مَطْرِيَّة	يُطْرَى	طُرِيَ	طَوِّ	يُطْرَى	طَرَى
مَطَارَى	مَطَارَى	مَطَارَاة (وَاحِدَةٌ)	مَطَارَاة طَرَاء	يُطَارَى	طُورِيَ	طَاوِ	يُطَارَى	طَاوَى
مَطْرَى	مَطْرَى	مَطْرَاة	مَطْرَاء	يُطْرَى	أُطْرِيَ	أَطِرْ	يُطْرَى	أَطْرَى
مَنْطَرَى	مَنْطَرَى	مَنْطَرِيَّة	مَنْطَرَاء	يُنْطَرَى	نُطْرِيَ	نَطَّرْ	يُنْطَرَى	نَطَّرَى
مَنْطَارَى	مَنْطَارَى	مَنْطَارَاة	مَنْطَارَاء	يُنْطَارَى	تُنْطَارِيَ	تَنْطَارَ	يُنْطَارَى	تَنْطَارَى
مَنْطَرَى	مَنْطَرَى	مَنْطَرَاة	مَنْطَرَاء	يُنْطَرَى	أُنْطَرِيَ	أَنْطَرِ	يُنْطَرَى	أَنْطَرَى
مَنْطَرَى	مَنْطَرَى	مَنْطَرَاة	مَنْطَرَاء	يُسْتَنْطَرَى	أُسْتَنْطَرِيَ	أَسْتَنْطِرْ	يُسْتَنْطَرَى	أَسْتَنْطَرَى

DERIVED VERBS.

I. فَعَّلَ

To make distant	بَعَّدَ	To found	أَسَّسَ
„ rebuke	بَكَّتَ	„ compose, compile	أَلَفَّ
„ inform	بَلَّغَ	„ hope	أَمَّلَ
„ wet	بَلَّلَ	„ entrust	أَمَّنَ
„ give chloroform	بَنَّجَ	„ strengthen	أَيَّدَ
„ blow a trumpet	بَوَّقَ	„ honour	بَتَّجَلَ
„ make plain, clear	بَيَّنَ	„ burn incense	بَخَّرَ
„ fulfil	سَمَّمَ	„ scatter	بَدَّدَ
„ value	ثَمَّنَ	„ change	بَدَّلَ
„ blaspheme	جَدَّفَ	„ pitch a tent	خَيَّمَ
„ row	جَدَّفَ	„ manage well	دَبَّرَ
„ try, tempt	جَرَّبَ	„ train	دَرَّبَ
„ strip	جَرَدَ	„ destroy utterly	دَمَّرَ
„ divide	جَزَّأَ	„ winnow	ذَرَّى
„ levy troops	جَنَّدَ	„ gild	ذَهَّبَ
„ compose an elegy	أَبَّنَ	„ appoint a chief	رَأَسَ
„ impress, influence	أَثَّرَ	„ foster	رَبَّى
„ grant a delay	أَجَّلَ	„ arrange	رَتَّبَ
„ retard	أَخَّرَ	„ cause to return	رَحَّعَ
„ call to prayer	أَذَّنَ	„ frighten	رَهَّبَ
„ date	أَرَّخَ	„ play upon a reed	رَمَّ

To adorn	زَيْنَ	To give choice	خَيْرَ
„ praise	سَبَّحَ	„ dye red	فَرَجَ
„ register	سَجَّدَ	„ embroider	طَرَزَ
„ heat	سَخَّنَ	„ divorce	طَلَّقَ
„ arm	سَلَّحَ	„ cleanse	طَهَّرَ
„ surrender	سَلَّمَ	„ bless	طَوَّبَ
„ nail	سَمَّرَ	„ overshadow	ظَلَّلَ
„ permit	جَوَّزَ	„ express, to cause to pass over	عَبَّرَ
„ gather troops	جَيْشَ	„ hasten	عَجَّلَ
„ make lovable	حَبَّبَ	„ count	عَدَدَ
„ adorn (speech)	حَبَّرَ	„ torment	عَذَّبَ
„ sharpen, set limits	حَدَّدَ	„ strip	عَرَى
„ look intently	حَدَّقَ	„ comfort	عَرَى
„ warn	حَدَّرَ	„ perfume	عَطَّرَ
„ get ready, bring	حَضَّرَ	„ magnify	عَظَّمَ
„ burden	حَمَلَ	„ hang up	عَلَّقَ
„ change	حَوَّلَ	„ teach	عَلَّمَ
„ perplex	حَيَّرَ	„ prolong life, build	عَمَّرَ
„ salute	حَيَّى	„ make general	عَمَّمَ
„ inform	خَبَّرَ	„ accustom	عَوَّنَ
„ devastate	خَرَّبَ	„ name	سَمَّى
„ save, deliver	خَلَّصَ	„ facilitate	سَهَّلَ
„ leaven	خَمَّرَ	„ fence a field	سَيَّجَ
„ frighten	خَوَّفَ	„ winter	شَتَّى
„ disappoint	خَيَّبَ		

To strengthen	شَدَّدَ	To accede to	لَبَّى
„ exhort to patience	صَبَّرَ	„ abridge, extract	لَخَّصَ
„ correct	صَحَّحَ	„ to glorify	مَجَّدَ
„ believe	صَدَّقَ	„ refine by fire, try	مَخَّصَ
„ proclaim	صَرَّحَ	„ nurse	مَرَّضَ
„ plate	صَفَّحَ	„ rend	مَرَّقَ
„ applaud	صَفَّقَ	„ facilitate	مَهَّدَ
„ clarify	صَفَّى	„ rouse, draw attention	
„ pray	صَلَّى	to	نَبَّهَ
„ determine upon	صَمَّمَ	„ rely upon	عَوَّلَ
„ compose, assort	صَنَّفَ	„ keep a festival	عَيَّدَ
„ make a noise	صَوَّرَ	„ sing (bird)	غَرَّدَ
„ paint	صَوَّرَ	„ wash	غَسَّلَ
„ summer	صَيَّفَ	„ cover	غَشَى
„ slaughter a victim	ضَحَّى	„ sing	غَنَى
„ fetter, to register	قَيَّدَ	„ change	غَيَّرَ
„ accuse of lying	كَذَّبَ	„ search	فَتَّشَ
„ consecrate	كَرَّسَ	„ distribute	فَرَّقَ
„ shatter	كَسَّرَ	„ explain	فَسَّرَ
„ atone	كَفَّرَ	„ prefer	فَضَّلَ
„ enshroud	كَفَّنَ	„ think upon	فَكَّرَ
„ crown	كَلَّلَ	„ kiss	قَبَّلَ
„ speak	كَلَّمَ	„ sanctify	قَدَّسَ
„ complete	كَمَّلَ	„ offer	قَدَّمَ
„ create	كَوَّنَ	„ cut into pieces	قَطَّعَ

To straighten	تَوَمَّ	To make one a ruler	رَوَّى
„ strengthen	قَوَّى	„ deliver	نَجَّى
„ prepare	هَيَّأَ	„ bring down	نَزَلَ
„ reprove	وَبَّخَ	„ scrutinize	نَقَّبَ
„ distribute	ذَرَعَ	„ revise	نَقَّحَ
„ explain	وَضَّحَ	„ cleanse	نَقَّى
„ make fit, favourable (God)	وَفَّقَى	„ embellish a book	نَمَّقَى
„ venerate	وَقَّرَ	„ threaten	هَدَّدَ
„ seal, let fall	وَقَّعَ	„ educate	هَدَّبَ
„ appoint an agent	وَكَّدَ	„ praise God	هَلَّلَ
		„ congratulate	هَنَّأَ

II. فَاعِلٌ

To struggle	جَاهَدَ	To disagree with	خَالَفَ
„ be contiguous to	جَاوَرَ	„ ward off	دَافَعَ
„ exceed limits	جَاوَزَ	„ persevere	دَاوَمَ
„ converse with	خَادَثَ	„ reproach, blame	آخَذَ
„ give careful attention to	حَافَظَ	„ be sociable with one	آدَسَ
„ summon	حَاكَمَ	„ hasten	بَادَرَ
„ try to do	حَاوَلَ	„ go forth to battle, duel	بَارَزَ
„ try to deceive	خَادَعَ	„ bless	بَارَكَ
„ contend with	خَاصَمَ	„ act in person	بَاشَرَ
„ address	خَاطَبَ	„ exaggerate	بَالَغَ
„ risk	خَاطَرَ		

To pay attention to	بَالَى	To share with	قَاسَمَ
„ swear fealty	بَايَعَ	„ endure	قَاسَى
„ dispute	جَادَلَ	„ punish	قَاصَّ
„ recompense	جَارَى	„ oppose	قَاوَمَ
„ sit in company		„ dissemble	رَأَى
with	جَالَسَ	„ review	رَاجَعَ
„ show courtesy	جَامَلَ	„ accompany	رَافَقَ
„ be similar	جَانَسَ	„ guard	رَاقَبَ
„ double	ضَاعَفَ	„ try to surpass	سَابَقَ
„ oppress	ضَايَقَ	„ help	سَاعَدَ
„ pursue, chase	طَارَدَ	„ journey	سَافَرَ
„ comply with	طَاوَعَ	„ live with	سَاكَنَ
„ censure	عَاتَبَ	„ live peaceably with	سَامَمَ
„ treat with ani-		„ equalize	سَاوَى
mosity	عَادَى	„ keep peace with	سَايَرَ
„ punish	عَاقَبَ	„ resemble	شَابَهَ
„ treat disease, ende-		„ drink with	شَارَبَ
avour	عَالَجَ	„ share „	شَارَكَ
„ deal with	عَامَلَ	„ consult	شَاوَرَ
„ resist	عَانَدَ	„ accompany	صَاحَبَ
„ covenant	عَاهَدَ	„ find by chance	صَادَفَ
„ help	عَاوَنَ	„ wrestle	صَارَعَ
„ abandon	غَادَرَ	„ reconcile	صَالَحَ
„ compare	قَابَلَ	„ contradict	نَاقَصَ
„ be near to	قَارَبَ	„ hand	نَاوَلَ

To emigrate	هَاجَرَ	To vie for superiority	كَاتَبَرَ
„ assault	وَائَبَ	„ write	كَاتَبَ
„ conceal	وَأَرَى	„ recompense	كَافَأَ
„ poise	وَأَزَنَ	„ observe	لَاخَطَّ
„ correspond	وَأَزَى	„ deal kindly	لَاطَفَ
„ persist in	وَأَصَدَّ	„ sport with	لَاعَبَ
„ persevere	وَأَطَبَ	„ meet	لَاقَى
„ make an appoint- ment	وَأَعَدَّ	„ help	مَالَأَ
„ agree with	وَأَفَقَى	„ seek to hinder	مَانَعَ
„ arrive	وَأَفَى	„ call	نَادَى
„ suffer	كَابَدَ	„ be hypocritical	نَافَقَى

III. أَفْعَلَ

To become rich	أَثْرَى	To count	أَحْصَى
„ bear fruit	أَثْمَرَ	„ bring	أَحْضَرَ
„ be liberal with	أَجَزَلَ	„ inform	أَخْبَرَ
„ cause to sit	أَجَلَسَ	„ be fertile	أَخْصَبَ
„ answer	أَجَابَ	„ subdue	أَخْضَعَ
„ do or say anything well	أَجَانَ	„ give	آتَى
„ protect	أَجَارَ	„ prefer	أَثَرَ
„ allow	أَجَازَ	„ harm	أَدَى
„ feel	أَحَسَّ	„ believe	آمَنَ
„ do good	أَحْسَنَ	„ originate	أَبْدَعَ
		„ change	أَبْدَلَ

To see	أَبْصَرَ	To quench	أَطْفَأَ
„ be slow	أَبْطَأَ	„ set free	أَطْلَقَ
„ abolish	أَبْطَلَدَ	„ obey	أَطَاعَ
„ removeto a distance	أَبْعَدَ	„ be dark	أَظْلَمَ
„ reserve	أَبْقَى	„ prepare	أَعَدَّ
„ be clear, manifest	أَبَانَ	„ deprive of	أَعْدَمَ
„ weary	أَتْعَبَ	„ err	أَخْطَأَ
„ perfect	أَتَقَنَ	„ break a promise	أَخْلَفَ
„ fulfil	أَتَمَّ	„ bring in, insert	أَدْخَلَ
„ satisfy (food)	أَشْبَعَ	„ submit to	أَذْعَنَ
„ shine	أَشْرَقَ	„ commit a crime	أَذْنَبَ
„ take into partner- ship	أَشْرَكَ	„ spread news	أَدَاعَ
„ pity	أَشْفَقَ	„ show	أَرَى
„ be ambiguous	أَشْكَدَ	„ send	أَرْسَلَ
„ point to	أَشَارَ	„ anchor	أَرَسَى
„ be morning	أَصْبَحَ	„ give rest	أَرَاخَ
„ persist	أَصَّرَ	„ wish	أَرَادَ
„ rectify	أَصْلَحَ	„ quench thirst	أَرَوَى
„ afflict, be right, hit the mark	أَصَابَ	„ resolve	أَزْمَعَ
„ light	أَضَاءَ	„ hasten	أَسْرَعَ
„ add, show hospi- tality	أَضَافَ	„ squander	أَسْرَفَ
„ feed	أَطْعَمَ	„ submit	أَسْلَمَ
		„ be or become aged	أَسَنَّ
		„ „ prolix	أَسْهَبَ
		„ do evil	أَسَاءَ

To sail	أَفْلَحَ	To become fatigued	أَغْيَا
„ convince	أَقْنَعَ	„ shut	أَغْلَقَ
„ abide, to raise	أَقَامَ	„ succour	أَغَاثَ
„ increase	أَكْتَرَّ	„ seduce	أَغْرَى
„ honour	أَكْرَمَ	„ separate	أَفْرَزَ
„ compel	أَكْرَهَ	„ divulge	أَفْشَى
„ clothe	أَلْبَسَ	„ be successful	أَفْلَحَ
„ glue	أَلْصَقَ	„ be penniless	أَفْلَسَ
„ exclude	أَلْفَى	„ annihilate	أَفْنَى
„ inspire	أَلْهَمَ	„ approach	أَقْبَلَ
„ retain	أَمْسَكَ	„ advance boldly	أَقْدَمَ
„ be evening	أَمْسَى	„ confess	أَقْرَأَ
„ consider attentively	أَمَعَنَ	„ lend	أَقْرَضَ
„ be possible	أَمَكَّنَ	„ swear	أَقْسَمَ
„ inform	أَنْبَأَ	„ deposit	أَوْدَعَ
„ accomplish	أَنْجَزَ	„ lead to water, state	أَوْرَدَ
„ bring down	أَنْزَلَ	„ cause to reach	أَوْصَلَ
„ compose, begin	أَنْشَأَ	„ command	أَوْصَى
„ recite poetry	أَنْشَدَ	„ make plain	أَوْصَحَ
„ give	أَعْطَى	„ kindle	أَوْقَدَ
„ reveal	أَعْلَنَ	„ beckon	أَوْمَأَ
„ lend	أَعَارَ	„ awaken	أَيْقَظَ
„ lack	أَعْوَزَ	„ be sure	أَيَقَنَ
„ help	أَعَانَ	„ treat with justice	أَنْصَفَ
		„ grant	أَنْعَمَ

To spend	أَنفَقَ	To present	أَهْدَى
„ deliver	أَنقَدَ	„ despise	أَهَانَ
„ deny	أَنكَرَ	„ make obligatory	أَوْجَبَ
„ light up	أَنَارَ	„ inspire	أَوْحَى

IV. تَفَعَّلَ

To adopt	تَبَنَّى	To regret	تَأَسَّفَ
„ be manifest	تَبَيَّنَ	„ be rooted	تَأَمَّصَ
„ follow up	تَتَبَعَ	„ „ sure	تَأَكَّدَ
„ be confirmed	تَثَبَّتَ	„ „ composed(book)	تَأَلَّفَ
„ „ educated	تَثَقَّفَ	„ suffer	تَأَلَّمَ
„ „ renewed	تَجَدَّدَ	„ meditate	تَأَمَّلَ
„ „ incarnate	تَجَسَّدَ	„ act with delibe- ration	تَأَنَّى
„ spy	تَجَسَّسَ	„ be scattered	تَبَدَّدَ
„ bear patiently	تَجَلَّدَ	„ „ changed	تَبَدَّلَ
„ be unveiled	تَجَلَّى	„ give freely	تَبَرَّعَ
„ shun	تَجَنَّبَ	„ smile	تَبَسَّمَ
„ be petrified	تَحَكَّجَرَ	„ consider	تَبَصَّرَ
„ „ moved	تَحَرَّكَ	„ amuse oneself	تَسَلَّى
„ verify	تَحَقَّقَ	„ be poisoned	تَسَمَّمَ
„ suffer patiently	تَحَمَّلَ	„ „ scattered	تَشَتَّتَ
„ carry under the arm	تَأَبَّطَ	„ „ encouraged	تَشَجَّعَ
„ be polite	تَأَدَّبَ	„ „ strengthened	تَشَدَّدَ
„ „ founded	تَأَسَّسَ	„ long for	تَشَرَّقَى

To give alms	تَصَدَّقَ	To show pity	تَرَأَفَ
„ employ oneself in	تَصَرَّفَ	„ hope	تَرَجَّى
„ imagine	تَصَوَّرَ	„ welcome	تَرَحَّبَ
„ beseech	تَضَرَّعَ	„ watch for	تَتَقَّبَ
„ comprise	تَضَمَّنَ	„ reflect	تَرَوَّى
„ be immoderate	تَطَرَّفَ	„ marry	تَزَوَّجَ
„ act voluntarily	تَطَوَّعَ	„ be adorned	تَزَيَّنَ
„ draw bad omen		„ „ armed	تَسَلَّمَ
from	تَطَيَّرَ	„ exercise absolute	
„ accuse of injustice	تَظَلَّمَ	power over	تَسَلَّطَ
„ be astonished	تَعَجَّبَ	„ enjoy	تَتَمَّعَ
„ become numerous	تَعَدَّدَ	„ be glorified	تَمَجَّدَ
„ excuse oneself, be		„ rebel	تَمَرَّدَ
impossible	تَعَدَّرَ	„ wallow	تَمَرَّغَ
„ learn	تَعَلَّمَ	„ be habituated to	تَمَرَّنَ
„ compassionate	تَحَنَّنَ	„ grasp	تَمَسَّكَ
„ be changed	تَحَوَّلَ	„ be stable	تَمَكَّنَ
„ „ perplexed	تَحَيَّرَ	„ flatter	تَمَلَّقَ
„ „ educated	تَخَرَّجَ	„ take possession,	
„ „ afraid	تَخَوَّفَ	reign	تَمَلَّكَ
„ choose	تَخَيَّرَ	„ be awake to	تَنَبَّهَ
„ be trained	تَدَرَّبَ	„ „ ascetic	تَنَسَّكَ
„ proceed gradually	تَدَرَّجَ	„ become a Christian	تَنَصَّرَ
„ be defiled	تَدَنَّسَ	„ live luxuriously	تَنَعَّمَ
„ humble oneself	تَدَلَّلَ	„ breathe	تَنَفَّسَ

To disguise oneself	تَنَكَّرَ	To come into existence	تَكَوَّنَ
„ groan, sigh	تَنَهَّدَ	„ be compact	تَلَبَّدَ
„ be diverse	تَنَوَّعَ	„ muffle oneself	تَلَثَّمَ
„ „ well brought up	تَهَدَّبَ	„ be soiled	تَلَطَّخَ
„ deride	تَهَكَّمَ	„ show kindness	تَلَطَّفَ
„ purpose, be bapt- ized	تَعَمَّدَ	„ rejoice	تَهَلَّلَ
„ dine	تَغَدَّى	„ rush heedlessly into	تَهَوَّرَ
„ take nourishment	تَغَدَّى	„ be prepared	تَهَيَّأَ
„ gaze	تَفَرَّسَ	„ fear	تَهَيَّبَ
„ be dispersed	تَفَرَّقَ	„ go towards	تَوَجَّهَ
„ seek a lost object	تَفَقَّدَ	„ seek diligently	تَوَخَّى
„ be sanctified	تَقَدَّسَ	„ fall into difficulty	تَوَرَّطَ
„ advance	تَقَدَّمَ	„ lean on a pillow	تَوَسَّدَ
„ approach	تَقَرَّبَ	„ mediate	تَوَسَّطَ
„ be proved	تَقَرَّرَ	„ supplicate	تَوَسَّلَ
„ put on	تَقَلَّدَ	„ penetrate into	تَوَعَّلَ
„ be proud	تَكَبَّرَ	„ expect	تَرَقَّبَ
„ „ shattered	تَكَسَّرَ	„ lean upon	تَوَكَّأَ
„ speak	تَكَلَّمَ	„ suspect, imagine	تَوَهَّمَ
		„ become easy	تَيَسَّرَ
		„ be sure of	تَيَقَّنَ

V. تَفَاعَلَ

To discuss together	تَحَاوَرَ	To dispute together	تَخَاصَمَ
„ inform one another	تَخَابَرَ	„ interfere	تَدَاخَلَ

To be mutually		To affect ignorance	تَجَاهَلَ
agreed	تَرَاضَى	» transgress, exceed	
» be closely packed	تَرَآكَمَ	the bounds	تَجَاوَزَ
» crowd	تَرَاحَمَ	» love one another	تَكَابَبَ
» be exalted	تَسَامَى	» fight one another	تَكَارَبَ
» „ accomodating	تَسَاهَلَ	» summon one an-	
» „ equal	تَسَاوَى	other	تَكَاتَمَ
» forebode ill	تَشَاءَمَ	» follow in regular	
» resemble one an-		series	تَقَاطَرَ
other	تَشَابَهَ	» intersect	تَقَاطَعَ
» quarrel	تَشَاجَرَ	» neglect	تَقَاعَدَ
» share with	تَشَارَكَ	» increase	تَكَافَّرَ
» feign occupation	تَشَاغَلَ	» be thick, dense	تَكَاثَفَ
» take counsel to-		» „ lazy	تَكَاسَلَ
gether	تَأَمَّرَ	» meet one another	تَكَالَفَى
» discuss together	تَبَاحَثَ	» feign sickness	تَبَاوَضَ
» exchange	تَبَادَلَ	» feign death	تَبَاوَتَ
» be blessed	تَبَارَكَ	» swing	تَبَايَلَدَ
» „ far apart	تَبَاعَدَ	» commune secretly	تَبَايَعَى
» follow consecu-		» contend, litigate	تَبَايَعَ
tively	تَتَابَعَ	» take by the hand	تَبَاوَلَ
» yawn	تَتَاءَبَ	» feign sleep	تَبَاوَمَ
» be heavy, sluggish	تَتَأَقَلَّ	» rush to	تَبَاهَتَ
» dispute together	تَتَجَادَلَ	» neglect	تَبَاهَوْنَ
» dare	تَتَجَاسَرَ	» conceal oneself	تَبَاوَى

To be equal to	تَوَارَى	To feign blindness,	
” ” humble	تَوَاضَعَ	ignorance	تَعَامَى
” consult together	تَشَاوَرَ	” covenant	تَعَاهَدَ
” accompany	تَصَاحَبَ	” help one another	تَعَاوَنَ
” shake hands with	تَصَافَحَ	” rival in glory	تَفَاخَرَ
” be reconciled	تَصَالَحَ	” become important,	
” fight one another	تَصَارَبَ	formidable	تَفَاعَمَ
” exceed the rights	تَطَاوَلَ	” draw near to	تَقَارَبَ
” be scattered	تَطَايَرَ	” divide with	تَقَاسَمَ
” feign	تَظَاهَرَ	” demand payment	تَقَاضَى
” engage in	تَعَاطَى	” agree upon	تَوَاطَأَ
” be exalted	تَعَالَى	” agree together	تَوَافَقَ
” deal with one an- other	تَعَامَلَ	” be dilatory	تَوَانَى

VI. اِنْفَعَلَ

To be forsaken	اِنْتَحَدَلَ	To be healed	اِنْدَمَلَ
” ” eclipsed (moon)	اِنْتَحَسَفَ	” ” amazed	اِنْدَهَدَلَ
” be lowered	اِنْتَحَفَصَ	” ” troubled	اِنْرَعَجَ
” ” erased	اِنْدَثَرَ	” ” bruised	اِنْسَحَقَى
” ” obliterated (traces)	اِنْدَرَسَ	” ” poured out	اِنْسَكَبَ
” be repelled	اِنْدَفَعَ	” slip away	اِنْسَدَّ
		” be split	اِنشَقَّ
		” ” poured out	اِنصَبَ

To depart	أَنْصَرَفَ	To be disclosed	أَنْكَشَفَ
„ proceed from	أَنْبَتَقَ	„ „ blotted out	أَنْبَحَى
„ be cut (pen)	أَنْبَرَى	„ „ pulled down	أَنْهَدَمَ
„ „ extended,		„ „ put to flight	أَنْهَزَمَ
mercy	أَنْبَسَطَ	„ rain heavily, shed	
„ be raised, sent	أَنْبَعَثَ	tears	أَنْهَدَّ
„ „ attracted	أَنْجَدَبَ	„ be joined to	أَنْضَمَّ
„ „ wounded	أَنْجَرَحَ	„ „ printed	أَنْطَبَعَ
„ „ concealed	أَنْعَجَبَ	„ „ covered	أَنْطَبَقَ
„ go down	أَنْعَدَرَ	„ „ thrown	أَنْطَرَحَ
„ deviate	أَنْعَرَفَ	„ depart	أَنْطَلَقَ
„ be straitened	أَنْعَصَرَ	„ be bent, inclined	أَنْعَطَفَ
„ „ degraded	أَنْعَطَّ	„ „ arched, coa-	
„ „ broken	أَنْعَطَمَ	gulated	أَنْعَقَدَ
„ „ loosed	أَنْعَلَّ	„ cleave to	أَنْعَكَفَ
„ stoop	أَنْعَنَى	„ be planted	أَنْفَرَسَ
„ be deceived	أَنْعَدَعَ	„ „ plunged	أَنْغَمَسَ
„ „ led	أَنْقَادَ	„ „ opened	أَنْفَتَحَ
„ fall prostrate, to		„ burst	أَنْفَجَرَ
be spilt	أَنْكَبَ	„ be separated	أَنْفَصَلَ
„ be broken, defeat-		„ „ cleft	أَنْفَلَقَ
ed	أَنْكَسَرَ	„ „ distressed	أَنْقَبَضَ
„ be eclipsed (sun)	أَنْكَسَفَ	„ „ extinguished	أَنْقَرَضَ

To be finished	انْقَضَى	To be overturned	انْقَلَبَ
” ” cut off, cease	انْقَطَعَ		

VII. اِفْتَعَلَ

To adduce an argu- ment	اِحْتَجَّ	To begin	اِبْتَدَأَ
” be on one's guard	اِحْتَرَسَ	” originate	اِبْتَدَعَ
” ” burnt	اِحْتَرَقَ	” smile	اِبْتَسَمَ
” venerate	اِحْتَرَمَ	” be distant	اِبْتَعَدَ
” gather wood	اِحْتَطَبَ	” request	اِبْتَعَى
” celebrate	اِحْتَفَلَ	” swallow	اِبْتَلَعَ
” despise	اِحْتَفَرَ	” put to the test	اِبْتَلَى
” endure	اِحْتَمَلَ	” delight	اِبْتَهَجَ
” contain	اِحْتَوَى	” implore	اِبْتَهَلَ
” use strategy	اِحْتَدَى	” follow	اِتَّبَعَ
” hide oneself	اِحْتَبَأَ	” ruminate	اِحْتَرَّ
” experience	اِحْتَبَرَ	” be gathered	اِحْتَمَعَ
” invent	اِحْتَرَعَ	” exert oneself	اِحْتَهَدَ
” abridge	اِحْتَصَرَ	” be kindled	اِسْتَعَرَ
” be distinguished for	اِحْتَصَّ	” draw water	اِسْتَقَى
” take to oneself	اِتَّخَذَ	” listen	اِسْتَمَعَ
” be girded	اِتَّرَزَ	” lean upon	اِسْتَنَدَ
		” be strong	اِشْتَدَّ
		” buy	اِشْتَرَى

To be kindled	اِشْتَعَلَ	To be ordained	اِرْتَسَمَ
” ” occupied	اِشْتَعَلَ	” ” pleased with	اِرْتَضَى
” long for	اِشْتَهَى	” tremble	اِرْتَعَدَ
” long for	اِشْتَأَى	” rise, advance	اِرْتَقَى
” be dyed	اِصْطَبَعَ	” commit a crime	اِرْتَكَبَ
” choose	اِصْطَفَى	” suspect	اِرْتَابَ
” make terms	اِصْطَلَحَ	” despise, scorn	اِرْتَدَى
” warm oneself	اِصْطَلَى	” increase	اِرْتَدَانٌ
” lie down	اِصْطَجَعَ	” cover oneself	اِسْتَمْتَرَ
” be troubled	اِضْطَرَبَ	” economise	اِقْتَصَدَ
” compel	اِضْطَرَّ	” limit oneself to	اِقْتَصَرَ
” blaze	اِضْطَرَمَ	” require	اِقْتَضَى
” persecute	اِضْطَهَدَ	” acquire	اِقْتَنَى
” defraud	اِخْتَلَسَ	” be grieved	اِكْتَابَ
” be mixed	اِخْتَلَطَ	” earn	اِكْتَسَبَ
” invent, forge lies	اِخْتَلَقَ	” be clothed	اِكْتَسَى
” be leavened	اِخْتَبَرَ	” ” satisfied	اِكْتَفَى
” choose	اِخْتَارَ	” surround	اِكْتَنَفَ
” claim	اِدْعَى	” take refuge	اِلْتَجَأَ
” be confused	اِرْتَبَكَ	” undertake	اِلْتَزَمَ
” tremble	اِرْتَجَفَ	” look back	اِلْتَفَتَ
” extemporize	اِرْتَجَلَ	” meet together	اِلْتَقَى
” apostatize	اِرْتَدَ	” seek for	اِلْتَمَسَ

To blaze, be inflam-		To draw near	اقترب
ed	التَّهَبَ	„ commit crime	اقترب
„ be bent	التَّوَى	„ abstain from	امتنع
„ examine, try	امتنحن	„ be vigilant	انتبه
„ be mixed	امتزج	„ commit suicide	انتحر
„ „ filled	امتلا	„ choose	انتخب
„ know, see	اطلع	„ be spread	انتشر
„ consider	اعتبر	„ „ victorious	انتصر
„ excuse oneself	اعتذر	„ await	انتظر
„ confess	اعترف	„ be puffed up	انتفخ
„ separate oneself	اعتزل	„ profit by	انتفع
„ take refuge	اعتصم	„ criticise	انتقد
„ embrace	اعتنق	„ be transferred	انتقل
„ take care of	اعتنى	„ choose	انتقى
„ be accustomed	اعتاد	„ have a relapse	انتكس
„ „ deceived	اغتر	„ rebuke, drive away	انتهر
„ wash oneself	اغتسل	„ seize an oppor-	
„ be enraged	اغتاظ	tunity	انتهر
„ begin, conquer	افتتح	„ come to an end	انتهى
„ glory in	افتخر	„ be shaken	اهتز
„ prey on	انترس	„ mind	اهتم
„ miss	انتقد	„ be united	اتحد
„ think	انكر	„ „ wide	اتسع

To be joined	إِتَّصَلَ	To burn, blaze	إِتَّقَدَ
„ „ humble	إِتَّضَعَّ	„ be pious, fear	إِتَّقَى
„ follow advice	إِتَّعَطَّ	„ lean upon	إِتَّكَّأَ
„ happen, agree	إِتَّفَقَ	„ trust in	إِتَّكَلَّ

VIII. اِفْعَلَّ

To be white	اِبْيَضَ	To be yellow	اِضْفَرَ
„ „ red	اِحْمَرَ	„ „ crooked	اِعْوَجَّ
„ „ green	اِحْضَرَ	„ „ one-eyed	اِعْوَرَ
„ „ blue	اِزْرَقَ	„ „ dust-coloured	اِعْبَرَ
„ „ brown	اِسْمَرَ	„ „ dull	اِكْمَدَ
„ „ black	اِسْوَدَ		

IX. اِسْتَفْعَلَ

To approve	اِسْتَحْسَنَ	To employ a ser-	
„ send for one	اِسْتَحْضَرَ	vant	اِسْتَحْدَمَ
„ be worthy of	اِسْتَحَقَّ	„ draw out	اِسْتَخْرَجَ
„ find sweet	اِسْتَحْلَى	„ extract	اِسْتَخْلَصَ
„ be changed, be		„ rectify omission	اِسْتَدْرَكَ
impossible	اِسْتَحَالَ	„ seek proof, infer	اِسْتَدَلَّ
„ spare one's life,		„ be circular	اِسْتَدَارَ
be ashamed	اِسْتَحْيَا	„ seek mercy	اِسْتَرْحَمَ
„ seek information	اِسْتَكْبَرَ	„ recall	اِسْتَرَدَّ

To hire	اِسْتَأْجَرَ	To rest	اِسْتَقَرَّ
„ ask permission	اِسْتَأْذَنَ	„ explore	اِسْتَقْرَى
„ seek safety	اِسْتَأْمَنَ	„ penetrate deeply,	
„ be polite, cultur-		(affair)	اِسْتَقْصَى
ed	اِسْتَأْنَسَ	„ be independent	اِسْتَقَلَّ
„ recommence an		„ „ upright	اِسْتَقَامَ
action	اِسْتَأْنَفَ	„ consider great	اِسْتَكْبَرَ
„ be worthy of	اِسْتَأْهَلَ	„ consider abun-	
„ „ arbitrary	اِسْتَبَدَّ	dant	اِسْتَكْتَرَّ
„ exchange	اِسْتَبَدَّلَ	„ regard as a duty	اِسْتَلْزَمَ
„ rejoice at good		„ draw attention	
news	اِسْتَبَشَّرَ	to	اِسْتَلْفَتَ
„ consider ugly	اِسْتَبْشَعَ	„ lie on one's back	اِسْتَلْقَى
„ consider remote	اِسْتَبَعَدَ	„ seek inspiration	اِسْتَلْهَمَ
„ seek the comple-		„ seek help	اِسْتَمَدَّ
tion	اِسْتَتَمَّ	„ continue	اِسْتَمَرَّ
„ except	اِسْتَثْنَى	„ ask a gift	اِسْتَسْتَمَعَ
„ answer prayer	اِسْتَجَابَ	„ discover	اِسْتَنْبَطَ
„ seek protection	اِسْتَجَارَ	„ deduce	اِسْتَنْتَمَّ
„ profit	اِسْتَفَادَ	„ ask for water, be	
„ loathe	اِسْتَقْبَحَ	dropsical	اِسْتَسْقَى
„ meet, to be in		„ call to witness	اِسْتَشْهَدَ
front of	اِسْتَقْبَلَ	„ consult	اِسْتَشَارَ

To esteem of little		» seek aid	اِسْتَعَاثَ
account	اِسْتَصْفَرَ	» seek to under-	
» find right	اِسْتَصَوَّبَ	stand	اِسْتَفْهَمَ
» seek for infor-		» seek help	اِسْتَنْجَدَ
mation	اِسْتَطْلَعَ	» ask fulfilment of	
» enslave	اِسْتَعْبَدَ	a promise	اِسْتَنْجَزَ
» hasten	اِسْتَعْجَلَ	» disdain	اِسْتَنْكَفَ
» make oneself		» incite	اِسْتَنْهَضَ
ready	اِسْتَعَدَّ	» shine, be enligh-	
» seek a favour	اِسْتَعَطَفَ	tened	اِسْتَنَارَ
» consider great	اِسْتَعْظَمَ	» mock	اِسْتَهْزَأَ
» desire to know	اِسْتَعْلَمَ	» begin speech	اِسْتَهَلَّ
» use	اِسْتَعْمَلَ	» deserve	اِسْتَوْجَبَ
» borrow	اِسْتَعَارَ	» deposit	اِسْتَوْدَعَ
» seek help	اِسْتَعَانَ	» seek payment	اِسْتَوَلَّى
» seek forgiveness	اِسْتَغْفَرَ	» overpower	اِسْتَوَلَّى
» be rich, independ-		» be awakened	اِسْتَيْقَظَ
dent of	اِسْتَغْنَى		

X. اِفْعَوْلَ

To be hump-backed	اِحْدَوْدَبَ	To be about to do	اِحْلَوْلَقَ
» » » »	اِحْقَرَقَفَ	» » covered with	
» » sweet	اِحْلَوْلَى	grass	اِحْشَوْشَبَ
» » rough, rude	اِحْشَوْشَنَ	» be filled with tears,	
		eyes	اِحْرُورَقَ

QUADRILITERALS. فَعَلَّلَ

To embellish	زَخَّرَفَ	To make disciples	تَلَمَّدَ
„ embroider	زَرَزَشَ	„ stammer	تَنَمَّمَ
„ move	زَعَزَعَ	„ collect	جَمَهَرَ
„ shake	زَلَزَلَ	„ have the death-	
„ roar	زَمَجَرَ	rattle	حَشَرَجَ
„ clothe	سَرَبَلَ	„ appear (truth)	حَضَّكَصَ
„ lower the head	طَاطَأَ	„ neigh	حَمَّحَمَ
„ fall in (the night)	عَسَّعَسَ	„ open the eyes	
„ camp	عَسَّكَرَ	widely	حَبَلَقَ
„ sift wheat	عَرَبَلَ	„ scribble	حَرَبَشَ
„ gargle	غَرَّغَرَ	„ roll down	دَخَّرَجَ
„ burst out laughing	فَهَّقَهُ	„ buzz	دَنَدَنَ
„ shine	لَأَلَأَ	„ flutter	رَفَّرَفَ
„ rinse	مَضَّضَ	„ roll away	زَحَلَقَ
„ trouble	مَلَبَلَ	„ run quickly	هَرَزَلَ
„ wag the tail	بَضَّبَصَ	„ sketch, plan	هَنَّدَسَ
„ confound	بَلَبَلَ	„ suggest evil (devil)	وَسَّوَسَ
„ interpret	تَرَجَّمَ	„ wail	وَلَوْلَ

DERIVED FORMS OF THE QUADRILITERAL.

I. تَفَعَّلَلَ

To roll along	تَدَخَّرَجَ	To profess atheism	تَرَنَّدَقَ
„ be shaken	تَزَعَزَعَ	„ put on trousers	تَسَرَّوَلَ

To be rude, proud	تَعَجَّرَفَ	To shine	تَلَلَّ
„ „ conceited	تَفَطَّرَسَ	„ follow a sect	تَمَذَّهَبَ
„ philosophize	تَفَلَّسَفَ	„ be restless in bed	تَمَلَّمَلَّ
„ go backwards	تَقَهَّقَرَ		

II. اَفْعَلَّلَ

To gather of press (crowds)	اِحْرَنْجَمَ	To have a protube- rant chest and a	
„ lie on the back	اِسْلَنْقَى	hollow back	اِقْعَسَسَ

III. اَفْعَلَّلَ

To be intensely dark	اِدْلَهَمَّ	To vanish away	اِضْبَحَلَّ
„ stretch the neck to look	اِشْرَابَّ	„ enjoy tranquillity	اِطْمَانَ
„ be high, proud	اِشْمَخَّرَ	„ shudder with honor	اِقْشَعَرَ
		„ be intensely dark	اِكْفَهَّرَ

SUPPLEMENTS OF THE QUADRILITERAL.

To practise farriery	بَيَّطَرَ	To stuff the crop	حَوْصَلَّ
„ clothe one with a gown	جَلَّبَبَ	„ hurl into an abyss	دَهَوَّرَ
„ throw violently down	جَنْدَلَّ	„ put a cap on any one	قَلَّنَسَ

THE MORE COMMON FORMS OF TRILITERAL
MASDARS.

أَشْهُرُ أَوْزَانِ مَصَادِرِ التَّلَاتِي

18	فَعِيلَةٌ	1	فَعَلَ
19	فُعَالَةٌ	2	فُعِلَ
20	فَاعِلَةٌ	3	فَاعِلَ
21	فَعَلَةٌ	4	فَعَلَ
22	فُغَلَةٌ	5	فُغِلَ
23	فِغَلَةٌ	6	فِغِلَ
24	فَعَلَةٌ	7	فَعَلَ
25	فُعَلَى	8	فُعِلَ
26	فَعَلَى	9	فُعُولَ
27	فِعَلَى	10	فُعُولَةٌ
28	فُعَلَانِ	11	فِعَالَةٌ
29	فِعَلَانِ	12	فِعَالَةٌ
30	فَعَلَانِ	13	فِعَالِيَّةٌ
31	تَفَعَّلَ	14	فُعَالٌ
32	فَعُولَةٌ	15	فَعَالٌ
33	مَفْعُولٌ	16	فَعَالٌ
		17	فَعِيلٌ

NOUNS OF ACTION OF TRILITERAL VERBS.

المصادر الثلاثية

1. فَعَل

Pushing, paying	دَفَع	Bringing	جَلَب
Sprinkling	رَس	Gathering	جَمَعَ
Thunder	رَعَد	Ignorance	جَهْل
Lifting	رَفَعَ	Digging	حَفَرَ
Throwing	رَمَى	Truth	حَقٌّ
Captivity	سَبَى	Loosing	حَلَّ
Closing up	سَدَّ	Praising	حَمَدَ
Shedding	سَفَكَ	Carrying	حَمَلَ
Enacting, sharpening	سَنَ	Writing	حَطَّ
Longing	شَوَّقَ	Study	دَرَسَ
Roasting	شَيَّ	Knocking	طَرَقَ
Pardon	صَفَحَ	Taste	طَعَمَ
Beating	صَرَبَ	Folding	طَيَّ
Light	ضَوَّءَ	Fickleness	طَلَّشَ
Grinding	طَلَّحَنَ	Justice	عَدَلَ
Eating	أَكَلَ	Living	عَيْشَ
Safety	أَمَّنَ	Washing	غَسَلَ
Cold	بَرَدَ	Grief	غَمَّ
Lightning	بَرَقَ	Opening	فَتَحَ
Selling	بَيَعَ	Supposing, appointing	فَرَضَ

Superiority	فَضْلٌ	Death	مَوْتٌ
Understanding	فَهْمٌ	Springing	نَبَعَ
Killing	قَتَلَ	Vow	نَذَرَ
Purpose	قَصْدٌ	Assisting	نَصَرَ
Knocking	قَرَعَ	Sprinkling	نَضَحَ
Speech	قَوْلٌ	Arranging, versifying	نَظَّمَ
Cauterizing	كَيٌّ	Profiting	نَفَعَ
Glance	لَحْظٌ	Lamentation	نَوَّحَ
Blame	لَوْمٌ	Sleep	نَوَّمَ
Praising	مَدَحَ	Obtaining	نَيْلٌ
Stretching	مَدَّ	Pulling down	هَدَمَ
Forbidding	مَنَعَ	Promise	وَعَدَ

فُعْلٌ 2

Abasement, weakness	ذُلٌّ	Harm	ضَرَّ
Ampleness	رُحْبٌ	Weakness	ضَعْفٌ
Cheapness	رُخْصٌ	Oppression	ظَلَمٌ
Abstemiousness	زُهْدٌ	Excuse	عُدْرٌ
Scoffing	سُخْرٌ	Politeness, sociability	أَنْسٌ
Disease	سُقْمٌ	Stinginess	بُطْلٌ
Drunkenness	سُكْرٌ	Healing	بُرٌّ
Drinking	شُرْبٌ	Slowness	بُطْءٌ
Occupation	شُغْلٌ	Vanity, falsehood	بُطْلٌ
Thankfulness	شُكْرٌ	Distance	بُعْدٌ
Doing	صُنْعٌ	Cowardice	جُبْنٌ

Generosity	جُود	Holiness	قُدُس
Sorrow	حُزْن	Proximity	قُرْب
Beauty	حُسْن	Abhorrence	كُرْه
Judgment	حُكْم	Meanness	لُوم
Dream	حُلْم	Kindness, gentleness	لُطْف
Wickedness	حُبْث	Abiding	مُكْت
Experience	خُبْر	Reigning	مُلْك
Storing up	ذُخْر	Advice	نُصْح
Nakedness	عُرْي	Speaking	نُطْق
Difficulty	عُسْر	Dryness	يُبْس
Washing	غُسْل	Easiness	يُسْر
Spoiling	غُنْم	Luck	يُنْم
Vileness, ugliness	قُبْح		

3. فِعْل

Crime	إِثْم	Envy	حِقْد
Permission	إِذْن	Forbearance	حِلْم
Inheritance	إِرْث	Confusion	حِزْي
Righteousness	بِر	Fertility	حِصْب
Diligence, endeavour	جِد	Remembrance	ذِكْر
Skilfulness	حِدْق	Compassion	رِفْق
Covetousness	حِرْص	Being well watered	رِي
Depriving	حِرْم	Sorcery, seduction	سِحْر
Feeling	حِس	Drinking	شِرْب
Preservation	حِفْظ	Feeling, versifying	شِعْر

Truthfulness	صِدْق	Knowledge	عِلْم
Distress	صِيْق	Adultery	فِسْق
Goodness	طِيْب	Saying	قِيْل
Passionate love	عِشْق		

4. فَعْل

Confusion, shame	خَجَل	Hoarseness	بَحَم
Dumbness	خَرَس	Leaving	بَرَح
Erring	خَطَا	Leprosy	بَرَص
Diligence	دَاب	Seeing	بَصَر
Slipping	زَلَق	Fatigue	تَعَب
Slipping	زَلَل	Fear, grief	جَزَع
Disgust	سَام	Patience	جَلَد
Anger	سَخَط	Caution	حَدَر
Generosity	سَخَا	Sorrow	حَزَن
Hisease	سَقَم	Envy	حَسَد
Dwelling	سَكَن	Swearing	حَلَف
Wakefulness, watching	سَهَر	Annoyance	فَصَجَر
Grief	شَجَن	Request, seeking	طَلَب
Dignity	شَرَف	Coveting	طَمَع
Deafness	صَمَم	Victory	ظَفَر
Politeness	أَدَب	Sweating	عَرَق
Regret	أَسَف	Thirst	عَطَش
Corruption	أَسَن	Publicity	عَلَن
Hope	أَمَل	Doing	عَمَل

Blindness	عَمَى	Repentance	نَدِمَ
Anger	غَضِبَ	Moisture	نَدَى
Toy	فَرَحَ	Relationship	نَسَبَ
Failure	فَشَلَ	Looking	نَظَرَ
Despair	قَنَطَ	Fleeing	هَرَبَ
Generosity	كَرَمَ	Affection	هَوَى
Zaziness	كَسَلَ	Fear	وَجَلَ
Hydrophobia	كَلَبَ	Swelling	وَزَمَ
Affection	كَلَفَ	Dirtiness	وَسَخَ
Sickness	مَرَضَ	Deep sleep	وَسَنَ
Wearifeness	مَلَلَ		

5. فُعِلَ

Difficulty	عُسِرَ	Mercy	رُحِمَ
Holiness	قُدِّسَ	Drunkenness	سُكِرَ
Meanness	لُؤِمَ	Excuse	عُدِرَ
Dreaming	حُلِمَ		

6. فُعِلَ

Consent	رُضِيَ	Request	بُعِيَ
Night-journey	سُرِيَ	Weeping	بُكِيَ
Guidance	هُدِيَ	Piety	تُقِيَ

7. فُعِلَ

Laughing	فَسِحِكَ	Playing	لَعِبَ
Lying	كَذِبَ	Depriving	حَرِمَ

Swearing	حَلَفَ	Stealing	سَرَقَ
Choking	خَنِقَ		

8. فَعَلٌ

Heaviness	ثَقُلَ	Satisfaction	شَبِعَ
Satisfaction	رَضِيَ	Littleness	صَغُرَ
Annihilation	بَلِيَ	Greatness	عَظُمَ
Thickness	ثَكَّنَ	Richness	غَنِيَ
Plumpness	سَمِنَ	Shortness	قَصَرَ

9. فَعُولٌ

Compassion	حُنُوٌ	Setting (sun, moon, or star)	أَفُولٌ
Going forth	خُرُوجٌ	Going forth	بُرُوزٌ
Subjection, obedience	خُضُوعٌ	Rising (sun)	بُزُوعٌ
Palpitation	خُفُقٌ	Reaching, maturity	بُلُوغٌ
Obscureness	خُهُولٌ	Firmness	ثُبُوتٌ
Entering	دُخُولٌ	Sitting	جُلُوسٌ
Approaching	دُنُوٌ	Solidity	جُنُودٌ
Returning	رُجُوعٌ	Madness	جُنُونٌ
Settling	رُسُوبٌ	Happening	حُدُوثٌ
Firmness	رُسُوخٌ	Arriving	حُصُولٌ
Worship, prostration	سُجُودٌ	Presence	حُضُورٌ
Gladness	سُرُورٌ	Staying, falling	حُلُولٌ
Falling	سُقُوطٌ		

Heat	حُمُو	Failing	قُصُور
Silence	سُكُوت	Sitting	قُعُود
Quietness	سُكُون	Hiding	كُئُوم
Consolation	سُلُو	Descending	نُزُول
Exaltation	سُمُو	Growing, beginning	نُشُوء
Rising (sun)	شُرُوق	Execution	نُفُود
Proceeding	صُدُور	Aversion	نُفُور
Ascending	صُعُود	Growth	نُمُو
Rising	طُلُوع	Blowing (wind)	هُبُوب
Crossing	عُبُور	Falling	هَبُوط
Height	عُلُو	Attacking	هَاجُوم
Setting (sun)	غُرُوب	Arriving	وُضُول
Deception	غُرُور	Coming	وُزُود
Languor, lukewarmness	فُتُور	Standing	وُقُوف
Coming	قُدُوم		

10. فُعُولَةٌ

Manhood	كُهُولَةٌ	Harshness	حُشُونَةٌ
Manliness	مُرُوءَةٌ	Tenderness	رُخُوصَةٌ
Saltiness	مُلُوحَةٌ	Dampness	رُطُوبَةٌ
Softness	نُعُومَةٌ	Heat	سَاخُونَةٌ
Ruggedness	رُعُورَةٌ	Ease	سُهُولَةٌ
Ruggedness	رُعُورَةٌ	Difficulty	صُعُوبَةٌ
Dryness	يُبُوسَةٌ	Sweetness	عُذُوبَةٌ
Sourness	حُمُوضَةٌ		

11. فَعَالَةٌ

Protection	حِمَايَةٌ	Swimming	سِبَاخَةٌ
Avoidance	حِيَادَةٌ	Office of a butler	سِقَايَةٌ
Weaving	حِيَاكَةٌ	Authority	سَيَادَةٌ
Lectureship	خِطَابَةٌ	Ruling, politics	سَيَاسَةٌ
Caliphate	خِلَافَةٌ	Travelling	سَيَاحَةٌ
Treachery	حِيَانَةٌ	Accusation	شِكَايَةٌ
Sewing	خِيَاطَةٌ	Dyeing	صِبَاغَةٌ
Knowledge	دِرَايَةٌ	Exchanging (money)	صِرَافَةٌ
Prefecture	إِمَارَةٌ	Handcraft	صِنَاعَةٌ
Building	بِنَايَةٌ	Goldsmith's art	صِيَاغَةٌ
Merchandise	تِجَارَةٌ	Hospitality	ضِيَاغَةٌ
Reciting	قِلَاوَةٌ	Worship	عِبَادَةٌ
Tribute	جِبَايَةٌ	Porterage	عِتَالَةٌ
Surgery	جِرَاحَةٌ	Divination	عِرَافَةٌ
Ploughing	حِرَافَةٌ	Perfumery (trade)	عِطَارَةٌ
Guarding	حِرَاسَةٌ	Building	عِمَارَةٌ
Relating	حِكَايَةٌ	Providence, care	عِنَايَةٌ
Indication, auctioneer- ing	دِلَالَةٌ	Husbandry	فِلَاحَةٌ
Headship	رِئَاسَةٌ	Reading	قِرَاءَةٌ
Suckling	رِضَاعَةٌ	Leading	قِيَادَةٌ
Agriculture	زِرَاعَةٌ	Writing	كِتَابَةٌ
		Sufficiency	كِفَايَةٌ

Navigation	مِلاحة	Protection	وَقَايَة
Carpentry	نِجَارَة	Stewardship	وِكَايَة
Guidance	هِدَايَة	Birth	وِلَادَة
Inheritance	وِرَاثَة	Governorship	وِلَايَة
Office of Vizier	وِرَازَة		

12. فَعَالَة

Safety	سَلَامَة	Honour, regard	كِرَامَة
Kindness	سَبَاحَة	Foulmouthedness	بِدَاءَة
Courage	شَجَاعَة	Skilfulness	بِرَاعَة
Misery	شَقَاوَة	Simplicity	بَسَاطَة
Testimony	شَهَادَة	Kindness, cheerfulness	بَشَاشَة
Chivalry	شَهَامَة	Stupidity	بِلَادَة
Friendliness	صَدَاقَة	Cowardice	جَبَانَة
Hardness	صَلَابَة	Boldness	جَسَارَة
Cheerfulness	طَلَقَة	Ignorance	جَهَالَة
Purity	طَهَارَة	Youthfulness	حَدَاثَة
Comeliness	ظَرَفَة	Skilfulness	حَدَاقَة
Freshness	غَضَافَة	Sweetness	حَلَاوَة
Stupidity	غَبَاوَة	Foolishness	حِمَاقَة
Vileness	قَبَاحَة	Depravity	حَبَاثَة
Holiness	قَدَاسَة	Losing	خَسَارَة
Contentedness	قَنَاعَة	Delicacy	دَمَائِقَة
Denseness	كَثَافَة	Meaness, badness	رَدَاءَة

Happiness	سَعَادَة	Vigilance	نَبَاهَة
Easiness of style	سَلَا سَة	Repentance	نَدَامَة
Stability	مَتَانَة	Cleanliness	نَظَافَة
Inaccessibility	مَنَاعَة	Innocency	نَقَاوَة
Skilfulness	مَهَارَة	Meekness	وَدَاعَة

13. فَعَالِيَة

Depravity	خَبَائِثِيَة	Openly	عَلَانِيَة
Suitability	صَلَابِيَة	Skilfulness	فَرَاهِيَة
Obedience	طَوَاعِيَة	Hating	كِرَاهِيَة
Madness	عَتَاهِيَة	Purity	فَرَاهِيَة

14. فُعَال

Weeping	بُكَاء	Cough	سُعَال
Singing to camels	خُدَاء	Consumption	سُلَال
Bellowing	خُوَار	Headache	صُدَاع
Choking, diphtheria	خُنَاق	Crying	صُرَاع
Praying	دُعَاء	Shouting	صِيَا ح
Giddiness	دُوَار	Sneezing	عُطَاس
Bleeding (nose)	رُعَاق	Hiccough, gasp	فُوَاق
Grumbling (camel)	رُغَاء	Great thirst	لُهَات
Hard breathing	رُحَار	Mewing	مُوَاء
Chatter (monkey)	رُجَاق	Crowing	نُعَاب
Rheum	رُكَّام	Drowsiness	نُعَاس
Asking	سُؤَال	Lamentation	نُؤَاح

Shouting	هُتَافٌ	Passionate love	هُيَامٌ
Leanness	هُزَالٌ		

15. فَعَالٌ

Affliction	بَلَاءٌ	Generosity	سَخَاءٌ
Splendour	بَهَاءٌ	Permission	سَبَاحٌ
Firmness	ثَبَاتٌ	Misery	شَقَاءٌ
Reward	جَزَاءٌ	Straying	ضَلَالٌ
Dryness	جَفَاءٌ	Costliness	غَلَاءٌ
Clearness, emigration	جَلَاءٌ	Corruption	فَسَادٌ
Beauty	جَمَالٌ	Vanishing	فَنَاءٌ
Crossing, license	جَوَازٌ	Lapse, missing	فَوَاتٌ
Reaping	حَصَادٌ	Fatigue	كَلَالٌ
Destruction	حَرَابٌ	Perfection	كَمَالٌ
Losing	خَسَارٌ	Success	نَتَاجٌ
Secrecy	خَفَاءٌ	Growing	نَمَاءٌ
Abundance	رَخَاءٌ	Fulfilment of promise	رَفَاءٌ

16. فَعَالٌ

Shouting	صِيَابٌ	Returning	إِيَابٌ
Light, brightness	ضِيَاءٌ	Veiling	حِجَابٌ
Fleeing	فِرَارٌ	Counting	حِسَابٌ
Rising, standing	قِيَامٌ	Conclusion, end	خِتَامٌ
Meeting, finding	لِقَاءٌ	Nursing	رِضَاعٌ
Shunning	نِفَارٌ	Healing	شِفَاءٌ
Refusing	إِبَاءٌ	Fasting	صِيَامٌ

17. فَعِيلٌ

Sighing	زَفِيرٌ	Departure	رَحِيلٌ
Snoring	شَخِيرٌ	Roaring	رَوَّارٌ
Braying, hiccough	شَهِيْقٌ	Neighing	صَهِيْلٌ
Trumpeting (elephant)	صَوْتِيٌّ	Buzzing	طَلِيْنٌ
Shouting	صَرِيْحٌ	Clamour, roaring (sea)	عَجِيْحٌ
Gnashing	صَرِيْرٌ	Hissing	فَحِيْحٌ
Creaking	صَرِيْفٌ	Praising	مَدِيْحٌ
Whistling	صَفِيْرٌ	Barking	نَبِيْحٌ
Noise of boiling water	أَرْبِزٌ	Lamentation	نَكِيْبٌ
Groaning	أَنِينٌ	Crowing	نَعِيْبٌ
Rustling (leaves)	حَفِيْفٌ	Braying	نَهِيْقٌ
Longing	حَنِينٌ	Roaring	هَدِيْرٌ
Murmur (water)	خَرِيْرٌ	Sound of thunder	هَزِيْمٌ
Creeping	دَبِيْبٌ		

18. فَعِيْلَةٌ

Estrangement	قَطِيْعَةٌ	Scorn, zeal	حَمِيَّةٌ
Advice	نَصِيْحَةٌ	Youthfulness	شَبِيْبَةٌ
Supplication	رَسِيْلَةٌ	Accusation	شَكِيَّةٌ
Slander	رَقِيْعَةٌ	Determination	عَزِيْمَةٌ
Prevention	حَرِيْمَةٌ	Plunder	عَنِيْمَةٌ
Rancour	حَقِيْدَةٌ	Judgment	قَضِيَّةٌ

19. فَعَالَةٌ

Request	بُعَايَةٌ	Suddenness	فُجَاءَةٌ
Completion	تُبَامَةٌ	Tarrying	لُبَايَةٌ

20. فَاعِلَةٌ

Disclosing	كَاشِفَةٌ	Order	أَمْرَةٌ
Development	نَاشِئَةٌ	Result	عَاقِبَةٌ
Preserving, watch	وَاقِيَةٌ	Siesta	فَائِلَةٌ

21. فُعْلَةٌ

Scoffing	سُكِّدْرَةٌ	Experience	خُبْرَةٌ
Haste	سُرْعَةٌ	Preaching	خُطْبَةٌ
Brownish	سُمْرَةٌ	Pace	خُطْوَةٌ
Auburn	شُقْرَةٌ	Sight	زُورِيَةٌ
Companionship	صُحْبَةٌ	Roughness	غُلْظَةٌ
Nakedness	عُرْيَةٌ	Power	قُدْرَةٌ
Emigration	غُرْبَةٌ	Freshness, consolation	قُرَّةٌ
Desire, request	بُغْيَةٌ	Power	قُوَّةٌ
Boldness	جُرْأَةٌ	Grammatical error	هَبْكِنَةٌ
Excellence	جُودَةٌ		

22. فَعْلَةٌ

Power	سَطْوَةٌ	Return	عَوْدَةٌ
Distress, ill-luck	شَقْوَةٌ	Inattention	غَفْلَةٌ
Attack	صَوْلَةٌ	Absence	غَيْبَةٌ

Zeal, jealousy	غَيْرَة	Failure	خَيْبَة
Surprise	فَجَاءَة	Invitation	دَعْوَة
Hardness	قَسْوَة	Mercy	رَأْفَة
Sorrow	كَأَبَة	Mercy	رَحْمَة
Abundance	كَثْرَة	Desire	رَغْبَة
Curse	لَعْنَة	Dread	رَهْبَة
Rheum	نَزْلَة	Slipping	زَلَّة
Ampleness	بَسْطَة	Growth	نَشَاة
Repentance	تَوْبَة	Revenge	نَقْمَة
Perplexity	حَيْرَة	Slip, error	هَفْوَة
Fear	خَشْيَة	Fear	هَيْبَة
Solitude	خَلْوَة	Old age	شَيْبَة

23. فَعْلَة

Chastity	عِفَّة	Relationship	نِسْبَة
Living	عَيْشَة	Luxuriousness	نَعْمَة
Might	غُرَّة	Intention	نِيَّة
Desire, blessedness	غِبْطَة	Supremacy, empire	إِمْرَة
Seduction	فِتْنَة	Impetuosity	حِدَّة
Prudence	فِطْنَة	Wisdom	حِكْمَة
Littleness, rarity	قِلَّة	Experience	خِبْرَة
Writing	كِتْبَة	Service	خِدْمَة
Praising	مَدْحَة	Betrothal	خِطْبَة
Bounty, (reproachful for favours)	مَنَّة	Lightness	خِفَّة
		Fear	خَيْفَة

Dignity	رَفَعَةٌ	Partnership, commu-	
Tenderness, thinness	رِقَّةٌ	nion	شَرِكَةٌ
Conduct	سِيرَةٌ	Soundness	صِحَّةٌ

24. فَعَلَةٌ

Pity	شَفَقَةٌ	Security	أَمْنَةٌ
Haste	عَجَلَةٌ	Affability	أَنَسَةٌ
Victory	غَلَبَةٌ	Contempt	أَفْفَةٌ
Possessing, talent	مَلَكَتْهُ	Motion	حَرَكَةٌ
Deliverance	نَجَاةٌ	Life	حَيَاةٌ

25. فُعْلَى

Nearness	زُلْفَى	Misfortune	بُؤْسٌ
Dwelling	سُكْنَى	Vision	رُؤْيَا
Blessedness	طُوبَى	Returning	رُجْعَى
Encounter	لُقْيَا	Desire	رُغْبَى

26. فُعْلَى

Claim	دَعْوَى	Confidential whisper	نَجْوَى
Accusation	شَكْرَى		

27. فُعْلَى

Remembrance	ذِكْرَى		
-------------	---------	--	--

28. فُعْلَان

Reproof	عُتِبَانَ	Reckoning	حُسْبَانَ
Forgiveness	غُفْرَانَ	Sweetness	حُلْوَانَ
Losing	فُقْدَانَ	Carrying	حُمْلَانَ
Reading	قُرْآنَ	Losing	خُسْرَانَ
Approaching	قُرْبَانَ	Over-weighing	رُجْحَانَ
Denying, ingratitude	كُفْرَانَ	Consolation	سُلْوَانَ
Decrease	نُقْصَانَ	Thankfulness	شُكْرَانَ
Vanity	بُطْلَانَ	Overflowing, injustice	طُعْيَانَ
Slander	بُهْتَانَ		

29. فِعْلَانِ

Forgetting	نِسْيَانَ	Knowing	عِرْفَانَ
Forsaking	هِجْرَانَ	Losing	فِقْدَانَ
Finding	وَجْدَانَ	Returning, arriving	قِدْمَانَ
Coming	إِتْيَانَ	Concealing	كِتْمَانَ
Depriving, forbidding	حِرْمَانَ		

30. فَعْلَانِ

Flowing	سَيْلَانَ	Shining	لَمَعَانَ
Rambling, flowing	طَوْفَانَ	Inclination	مَيْلَانَ
Flying	طَيْرَانَ	Raving	هَدْيَانَ
Boiling	غَلْيَانَ	Agitation, commo-	
Boiling	فَوْزَانَ	tion	هَيْبَانَ
Overflowing	فَيْضَانَ	Longing	تَوَقَّانَ

Wandering	تَيَّهَانَ	Palpitation	خَفَقَانَ
Agitation	تَوَّرَانَ	Revolving	دَوَّرَانَ
Running	جَرَّيَانَ	Trembling	رَجَفَانَ
Wandering	جَوَّلَانَ	Passing away	زَوَّلَانَ
Avoidance	حَيَّدَانَ		

31. تَفْعَالٌ

Croaking	تَنَعَابٌ	Sprinkling	تَرَشَّاشٌ
Paying ready money	تَنَقَّادٌ	Sipping, sucking	تَرَشَّافٌ
Sleep	تَهَجَّاعٌ	Asking	تَسَّالٌ
Remembrance	تَذَكَارٌ	Pouring	تَسْكَابٌ
Departing	تَرَحَّالٌ		

32. فَعْلُوَّةٌ

Senility	شَيْخُوَّةٌ	Perishableness	بَيْدُوَّةٌ
Spreading news	شَيْفِرُوَّةٌ	Separation, remote-	
Becoming	صَيْرُوَّةٌ	ness	بَيْنُوَّةٌ
Siesta	قَيْلُوَّةٌ	Avoidance	حَيْدُوَّةٌ
Existence	كَيْنُوَّةٌ	Continuation	دَيْمُوَّةٌ
Inclining	مَيْلُوَّةٌ	Deviation	زَيْغُوَّةٌ
		Lordship	سَيْدُوَّةٌ

33. مَفْعُولٌ

Difficult	مَعْسُورٌ	Subject, placing	مَوْضُوعٌ
Understanding	مَعْقُولٌ	Promise	مَوْعُودٌ
Temptation	مَفْتُونٌ	Easiness	مَيْسُورٌ

Patience	مَجْلُودٌ	Oath	مَحْلُوفٌ
Exertion	مَجْهُودٌ	Return	مَرْجُوعٌ
Produce	مَحْضُولٌ	Restoring	مَرْدُودٌ

ADJECTIVES RESEMBLING THE AGENT.

1. فَعْلٌ

Easy	سَهْلٌ	Deficient, low (price)	بَخْسٌ
Clever, energetic	شَهْمٌ	Righteous	بَرٌّ
Aged	شَيْخٌ	Smiling	بَشٌّ
Difficult	صَعْبٌ	Firm, steady	ثَبَّتٌ
Hard	صَلْدٌ	Chaste (language)	جَدَلٌ
Thick, bulky	صَخْمٌ	Alive	حَيٌّ
Straight, narrow	صَنَكٌ	Deceiver	خَبٌّ
Sweet	عَذْبٌ	Meek	دَمَتْ
Tender, sappy	غَضٌ	Ragged	رَثٌّ
Rough	فَظٌّ	Broad	رَحْبٌ
Thick (beard)	كَثٌّ	Soft, flexible	رَخِصٌ
Pure	مَخْضٌ	Ignoble	رَذَلٌ
Soft, brittle	هَشٌّ	Tender	رَطْبٌ
Rugged	وَعْرٌ	Luxurious	رَعْدٌ
		Compliant	سَنَحٌ

2. فِعْلٌ

Thin	دِقٌّ	Rude	جِلْفٌ
Filthy	رَجْسٌ	Fertile	خِصْبٌ

Saltish	مِلْحٌ	Pure	صِرْفٌ
		Inexperienced	غَرٌ

3. فَعْلٌ

Hard	ضَلْبٌ	Pure, free	حُرٌّ
Heedless	غُفْلٌ	Sweet	حُلُوٌّ
Bitter	مُرٌّ	Mean	دُونٌ
Sour	مُرٌّ	Hot	سُخْنٌ

4. فَعَلٌ

Handsome	حَسَنٌ	Hero	بَطْلٌ
Filthy	نَجَسٌ	Youth	حَدَثٌ

5. فَعِلٌ

Easy, (style)	سَلِسٌ	Fragrant	أَرِيحٌ
Unsociable	شَرِسٌ	Liar	أَفِكٌ
Greedy	شَرِهٌ	Ugly	بَشِيعٌ
Harsh tempered	شَكِسٌ	Glutton	بَطْنٌ
Merry	طَرِبٌ	Joyful	بَهِيحٌ
Thirsty	طَبِيٌّ	Fatigued	تَعِبٌ
Difficult	عَسِيرٌ	Unfortunate	قَعِسٌ
Fragrant	عَطِرٌ	Tasteless	تَفِهٌ
Turbid	عَكِرٌ	Rough	حَشِنٌ
Blind	عَمِيٌّ	Dangerous	خَطِرٌ
Drowned	غَرِقٌ	Defiled	دَنَسٌ

Eloquent	لَسِين	Angry	غَضِبَ
Gluttonous	لَهْم	Joyous	فَرِحَ
Rotten (eggs)	مَذِير	Timid	فَرِقَ
Filthy	نَجِسَ	Filthy	قَدِرَ
Glutton	نَهْمَ	Fragile	قَصِمَ
Timorous	وَجِلَ	Troubled	قَلِقَ
Pious	وَرَعَ	Despairing	قَنِطَ
Dirty	وَسِخَ	Broken-hearted	كَتِبَ
Brazenfaced	وَقِحَ	Grieved	كَيْدَ
		Viscous	لَزِجَ

6. أفعال

Dumb	أَخْرَسَ	Bobtailed	أَبْتَرَ
Green	أَخْضَرَ	Hoarse	أَبَحَّ
Having one eye blue, the other black	أَخْيَفَ	Piebald	أَبْرَشَ
Having eyes black and wide apart	أَدْعَجَ	Leper	أَبْرَصَ
Blackish	أَدَكَنَ	Spotted	أَبْقَعَ
Having a long chin	أَذَقَنَ	White	أَبْيَضَ
Spotted	أَرْقَطَ	Bare (face, field)	أَجْرَدَ
Having bad eyes	أَرْمَدَ	Shapely contour (neck)	أَجِيدَ
Blue	أَزْرَقَ	Humpbacked	أَحْدَبَ
Brownish, tawny	أَسْمَرَ	Short-sighted	أَخْسَرَ
Black	أَسْوَدَ	Red	أَخْمَرَ
		Fool	أَخْتَقَ
		Squint-eyed	أَخْوَلَ

Crooked	أَعْوَجَ	Having the tip of the	
One-eyed	أَعْوَرَ	nose cut off	أَشْرَمَ
Dust-coloured	أَغْبَرَ	Hairy	أَشْعَرَ
Blaze-faced	أَغْرَ	Auburn	أَشْقَرَ
Flat-nosed	أَفْطَسَ	Stiff-handed	أَشَدَّ
Having the teeth apart	أَفْلَجَ	Hoary	أَشْبَطَ
Under lip chapped	أَفْلَحَ	Gray	أَشْهَبَ
Bald-headed	أَفْرَعَ	Red-tinged, (pupil)	أَشْهَلَّ
Hook-nosed	أَفْنَى	Yellow	أَصْفَرَ
Having brown eyelids	أَكْحَلَ	Partially bald	أَصْدَعَ
Born blind	أَكْبَهَ	Deaf	أَصَمَّ
Long-bearded	أَلْحَى	Deaf	أَطْرَشَ
Red-lipped	أَلْعَسَ	Lame	أَعْرَجَ
Blue-eyed, gray-eyed	أَمْلَحَ	Left-handed	أَعْسَرَ
Eyes wide apart	أَنْجَلَ	Night-blind	أَعْشَى
Clipped (bird's tail)	أَهْلَبَ	Tongue-tied	أَعْقَدَ
Hasty	أَهْوَجَ	Hare-lipped	أَعْلَمَ
Slender	أَهْيَفَ	Blar-eyed	أَعْمَشَ
Right-handed	أَيْمَنَ	Blind	أَعْمَى
		Long-necked	أَعْنَقَى

7. فَيَعِلُ

Evil	سَيِّءٌ	Clear	بَيِّنٌ
Narrow	ضَيِّقٌ	Good	جَيِّدٌ
Pleasant	طَيِّبٌ	Religious	دَيِّنٌ

Dying	مَيِّتٌ	Intelligent	كَيْسٌ
		Soft	لَيِّنٌ

8. فَعِيلٌ

Merciful	رَحِيمٌ	Polite, learned	أَدِيبٌ
Evil, bad	زَدِيٌّ	Faithful	أَمِينٌ
Companion	رَفِيقٌ	Stingy	بَخِيلٌ
Weak-minded	سَخِيفٌ	Slow	بَطِيءٌ
Swift	سَرِيعٌ	Far	بَعِيدٌ
Happy	سَعِيدٌ	Stupid	بَلِيدٌ
Foolish	سَفِيهٌ	Thick	ثَقِيلٌ
Safe	سَلِيمٌ	New	جَدِيدٌ
Stout	سَعِيدٌ	Worthy	جَدِيرٌ
Strong	شَدِيدٌ	Important, large	جَسِيمٌ
Noble	شَرِيفٌ	Great, glorious	جَلِيلٌ
Ugly	شَنِيعٌ	Sharp	حَدِيدٌ
Sound	صَحِيحٌ	Greedy	حَرِيصٌ
Small	صَغِيرٌ	Sorrowful	حَزِينٌ
Weak	ضَعِيفٌ	Wise	حَكِيمٌ
Long	طَوِيلٌ	Vile	حَسِيسٌ
Beautiful	ظَرِيفٌ	Light, agile	خَفِيفٌ
Old	عَتِيقٌ	Fine, thin	دَقِيقٌ
Wonderful	عَجِيبٌ	Low	دَنِيءٌ

Much, many	كَثِير	Broad	عَرِيض
Dense	كَثِيف	Dear, rare	عَرِيْز
Generous	كَرِيم	Of high rank	عَلِيّ
Base	لَثِيم	Deep	عَبِيْق
Kind	لَطِيْف	Common, universal	عَمِيْم
Glorious	مَعْجِيْد	Strange	غَرِيْب
Good, handsome	مَلِيْح	Thick, coarse	غَلِيْظ
Lean	نَحِيْف	Rich	غَنِيّ
Clean	نَظِيْف	Poor	فَقِيْر
Valuable	نَفِيْس	Old	قَدِيْم
Honourable	وَجِيْه	Near	قَرِيْب
Humble	وَضِيْع	Short	قَصِيْر
Orphan	يَتِيْم	Strong	قَوِيّ
		Great	كَبِيْر

9. فَاعِل

Firm	ثَابِت	Putrid, (water)	أَجِن
Ignorant	جَاهِل	Stagnant	أَسِيْن
Clever	حَادِيْ	Cold	بَارِد
Hot	حَار	Righteous	بَار
Resolute	حَازِم	Brave	بَاسِل
Intensely black	حَالِك	Vain	بَاطِل
Sour	حَامِص	Oppressing	بَاطِغ

Barren	عَايِر	Special	خَاصّ
Wise	عَاوِل	Traitor	خَائِن
Learned	عَالِم	Sinner	خَاطِي
High	عَال	Domesticated(animals)	دَاوِجِن
General, common	عَامّ	Continuous	دَائِم
Lukewarm	فَايِر	Simpleton	سَادِج
Wicked	فَاچِر	Thief	سَارِق
Hard	قَاس	Sound	سَالِم
Cutting (sword)	قَاطِع	High	سَام
Liar	كَادِب	Sharp sword	صَارِم
Infidel	كَافِر	Clear	صَاف
Perfect	كَامِل	Carnivorous	ضَار
Skilful	مَاهِر	Pure	طَاهِر
Imperfect	نَاقِص	Just	عَادِل
Complete	وَاف	Naked	عَار

10. نَعْلَان

Satisfied, (food)	شَبَعَان	Hungry	جَرَعَان
Lewd	شَهْوَان	Grieved	حَزْنَان
Thirsty	صَدْيَان	Perplexed	حَيْرَان
Thirsty	طَبَّان	Ashamed	خَجَلَان
Perspiring	عَرَقَان	Abashed	خَرَبَان
Thirsty	عَطْشَان	Watered	رَبَّان
Impotent	عَيَّان	Drunken	سَكْدَان

Repentant	نَدَمَانَ	Choked	غَضَانَ
Forgetful	نَسِيَانَ	Angry	غَضِبَانَ
Giddy (from wine)	نَشْوَانَ	Heedless	غَفْلَانَ
Sleepy	نَعْسَانَ	Joyous	فَرِحَانَ
Fearful	هَيْبَانَ	Cripple	كَسَسَكَانَ
Slumbering	وَسْنَانَ	Grieved	لَهْفَانَ
Dejected	وَلَهَانَ	Full	مَلَانَ

11. فَعَالٌ

Chaste (woman)	حَصَانَ	Coward	جَبَانَ
Incurable	عَيَاءَ	Liberal	جَوَادَ

12. فُعَالٌ

Incurable	عُضَالَ	Brackish	أَجَاجَ
Incurable	عُقَامَ	Fatal	دُعَافَ and زُعَافَ
Sweet (water)	فُرَاتَ	Clear (water)	زُلَالَ
Magnanimous	هُمَامَ	Brave	شُجَاعَ
		Bulky	صُخَامَ

MEASURES OF THE NOUNS OF EXCESS.

9 مَفْعِيلٌ	1 فَعَّالٌ
10 فَاعِلَةٌ	2 فَعَّالَةٌ
11 فَعْرَلَةٌ	3 فَعْيِيلٌ
12 فُعْلٌ	4 فَعُولٌ
13 فُعَلٌ	5 فَعِيْلٌ
14 فُعُولٌ	6 فَاعُولٌ
15 تَفَعَّالٌ	7 فَعْلَةٌ
16 تَفَعَّالَةٌ	8 مَفْعَالٌ

NOUNS OF EXCESS. صِبْغ المبالغة

1. فَعَّالٌ

Learned	عَلَامٌ	Penitent	أَوَّابٌ
Perfidious	خَدَّارٌ	Smiling	بَسَامٌ
Deceiver	غَرَّارٌ	Weeper	بَكَاءٌ
Impostor	غَشَّاشٌ	Forgiving (God)	تَوَّابٌ
Pardoner (God)	عَفَّارٌ	Giant	جَبَّارٌ
Bountiful	فَبَّاصٌ	Traveller	جَوَّالٌ
Murderer	قَتَّالٌ	Traitor	خَوَّانٌ
Subduer (God)	قَهَّارٌ	Fosterer (God)	رَزَّاقٌ
Liar	كَدَّابٌ	Thief	سَرَّاقٌ
Benefactor	مَنَّانٌ	Bloodthirsty	سَفَّالٌ
Timid	هَيَّابٌ	Drunkard	شَرَّابٌ
Giver	وَهَّابٌ	One who fasts	صَوَّامٌ
		Covetous	طَمَّاعٌ

فَعَالَةٌ 2.

Learned	عَلَامَةٌ	Traveller	جَوَالَةٌ
Genealogist	نَسَابَةٌ	Traveller	رَحَالَةٌ
Timid	هَيَابَةٌ	Clamorous	صَخَابَةٌ

فَعِيلٌ 3.

Veracious	صَدِيقٌ	Silent	سَكِيْتُ
Holy	قَدِيسٌ	Tippler	سَكِيْرٌ
Playful	لَعِيْبٌ	Drunkard	شَرِيْبٌ
		Wicked	شَرِيْرٌ

فَعُولٌ 4.

Chaste	طَهْرٌ	Brave	جَسُوْرٌ
Hasty	عَجُوْلٌ	Ignorant	جَهُوْلٌ
Forgiving	غَفُوْرٌ	Merciful	رَحُوْمٌ
Zealous	غَيْوْرٌ	Silent	سَكُوْتٌ
Fearful	هَيْوْبٌ	Thankful	شَكُوْرٌ
Affectionate	وَدُوْدٌ	Veracious	صَدُوْقٌ

فَعِيْلٌ 5.

Sorrowful	كَثِيْبٌ	Merciful	رَحِيْمٌ
Thick (beard)	كَثِيْثٌ	Of close texture	صَفِيْقٌ
		Omniscient	عَلِيْمٌ

فَاعُوْلٌ 6.

Very timid	فَارُوْقٌ	Silent	سَاكُوْتٌ
------------	-----------	--------	-----------

7. فَعَلَةٌ

Jolly	لُعْبَةٌ	Wrestler	ضَرَعَةٌ
Censorious	لُومَةٌ	Laugher	ضُحْكَاةٌ
Sleepy	نُومَةٌ	Sweater	عَرَقَةٌ
Mocker	هَزْأَةٌ	Timid	فُرْعَةٌ

8. مَفْعَالٌ

Liberal	مِعْطَاءٌ	Spendthrift	مِتْلَافٌ
Daring	مِقْدَامٌ	Delusive	مِخْلَافٌ
Loquacious	مِكْتَارٌ	Docile	مِدْعَانٌ
Lazy	مِكْسَالٌ	Hospitable	مِضْيَافٌ
Bountiful	مِهْدَاءٌ	Covetous	مِطْمَاعٌ

9. مَفْعِيلٌ

Using perfumes	مِعْطِيفٌ	Poor, destitute	مِسْكِينٌ
----------------	-----------	-----------------	-----------

10. فَاعِلَةٌ

Reciter	رَاوِيَةٌ	Treacherous	خَائِنَةٌ
Distinguished	نَابِغَةٌ	Crafty	دَاهِيَةٌ

11. فَعُولَةٌ

Grateful	مَنْوُودَةٌ	Timid	فَرُوقَةٌ
Timid	هَيُّوبَةٌ	Liar	كَذُوبَةٌ
		Disgusted with	مَلْرُوءَةٌ

12. فُعْلٌ

Holy	قُدْسٌ	Heedless	غُفْلٌ
------	--------	----------	--------

13. فَعْلٌ

Changeable	قَلْبٌ	Fickle	حَوَلٌ
		Deceitful	خَلْبٌ

14. فَعُولٌ

Everlasting	قِيَوْمٌ	Holy	قَدُّوسٌ
-------------	----------	------	----------

15 and 16. تَفَعُّالٌ وَتَفَعَّالَةٌ

Humorist	تِلْعَابَةٌ	Humorist	تِلْعَابٌ
		Glutton	تِلْقَامٌ

NOUNS OF INSTRUMENT. اِسْمُ اَلْآلَةِ

1. مِفْعَلٌ

Slaking trough	مِصْرَلٌ	Needlecase	مِثْبَرٌ
Cooking-pot	مِطْبَخٌ	File	مِبْرَدٌ
Spindle	مِغْزَلٌ	Lancet	مِبْضَعٌ
Bath	مِغْطَسٌ	Microscope	مِجْهَرٌ
Handle	مِقْبَضٌ	Syringe	مِحْقَنٌ
Scissors	مِقْضٌ	Awl	مِحْرَزٌ
Cutter	مِقْطَعٌ	Cannon	مِدْفَعٌ
Frying-pan	مِقْلَى	Telescope	مِرْقَبٌ
Halter	مِقْرَدٌ	Fire-brand	مِسْعَرٌ
Press, (hand or		Grindstone	مِسْنَنٌ
hydraulic)	مِكْبَسٌ	Whetstone	مِشْحَدٌ
Tongs	مِلْقَطٌ	Fork	مِشْكٌ

Beak	مِنْسَر	Adze, chisel	مِنَكَّت
Fork, kitchen	مِنَشَل	Spur	مِنَخَس

2. مِفْعَال

Telescope	مِنْظَار	Needle-case	مِثْبَار
Bellows	مِنْفَاخ	Oar	مِجْدَاف
Bird's bill	مِنْقَار	Plough	مِكَرَات
Chisel	مِنْقَاش	Syringe	مِخْقَان
Hand or hydraulic press	مِكَبَّاس	Flute	مِرْمَار
Measure	مِكَيَال	Probe	مِسْبَار
Saw	مِنْشَار	Lancet	مِشْرَاط
Hoe	مِنْكَاش	Lamp, torch	مِصْبَاح
Iron-shod staff, spur	مِهْمَاز	Wooden lock	مِغْلَاق
Balance	مِيزَان	Key	مِفْتَاخ
		Oar	مِقْدَاف
		Scissors	مِقْرَاص

3. مِفْعَلَة

Lathe	مِخْرَطَة	Needle-case	مِثْبَرَة
Looking-glass	مِرَاة	Censer	مِبْخَرَة
Sprinkler	مِرْشَة	Pen-knife	مِبْرَاة
Sand-sifter	مِرْمَلَة	Spittoon	مِتْفَلَة
Arrow	مِرْمَاة	Censer	مِجْمَرَة
Fan	مِرْوَحَة	Inkstand	مِخْبَرَة
Paper ruler	مِسْطَرَة	Pillow	مِخْدَة

Broom	مِكنَسَة	Filter	مِصفَاة
Flat or box iron	مِكْوَاة	Squirt	مِصفَخَة
Press	مِلزَمَة	Hand-mill	مِطْحَنَة
Spoon	مِلْعَقَة	Mallet	مِطْرَقَة
Duster	مِمسِكَة	Umbrella	مِظَلَّة
Salt-cellar	مِملِكَة	Wine or olive press	مِعصرَة
Towel	مِمنشَفَة	Ladle	مِغْرَنَة
Girdle	مِمنطَقَة	Pen-case	مِقْلَمَة

WITH THE MEANING OF NOUN OF INSTRUMENT.

فِعَال

Shackle	عِقَال	A woman's covering	لِزَار
Swaddling clothes	قِباط	Shoe	حِذاء
Head-veil	قِنَاع	Girth, girdle	حِزَام
Muffler	لِثَام	Blanket	دِئَار
Bridle, rein	لِجَام	Bandage	رِبَاط
Quilt	لِخَاف	Wine-skin	زِقَان
Belt	نِطَاق	Curtain	سِتَار
Golden girdle	وِشَاح	Bandage	ضِمَاد

WITH THE MEANING OF NOUN OF INSTRUMENT.

فِعَالَة

Bandage	رِبَاطَة	Sword belt	حِمَالَة
Bandage	عِصَابَة	Support	دِعَامَة

Stick	هِرَاوَة	Support	عِصَاة
Pillow	وِسَادَة	Suspender	عِلَاقَة
		Turban	عِمَامَة

THE IRREGULAR MEASURES. مَفْعَلَة and مَفْعَل

Sieve	مُنْخَل	Pestle	مُدَق
Soda or soap box	مُخْرُصَة	Oil bottle	مُدْهَن
Antimony box	مُكْحَلَة	Snuff-box	مُسْط

PRIMITIVE NOUNS OF INSTRUMENT.

Net	شَبَكَة	Needle	إِبْرَة
Drum	طَبَل	Double-headed axe	حِدَاة
Pick-axe, hoe	فَأْس	Lance, spear	حَرْبَة
Trap	فَخ	Bucket	دَلْو
Adze	قَدُوم	Wheel	دَوْلَاب
Lock	قُفْل	Ink-stand	قَوَاة
Pen	قَلَم	Lance	رُمَح
Tongs, pincers	كَلْبَتَان	Flint	رِنَاد
Pipe, screw	كَوْلَب	Lamp	سِرَاج
Catapult, ballista	مَنْجَنِيْق	Knife	سِكِّين
Razor	مُوسَى	Arrow	سَهْم
Yoke	نِيْر	Sword	سَيْف

PROFESSIONS AND TRADES.

فَعَالٌ مُصَاغًا لِدُنَى حِرْفَةٍ

Thrasher	دَرَّاس	Tiller	أَكَّار
Auctioneer	دَلَّال	Greengrocer	بَقَّال
Oil merchant	دَهَّان	Builder	بَنَّا
Sower	زَّرَاع	Door-keeper	بَوَّاب
Oil-dealer	زَبَّات	Salesman	بَيَّاع
Jailer	سَجَّان	Surgeon	جَرَّاح
Water carrier	سَقَّاء	Butcher	جَزَّار
Butter dealer	سَمَّان	Shearer	جَزَّاز
Beggar	شَحَّان	Executioner	جَلَّان
Dyer	صَبَّاع	Camel-driver	جَمَّال
Money changer	صَرَّاف	Smith	حَدَّاد
Sportsman	صَيَّاد	Ploughman	حَرَّات
Cook	طَبَّاح	Reaper	حَصَّاد
Printer	طَبَّاع	Wood-cutter	حَطَّاب
Drummer	طَبَّال	Barber	حَلَّان
Miller	طَحَّان	Donkey-driver	حَمَّار
Porter	عَتَّال	Porter	حَمَّال
Grocer, perfumer	عَطَّار	Baker	خَبَّاز
Spinner	غَزَّال	Potter	خَزَّاف
Sheep owner	غَنَّام	Tailor	خَيَّاط
Miner	فَحَّام	Horseman	خَيَّال
Husbandman	فَلَّاح	Tanner	دَبَّاع

Carpenter	نَجَّار	Butcher	قَصَّاب
Sculptor, stone- dresser	نَحَّات	Bleacher	قَصَّار
Copper-smith	نَحَّاس	Vine-dresser	كِرَام
Carder	نَدَّاف	Wheat measurer	كَيْال
Engraver, stone-cutter	نَقَّاش	Butcher	لَحَّام
		Sailor	مَلَّاح

MEASURES OF THE PLURAL OF PAUCITY.

أَوْزَانُ جَمْعِ الْقَلَّةِ

- 1 أَفْعُل
- 2 أَفْعَال
- 3 أَفْعَلَة
- 4 فِعْلَة

MEASURES OF THE PLURAL OF MULTITUDE

أَوْزَانُ جَمْعِ الْكَثْرَةِ

19 فُعْلَاء	10 فِعَال	1 فُعَل
20 أَفْعِلَاء	11 فِعَالَة	2 فُعَل
21 فُعْلَان	12 فُعُول	3 فُعَل
22 فِعْلَان	13 فُعُولَة	4 فُعَل
23 فَعَالِي	14 فَعَلِي	5 فِعَل
24 فُعَالِي	15 فِعَلِي	6 فُعَل
25 فَعَالِي	16 فَعِيد	7 فَعَلَة
26 فَعَالِي	17 فُعَل	8 فُعَلَة
	18 فُعَال	9 فَعَلَة

PLURAL OF PAUCITY. جَمْعُ الْقَلَّةِ

1. أَفْعُلُ

Slave	أَعْبُدُ	عَبْدٌ	Sea	أَبْحُرُ	بَحْرٌ
Time, age	أَعْصُرُ	عَصْرٌ	Eyelid	أَجْفُنُ	جَفْنٌ
She-goat	أَعْنَزُ	عَنْزٌ	Letters (al-		
Eye	أَعْيُنُ	عَيْنٌ	phabet	أَحْرَفٌ	حَرْفٌ
Farthing	أَفْلَسُ	فَلْسٌ	Breast-plate	أَذْرَعُ	ذِرْعٌ
Cup	أَكْوَسُ	كَاسٌ	Bucket	أَدَلِي	دَلْوٌ
Sheep, ram	أَكْبَشُ	كَبْشٌ	Tears	أَنْمَعٌ	نَمْعٌ
Palm of the			House	أَنْوَرٌ	دَارٌ
hand	أَكْفٌ	كَفٌ	Cubit	أَذْرَعُ	ذِرَاعٌ
Tongue	أَلْسُنٌ	لِسَانٌ	Head	أَرْوَسٌ	رَأْسٌ
Star	أَنْجَمٌ	نَجْمٌ	Spring-camp	أَرْبَعٌ	رَبْعٌ
Eagle	أَنْسَرٌ	نَسْرٌ	Foot	أَرْجُلٌ	رِجْلٌ
Soul	أَنْفُسٌ	نَفْسٌ	Line	أَسْطُرٌ	سَطْرٌ
Tiger	أَنْمِرٌ	نَمِيرٌ	Lot, share	أَسْهَمٌ	سَهْمٌ
River	أَنْهَرٌ	نَهْرٌ	Mouth	أَشْهَرٌ	شَهْرٌ
Face, page	أَوْجُهٌ	وَجْهٌ	Rib	أَصْلَعٌ	صِلْعٌ
Hand	أَيْدٍ	يَدٌ	Fawn	أَطْبٌ	طَبْيٌ
			Back	أَطْهَرٌ	طَهْرٌ

2. أَفْعَالٌ

Ruins, traces	أَثَارٌ	أَثْرٌ	Camel	أَبَالٌ	إِبِلٌ
Appointed time	أَجَالٌ	أَجَلٌ	Father	أَبَاءٌ	أَبٌ

Eyelid	أَجْفَانٌ	جَفْنٌ	Sunday	آحَادٌ	أَحَدٌ
Generation	أَجْيَالٌ	جَيْدٌ	Ear	آذَانٌ	أُذُنٌ
Jewish Doctor, Pontiff	أَحْبَارٌ	حَبْرٌ	Lion	آسَادٌ	أَسَدٌ
Rope	أَحْبَالٌ	حَبْلٌ	Horizon	آفَاقٌ	أُفُقٌ
Young man	أَحْدَاثٌ	حَدَثٌ	Hill	آكَامٌ	أَكْمَةٌ
Party, troop	أَحْرَابٌ	حِرْبٌ	Pain	آلَامٌ	أَلْمٌ
Grief	أَحْزَانٌ	حُزْنٌ	Favour	آلَاءٌ	أَلَى
Sentence (in law	أَحْكَامٌ	حُكْمٌ	Hope	آمَلٌ	أَمَلٌ
Burden	أَحْمَالٌ	حِمْلٌ	Time	آذَانٌ	أَنَى
Lower jaw	أَحْنَاكٌ	حَنَكٌ	Well	آبَارٌ	بَيْتْرٌ
Condition, state	أَحْوَالٌ	حَالٌ	Righteous	أَبْرَارٌ	بِرٌّ
Time	أَحْيَانٌ	حِينٌ	Hero	أَبْطَالٌ	بَطَلٌ
Alive	أَحْيَاءٌ	حَيٌّ	Distance	أَبْعَادٌ	بُعْدٌ
Adversary	أَخْصَامٌ	خَصْمٌ	First-born	أَبْكَارٌ	بِكْرٌ
Danger	أَخْطَارٌ	خَطَرٌ	Son	أَبْنَاءٌ	إِبْنٌ
Disease	أَدْوَاءٌ	دَاءٌ	Door	أَبْوَابٌ	بَابٌ
Rotation	أَدْوَارٌ	دَوْرٌ	Verse	أَبْيَاتٌ	بَيْتٌ
Opinion	آرَاءٌ	رَأْيٌ	Equals in age	أَنْرَابٌ	تَرِبٌ
Sustenance	آرْزَاقٌ	رِزْقٌ	Fatigue	أَنْعَابٌ	تَعَبٌ
Ripe dates	آرْطَابٌ	رُطَبٌ	Fruit	أَنْثَارٌ	ثَمَرٌ
Spirit	آرْوَاحٌ	رُوحٌ	Garment	أَنْوَابٌ	ثَوْبٌ
			Grandfather	آجْدَادٌ	جَدٌّ
			Bell	آجْرَاسٌ	جَرَسٌ
			Body	آجْسَادٌ	جَسَدٌ

Malice	أَصْغَان	صِغْن	Button	أَزْرَار	زَر
Edge	أَطْرَاف	طَرَف	Husband or		
Child	أَطْفَال	طِفْل	wife	أَزْوَاج	زَوْج
Bird	أَطْيَار	طَيْر	Cause	أَسْبَاب	سَبَب
Nail	أَظْفَار	ظُفْر	Tribe	أَسْبَاط	سِبْط
Number	أَعْدَاد	عَدَد	Screen	أَسْتَار	سِتْر
Enemy	أَعْدَاء	عَدُو	Current price	أَسْعَار	سِعْر
Wedding	أَعْرَاس	عُرْس	Book	أَسْفَار	سِفْر
Grass	أَعْشَاب	عُشْب	Fish	أَسْمَاك	سَمَك
Nests	أَعْشَاش	عُش	Name	أَسْمَاء	إِسْم
Arm	أَعْضَاد	عَضْد	Tooth	أَسْنَان	سِن
Member, limb	أَعْضَاء	عُضْو	Whip	أَسْوَاط	سَوِّط
Flag	أَعْلَام	عَلَم	Market	أَسْوَاق	سُوق
Work	أَعْمَال	عَمَل	Sword	أَسْيَاف	سَيْف
Paternal uncle	أَعْمَام	عَم	Tree	أَشْجَار	شَجَر
Neck	أَعْنَاق	عُنُق	Poetry	أَشْعَار	شِعْر
Year	أَعْوَام	عَام	Business, work	أَشْغَال	شُغْل
Branch	أَغْصَان	عُصْن	Kind, sort	أَشْكَال	شَكْل
Scabbard	أَغْمَاد	غِمْد	Longing	أَشْوَاق	شَوْق
Joy	أَفْرَاح	فَرَح	Thorn	أَشْوَاك	شَوْك
Individual	أَفْرَاد	فَرْد	Thing	أَشْيَاء	شَيْء
Mare	أَفْرَاس	فَرَس	Echo	أَصْدَاء	صَدَى
Mouth	أَفْوَاه	فَم or فَمُوه	Country	أَصْقَاع	صُقْع
Filth	أَقْدَار	قَدْر	Voice	أَصْوَات	صَوْت

Angel	أَمَلَاكٍ	مَلَكٍ	Pole, axis,		
Wave	أَمْوَاجٍ	مَوْجٍ	leader	أَقْطَابٍ	قُطْبٍ
Possession,			Country	أَقْطَارٍ	قُطْرٍ
property	أَمْوَالٍ	مَالٍ	Lock	أَقْفَالٍ	قُفْلٍ
Water	أَمْوَاهٍ	مَاهٍ	Pen	أَقْلَامٍ	قَلَمٍ
Mile	أَمْيَالٍ	مَيْلٍ	Moon	أَقْمَارٍ	قَمَرٍ
Region	أَنْحَاةٍ	ذَخْرٍ	Saying	أَقْوَالٍ	قَوْلٍ
Helper	أَنْصَارٍ	نَصِيرٍ	People, crowd	أَقْوَامٍ	قَوْمٍ
River	أَنْهَارٍ	نَهْرٍ	Liver	أَكْبَادٍ	كَبِدٍ
Light	أَنْوَارٍ	نُورٍ	Shoulder	أَكْتَافٍ	كَتِفٍ
Tusk	أَنْيَابٍ	نَابٍ	Shroud	أَكْفَانٍ	كَفَنٍ
Tent-peg, stake	أَوْتَادٍ	وَتْدٍ	Sleeve	أَكْمَامٍ	كُمٍ
Bow-string	أَوْتَارٍ	وَتْرٍ	Purse, bag	أَكْيَاسٍ	كَيْسٍ
Pain	أَوْجَاعٍ	وَجَعٍ	Mind	أَلْبَابٍ	لَبٍّ
Leaf	أَوْرَاقٍ	وَرَقٍ	Side-glance	أَلْحَاطٍ	لَحْظٍ
Dirt	أَوْسَاحٍ	وَسْخٍ	Tone, melody	أَلْحَانٍ	لَحْنٍ
Time	أَوْقَاتٍ	وَقْتٍ	Board	أَلْوَاحٍ	لَوْحٍ
Nest	أَوْكَارٍ	وَكْرٍ	Glory	أَمْجَادٍ	مَجْدٍ
Child	أَوْلَادٍ	وَلَدٍ	Territory	أَمْصَارٍ	مِصْرٍ
Day	أَيَّامٍ	يَوْمٍ	Salt	أَمْلَاحٍ	مِلْحٍ
			Property	أَمْلَاكٍ	مَلِكٍ

3. أَنْعِلَةٌ

Leather bag	أَجْرِبَةٌ	جِرَابٍ	Vessel	أَنْبِيَةٌ	إِنَاءٌ
Wing	أَجْنِحَةٌ	جَنَاحٍ	Building	أَبْنِيَةٌ	بِنَاءٌ

Pillar	أَعْمِدَةٌ	عَمُودٌ	Foetus	أَجِنَّةٌ	جَنِينٌ
Bridle	أَعِنَّةٌ	عِنَانٌ	Apparatus	أَجْهَرَةٌ	جِهَازٌ
Food	أَغْدِيَّةٌ	غِدَاءٌ	Answer	أَجْرِبَةٌ	جَوَابٌ
Crow	أَغْرِبَةٌ	غُرَابٌ	Shoes	أَحْدِيَّةٌ	حِدَاءٌ
Coverings	أَغْشِيَّةٌ	غِشَاءٌ	Phantasm	أَخْيَلَةٌ	خَيْالٌ
Heart	أَفْتِدَةٌ	فُؤَادٌ	Invocation	أَدْعِيَّةٌ	دُعَاءٌ
Mattress	أَفْرِشَةٌ	فِرَاشٌ	Proof	أَدِلَّةٌ	دَلِيلٌ
Shirt	أَقْبِصَةٌ	قَمِيصٌ	Brain	أَدْمِغَةٌ	دِمَاعٌ
Measurement	أَقْيِسَةٌ	قِيَاسٌ	Medicine	أَدْوِيَّةٌ	دَوَاءٌ
Garment	أَكْسِيَّةٌ	كِسَاءٌ	Handmill	أَرْحِيَّةٌ	رَحَىٌ
Dress	أَلْبِسَةٌ	لِبَاسٌ	Loaf	أَرْغِفَةٌ	رَغِيفٌ
Counterpane	أَلْحِفَةٌ	لِحَافٌ	Porch	أَرْوَقَةٌ	رَوَاقٌ
Goods	أَمْتِعَةٌ	مَتَاعٌ	Reins	أَرْمَةٌ	رِمَامٌ
Example	أَمَثَلَةٌ	مِثَالٌ	Time	أَرْمَنَةٌ	رَمَانٌ
Place	أَمَكْنَةٌ	مَكَانٌ	Question	أَسْئَلَةٌ	سُؤَالٌ
Woven	أَنْسِجَةٌ	نَسِيجٌ	Mirage	أَسْرِبَةٌ	سَرَابٌ
Portion	أَنْصِبَةٌ	نَصِيبٌ	Bed	أَسِرَّةٌ	سَرِيرٌ
Air	أَهْوِيَّةٌ	هَوَاءٌ	Armour, arms	أَسْلِحَةٌ	سِلَاحٌ
Den of wild beasts	أَوْجِرَةٌ	وَجَارٌ	Camel's hump	أَسْنِمَةٌ	سَنَامٌ
Valley	أَوْدِيَّةٌ	وَادٍ	Spear head	أَسِنَّةٌ	سِنَانٌ
Jugular vein	أَوْرْدَةٌ	وَرْدٌ	Beverage	أَشْرِبَةٌ	شَرَابٌ
Vessel	أَوْعِيَّةٌ	وِعَاءٌ	Sun's rays	أَشْعَةٌ	شُعَاعٌ
			Spleen	أَطْحَلَةٌ	طِحَالٌ
			Food	أَطْعِمَةٌ	طَعَامٌ

4. فِعْلَةٌ

Lad	غِلْمَةٌ	غِلَامٌ	Brother	إِخْوَةٌ	أَخٌ
Youth	فِتْيَةٌ	فَتَى	Neighbour	جِيرَةٌ	جَارٌ
Boy	وَلَدَةٌ	وَلَدٌ	Boy	صَبِيَّةٌ	صَبِيٌّ

PLURALS OF MULTITUDE. جُمُوعُ الْكَثْرَةِ

1. فَعْلٌ

Friend	صَاحِبٌ	صَاحِبٌ	Party of Riders	رَكْبٌ	رَاكِبٌ
Guest	نَزِيلٌ	فَارِجٌ	Party of travel-		
Envoy	رَافِدٌ	رَافِدٌ	lers	سَفَرٌ	مَسَافِرٌ
			Party of drin-		
			kers	شَرَبٌ	شَارِبٌ

2. فُعْلٌ

Blue	زُرْقٌ	أَزْرَقٌ	Piebald	بُرْشٌ	أَبْرَشٌ
Brown	سُمْرٌ	أَسْمَرٌ	Leper	بُرْصٌ	أَبْرَصٌ
Black	سُودٌ	أَسْوَدٌ	White	بَيْضٌ	أَبْيَضٌ
Auburn	شَقْرٌ	أَشْقَرٌ	Bare, smooth-		
Withered hand	شَدٌّ	أَشَدٌّ	faced	جُرْدٌ	أَجْرَدٌ
Fine-nosed	شَمٌّ	أَشَمٌّ	Red	حُمْرٌ	أَحْمَرٌ
Red-tinged			Squint-eyed	حَوْلٌ	أَحْوَلٌ
(eye)	شَهْدٌ	أَشْهَدٌ	Dumb	خُرْسٌ	أَخْرَسٌ
Hoary	شَيْبٌ	أَشْيَبٌ	Green	خَضْرٌ	أَخْضَرٌ
Partially bald	صَلَعٌ	أَصْلَعٌ	Spotted	رُقْطٌ	أَرْقَطٌ

One-eyed	عُور	أَعْوَر	Deaf	صَم	أَصَمَّ
Spotted-face (horse)	عُرَّ	أَغْرَّ	Lame	عُرَج	أَعْرَجَ
Bald-headed	قُرَع	أَقْرَع	Tongue-tied	عُقِدَ	أَعْقِدَ
Hasty	هُوج	أَهْوَج	Blind	عُنِيَ	أَعْمِيَ
			Crooked	عُرُج	أَعْرَجَ

3. فَعَلَ

Column	عَمَد	عَمَوْن	Ring, ferrule	حَلَقَ	حَلَقَةٌ
Goat	مَعَز	مَعَرَى	Servant	خَدَمَ	خَادِم

4. فُعِلَ

Underclothing	حُلْد	حُلَّة	Knot (in wood)	أَبْن	أُبْنَةٌ
Scorpion's sting	حُمَى	حُمَّة	Family	أَسْر	أُسْرَةٌ
Lecture	حُطَب	حُطْبَةٌ	Nation	أُمَّم	أُمَّة
Step	حُطَى	حُطْوَةٌ	Desire	بُعَى	بُعْيَةٌ
Pearl	دُرَر	دُرَّة	Low-lying land	بُقِع	بُقْعَةٌ
Shower	دُفَع	دُفْعَةٌ	Channel, canal	تُرَع	تُرْعَةٌ
Summit	دُرَى	دُرْوَةٌ	Suspicion	تُهَم	تُهْمَةٌ
Sight	رُؤَى	رُؤْيَةٌ	Wide-sleeved cloak	جُبَب	جُبَّة
Vision	رُؤَى	رُؤْيَا	Corpse	جُتَّت	جُتَّة
Hill	رُبَى	رُبْوَةٌ	Sentence	جُمَل	جُمَلَةٌ
Patch	رُقِع	رُقْعَةٌ	Argument	حُجَج	حُجْجَةٌ
Knee	رُكَب	رُكْبَةٌ	Room	حُجَجِر	حُجْجِرَةٌ
Law	سُنن	سُنَّة	Ditch	حُفَر	حُفْرَةٌ
Twig	شُعَب	شُعْبَةٌ	Clyster	حُقَن	حُقْنَةٌ

Window	كُورَى	كُورَة	Picture	صُور	صُورَة
Morsel	لُقْم	لُقْمَة	Edge of a sword	طُبَى	طَبَة
Small quantity,			Apparatus	عَدَد	عُدَّة
bright spot	لَمَع	لَمَعَة	Button-hole	عُرَى	عُرْوَة
Duration	مُدَد	مُدَّة	Knot	عُقَد	عُقْدَة
Eye	مُقَل	مُقَلَّة	Wages	عَمَل	عَمَلَة
Wish	مُنَى	مُنِيَّة	Room	عُرْف	عُرْفَة
Heart-blood	مُهَج	مُهَجَة	Opportunity	فُرْص	فُرْصَة
Copy (book)	نُسَخ	نُسَخَة	Dome, pavilion	قُبَب	قُبَّة
Nape of the neck	نُقْر	نُقْرَة	Kiss	قُبَل	قُبْلَة
Drop	نُقْط	نُقْطَة	Village	قُرَى	قَرِيَّة
Fine-point	نُكْت	نُكْتَة	Power, faculty	قُوَى	قُوَّة
Number	نُمر	نُمرَة	Anxiety	كُرْب	كُرْبَة
Turn, paroxysm	نُوب	نُوبَة	Ball, bomb,		
Opportunity	نُهْر	نُهْرَة	marble	كُلْد	كُلَّة

5. فَعْل

Strategy	حِيَل	حِيَلَة	Needle	إِبْر	إِبْرَة
Service	خِدْم	خِدْمَة	Pool	بِرْك	بِرْكَة
Rag	خِرْق	خِرْقَة	Few, piece	بِضْع	بِضْعَة
Steady rain	دِيم	دِيمَة	Church	بَيْع	بَيْعَة
Responsibility	دِمَم	دِمَمَة	Poll-tax	جِرَى	جِرْيَة
Departure	رِحَل	رِحْلَة	Craft, trade	حِرْك	حِرْكَة
Parcel	رِزْم	رِزْمَة	Portion	حِصَص	حِصْصَة
Decayed bones	رِمَم	رِمَمَة	Wisdom	حِكَم	حِكْمَة

Paragraph	فَقْرَة	فِقْرَة	Suspicion	رَيْب	رَيْبَة
Fragment	فَلَق	فَلَقَة	Feather	رَيْش	رَيْشَة
Water-skin	قِرْب	قِرْبَة	Article of mer-		
Tale	قِصَص	قِصَّة	chandise	سِلْع	سِلْعَة
Piece	قِطْع	قِطْعَة	Walk, conduct	سِيَر	سِيَرَة
Peak	قِمَم	قِمَّة	Sect	شَيْع	شَيْعَة
Fragment	كِسْر	كِسْرَة	Disposition	شِيَم	شِيَمَة
Mosquito-			Paradigm		
curtain	كِلْد	كِلَّة	(Gram.)	صِيغ	صِيغَة
Beard	لِحَى	لِحْيَة	Villages	ضِيَع	ضِيَعَة
Trial	مِكْن	مِكْنَة	Example	عِبْر	عِبْرَة
Sect	مِثْل	مِثْلَة	Cause, plea,		
Gift, grace	مِن	مِنَة	illness	عِلْد	عِلَّة
Relation	نِسْب	نِسْبَة	Disturbance	فِتْن	فِتْنَة
Grace, favour	نِعْم	نِعْمَة	Party, division	فِرْق	فِرْقَة
Energy, zeal	هَم	هَمَة	Intelligence	فِطْن	فِطْنَة

6. فُعْل

Veil	حُجَاب	حِجَاب	She-ass	أُتْن	أَتَان
Girdle	حُزْم	حِرَام	Large veil	أُزْر	أَزَار
Horse	حُصْن	حِصَان	Foundation	أُسْس	أَسَاس
Donkey	حُمْر	حِمَار	Frame	أُطْر	إِطَار
Gulf	خُلْم	خَلِيْم	Large carpet	بُسْط	بِسَاط
Muffler	خُمْر	خِمَار	Inclosure	جُدْر	جِدَار

Mattress	فُرْش	فِرَاش	Blanket	دُثْر	دِقَار
Darkness	قُتْم	قَتَام	Bond, tie	رُبُط	رِبَاط
Back of the			Apostle	رُسُل	رَسُول
head	قُدْل	قَدَال	Way	سُبُل	سَبِيل
Rod	قُضْب	قَضِيب	Cloud	سُكَب	سَكَاب
Train	قَطْر	قِطَار	Lamp	سُرُج	سِرَاج
Book	كُتُب	كِتَاب	Bedstead	سُرُر	سَرِير
Bridle	لُجْم	لِجَام	Fire	سُعْر	سَعِير
Counterpane	لُكْف	لِكَاف	Sail	شُرُوع	شِرَاع
Town	مُدُن	مَدِينَة	Star, flame	شُهَب	شِهَاب
Bed	مُهَد	مِهَاد	Patient	صُبْر	صَبُور
Handle (knife)	نُصَب	نِصَاب	Book	صُكْف	صَحِيفَة
Night-time	هَزُع	هَزِيع	Road	طُرُق	طَرِيق
Band, rope	وُثُق	وِثَاق	Shackle	عُقْل	عِقَال
			Pillar	عُمَد	عَمُود

7. فَعَلَة

Keeper	حَفَظَة	حَافِظ	Guilty	أَثْمَة	أَثِم
Weaver	حَاكَة	حَاكِك	Eater	أَكَلَة	آكِل
Servant	خَدَمَة	خَادِم	Righteous	بَرَرَة	بَار
Treasurer	خَزَنَة	خَازِن	Seller	بَاعَة (بَيْعَة)	بَاتِع
Sinner	خَطَاَة	خَاطِئ	Ignorant	جَهَلَة	جَاهِل
Traitor	خَوَنَة	خَائِن	Envious	حَسَدَة	حَاسِد
Low, base	سَفَلَة	سَافِل	Grandson	حَفَدَة	حَفِيد

Scribe	كَتَبَ	كَاتِب	Lord, chief	سَادَة	سَائِد
Liar	كَذَبَ	كَاذِب	Manager	سَاسَة	سَائِس
Unbeliever	كَفَرَ	كَافِر	Goldsmith	صَاغَة	صَائِع
Perfect	كَمَل	كَامِل	Seeker, student	طَلَبَة	طَالِب
Priest	كَهَنَة	كَاهِن	Worshipper	عَبَدَة	عَابِد
Rebellious	مَرَد	مَارِد	Workman	عَمَلَة	عَامِل
Crafty	مَكَّر	مَكاِر	Labourer	فَعَلَة	فَاعِل
Skilful	مَهَّر	مَاهِر	Murderer	قَتَلَة	قَاتِل
Narrator	نَقَلَ	نَاقِل	Reader	قَرَأَة	قَارِئ

8. فُعَلَة

Narrator	رَوَاة	رَاوِ	Falcon	بَارِ (بَارِي) بُرَاة	
Adulterer	زَنَاة	زَانِ	Oppressor	بَاغِ (بَاغِي) بُغَاة	
Messenger	سَعَاة	سَاعِ	Builder	بُنَاة	بَانِ
Cup-bearer	سُقَاة	سَاقِ	Tax-gatherer	جُبَاة	جَابِ
Cruel	طُغَاة	طَاطِ	Criminal	جُنَاة	جَانِ
Haughty	عُنْتَاة	عَاتِ	Camel-driver	حُدَاة	حَادِ
Naked	عُرَاة	عَارِ	Bare-footed	حُقَاة	حَافِ
Rebel	عُصَاة	عَاِصِ	Protector	حُمَاة	حَامِ
Raider	غُرَاة	غَارِ	Sinner	خُطَاة	خَاطِ
Cruel, hard	قُسَاة	قَاسِ	Caller, sup-		
Judge	قُضَاة	قَاضِ	pliant	دُعَاة	دَاعِ
Iron-clad,			Shepherd	رُعَاة	رَاعِ
brave	كُمَاة	كَمِي	Archer	رُمَاة	رَامِ

Calumniator	وَشَاةٌ	وَاشٍ	Walker, in-		
Governor	وَلَاةٌ	وَالٍ	fantry	مُشَاةٌ	مَاشٍ
			Guide	هُدَاةٌ	هُدَاٍ

9. فَعَلَةٌ

Elephant	فَيْلَةٌ	فَيْلٍ	Shield	تَرَسَةٌ	تُرْسٌ
Monkey	قِرْدَةٌ	قِرْدٍ	Well	جِبْبَةٌ	جُبٌّ
Sleeve	كِمَمَةٌ	كُمٌ	Bear	دِبْبَةٌ	دُبٌّ
Cat	هَرَرَةٌ	هَرٌّ	Husband	زَوْجَةٌ	زَوْجٌ

10. فَعَالٌ

Camel	جِمَالٌ	جَمَلٌ	Hill	إِكَامٌ	أَكْمَةٌ
Rope	حِبَالٌ	حَبْلٌ	Sea	بِحَارٌ	بَحْرٌ
Stone	حِجَارٌ	حَجَرٌ	Torrent-bed	بِطَاحٌ	بَطْحَاءٌ
Lance, bayonet	حِرَابٌ	حَرْبَةٌ	Mule	بِغَالٌ	بَغْلٌ
Sheep	حِرَافٌ	حَرُوفٌ	Low-lyingland	بِقَاعٌ	بُقْعَةٌ
Good quality	خِصَالٌ	خِصْلَةٌ	Town	بِلَادٌ	بَلَدٌ
Tent	خِيَامٌ	خَيْمَةٌ	Hill	تِلَالٌ	تَلٌّ
Rudder	دِفَافٌ	دُفَّةٌ	Mountain	جِبَالٌ	جَبَلٌ
Blood	دِمَاءٌ	دَمٌ	Forehead	جِبَاهٌ	جَبْهَةٌ
Wolf	ذِئَابٌ	ذَيْبٌ	Kid	جِدَاءٌ	جَدْيٌ
Man	رِجَالٌ	رَجُلٌ	Wound	جِرَاحٌ	جُرْحٌ
Thin	رِقَاقٌ	رَقِيقٌ	Jar	جِرَارٌ	جِرَّةٌ
Spear, lance	رِمَاحٌ	رُمُحٌ	Pup	جِرَآءٌ	جِرْوٌ
Sand	رِمَالٌ	رَمْلٌ	Deep dish	جِفَانٌ	جَفْنَةٌ

Ascent	عِقَاب	عَقِبَة	Wind	رِيَّاح	رِيح
Child, family	عِيَال	عَيْل	Swift	سِرَاع	سَرِيح
Angry	غِيْصَاب	غَضْبَان	Basket	سِلَال	سَل
Trap	فِيخَاخ	فَخ	Stout	سِيَان	سَيِين
Short	قِصَار	قَصِير	Arrow	سِيَهَام	سَهْم
Fortress	قِلَاع	قَلْعَة	Mountain-		
Heel, ankle	كِعَاب	كَعْب	path	شِعَاب	شِعْب
Dog	كِلَاب	كَلْب	Net	شِيَاك	شَبَكَة
Base	لِيَام	لَيْم	Difficult	صِعَاب	صَعْب
Side-glance	لِحَاط	لَحْظ	Temper	طِبَاع	طَبَع
Water	مِيَاه	مَاء	Long	طِوَال	طَوِيل
Ewe	نِعَاج	نَعَجَة	Fawn	ظِبَاء	ظَبِي
Sandal	نِعَال	نَعْل	Slave, servant	عِبَاد	عَبْد
She-camel	نِيَّاق	نَاقَة	Thirsty	عِطَاش	عَطْشَان
Sleeping	نِيَام	نَائِم	Bone	عِظَام	عَظْم
Abyss	وَهَاد	وَهْدَة	Great	عِظَام	عَظِيم

11. فِعَالَة

Calyx of a			Camel	جِمَالَة	جَبَل
flower	كِيَامَة	كِم	Stone	حِجَارَة	حَجَر
			Companion	صِحَابَة	صَاحِب

12. فُعُول

Sea	بُخُور	بَخْر	Origin	أُصُول	أَصْل
Full-moon	بُدُور	بَدْر	Affair	أُمُور	أَمْر

Hand-writing	حُطُوط	حَطَّ	Tower	بُرُوج	بُرُج
Wine	خُمُور	خَمَرَ	Lightning	بُرُوق	بَرَق
String, thread	خُيُوط	خَيَّطَ	Seed	بُرُور	بِزْر
Lesson	دَرُوس	دَرَسَ	Belly	بُطُون	بَطْن
Debt	دُيُون	دَيْنَ	House	بُيُوت	بَيْت
Male	ذُكُور	ذَكَرَ	Border-		
Head	رُؤُوس	رَأَسَ	land	نُطُوم	نَخَم
Spring-camp	رُبُوع	رَبَعَ	Hill	تُلُول	تَلَّ
Thunder	رُعُود	رَعَدَ	Breast	(ثُدُوي) ثُدِيَّ	ثُدِي
Seed	زُرُوع	زَرَعَ	Snow	ثُلُوج	ثَلَج
Flower	زُهُور	زَهَرَ	Bridge	جُسُور	جِسْر
Prison	سُجُون	سَجَنَ	Eyelid	جُفُون	جَفْن
Saddle	سُرُوج	سَرَجَ	Skin	جُلُود	جِلْد
Roof	سُطُوح	سَطَحَ	Side	جُنُوب	جَنْب
Line, row	سُطُور	سَطَّرَ	Army	جُنُود	جُنْد
Roof	سُقُوف	سَقَفَ	Pocket	جُيُوب	جَيْب
Poison	سُمُوم	سَمَّ	Grain	حُبُوب	حَبَّ
Affair	شُرُون	شَأْنَ	Limit,		
Explanation	شُرُوح	شَرَّحَ	boundary	حُدُود	حَدَّ
Hair	شُعُور	شَعَرَ	War	حُرُوب	حَرْب
Doubt	شُكُوك	شَكَّ	Particle	حُرُوف	حَرْف
Sun	شُمُوس	شَمَسَ	Fortress	حُصُون	حِصْن
Witness	شُهُود	شَاهَدَ	Field	حُقُول	حَقْل
Month	شُهُور	شَهَرَ	Cheek	خُدُود	خَدَّ
Plate, dish	صُكُور	صَكَّنَ	Adversary	خُصُوم	خَضَم

Difference	فَرْقٌ	فَرْقٌ	Chest	صُدُورٌ	صَدْرٌ
Season,			Rank	صُفُوفٌ	صَفٌّ
chapter, part	فُصُولٌ	فَصْلٌ	Cymbal	صُنُوجٌ	صَنْجٌ
Farthing	فُلُوسٌ	فَلْسٌ	Kind, sort	صُنُوفٌ	صِنْفٌ
Art, handicraft	فُنُونٌ	فَنٌّ	Molar-tooth	ضُرُوسٌ	ضِرْسٌ
Monkey	قُرُونٌ	قِرْدٌ	Rib	ضُلُوعٌ	ضِلْعٌ
Priest	قُسُوسٌ	قِسٌ	Drum	طُبُولٌ	طَبْلٌ
Rind	قَشُورٌ	قِشْرٌ	Rite, cere-		
Castle	قُصُورٌ	قَصْرٌ	mony	طُقُوسٌ	طَقْسٌ
Back, nape of			Bird	طَيْرٌ	طَيْرٌ
neck	قَفِيٌّ	قَفَاٌ	Vessel, enve-		
Heart	قُلُوبٌ	قَلْبٌ	lope, adverb	ظُرُوفٌ	ظَرْفٌ
Sail of ship	قُلُوعٌ	قَلْعٌ	Back	ظُهُورٌ	ظَهْرٌ
Bow	قِسِيٌّ	قَوْسٌ	Calf	عُجُولٌ	عِجْلٌ
Cup	كُوُوسٌ	كَاسٌ	Root, vein	عُرُوقٌ	عِرْقٌ
Vineyard	كُرُومٌ	كَرْمٌ	Time, epoch	عُضُورٌ	عَضْرٌ
Palm of hand	كُفُوفٌ	كَفٌّ	Stick	(عُضُورٌ) عِصِيٌّ	عَصَاٌ
Flesh	لُحُومٌ	لَحْمٌ	Mind	عُقُولٌ	عَقْلٌ
Meadow	مُرُوجٌ	مَرْجٌ	Vice, defect	عُيُوبٌ	عَيْبٌ
Star	نُجُومٌ	نَجْمٌ	Eye	عُيُونٌ	عَيْنٌ
Vow	نُدُورٌ	نَذْرٌ	Branch	عُصُورٌ	عُصْنٌ
Soul	نُفُوسٌ	نَفْسٌ	Cloud	غُيُومٌ	غَيْمٌ
Tiger	نُمُورٌ	نَمِرٌ	Examination	فُكُوصٌ	فَكَحَصٌ
Anxiety	هُمُومٌ	هَمٌّ	Twig	فُرُوعٌ	فَرْعٌ

13. فُعُولَةٌ

Hawk	صُقُورَةٌ	صَقَّرَ	Husband	بُعُولَةٌ	بَعَلَ
Paternal			Burden	حُمُولَةٌ	حَمَلَ
Uncle	عُمُومَةٌ	عَمَّ	Maternal		
Tiger	نُمُورَةٌ	نَمَرَ	Uncle	خُورُولَةٌ	خَالَ
			Male	ذُكُورَةٌ	ذَكَرَ

14. فَعْلَى

Weak	ضَعْفَى	ضَعِيفٌ	Hireling	أَجْرَى	أَجِيرٌ
Murderer	تَمَلَى	تَمِيدٌ	Captive	أَسْرَى	أَسِيرٌ
Wounded	قَرَحَى	قَرِيحٌ	Wounded	جَرَحَى	جَرِيحٌ
Stung	لَدَغَى	لَدِيعٌ	Stupid	حَفَى	أَحْمَقٌ
Sick	مَرَضَى	مَرِيضٌ	Dispersed	شَتَى	شَتِيَةٌ
Dead	مَوْتَى	مَيَّتٌ	Prostrated in		
Perishing	هَلَكَى	هَالِكٌ	wrestling	صَرَعَى	صَرِيحٌ
			Weak	ضَعْفَى	ضَعِيفٌ

15. فَعْلَى

Pole-cat	ظَرَبَى	ظَرَبَانٌ	Partridge	حَبَجَلَى	حَبَجَلٌ
----------	---------	-----------	-----------	-----------	----------

16. فَعِيلٌ

Servant	عَبِيدٌ	عَبْدٌ	Cow	بَقِيرٌ	بَقَرٌ
			Donkey	حَبِيرٌ	حَبَارٌ

17. فَعْلٌ

White-haired	شَيْبٌ	شَائِبٌ	Stingy	بُخْدَلٌ	بَاخِلٌ
Reprover	عُدْلٌ	عَاذِلٌ	Brave	بُسْلٌ	بَاسِلٌ
Unadorned	عُطْلٌ	عَاطِلٌ	Reclining on the chest	جُثْمٌ	جَاثِمٌ
Barren	عُقْرٌ	عَاقِرٌ	Envious	حُسْدٌ	حَاسِدٌ
Raider	عُرْيٌ	عَارِزٌ	Kneeling	رُكْعٌ	رَاكِعٌ
Absent	غَيْبٌ	غَائِبٌ	Worshipper	سُجْدٌ	سَاجِدٌ
Liar	كُذْبٌ	كَاذِبٌ	Law-giver	شُرْعٌ	شَارِعٌ
Adviser	نُصْحٌ	نَاصِحٌ	Eye-witness	شُهْدٌ	شَاهِدٌ
Sleeping	نَوْمٌ	نَائِمٌ			

18. فُعَالٌ

Mischievous	شُطَّارٌ	شَاطِرٌ	Ignorant	جُهَّالٌ	جَاهِلٌ
Artizan	صُنَاعٌ	صَانِعٌ	Clever	حُدَّاقٌ	حَادِقٌ
Worshipper	عِبَادٌ	عَابِدٌ	Guardian	حُرَّاسٌ	حَارِسٌ
Reprover	عُدَّالٌ	عَاذِلٌ	Envious	حُسَّادٌ	حَاسِدٌ
Workman	عَمَّالٌ	عَامِلٌ	Keeper	حُقَّاطٌ	حَافِظٌ
Sick-visitor	عُرَّادٌ	عَائِدٌ	Servant	خُدَّامٌ	خَادِمٌ
Wicked	فُجَّارٌ	فَاجِرٌ	Rider	رُكَّابٌ	رَاكِبٌ
Reader	قُرَّاءٌ	قَارِئٌ	Ascetic	رُهَّامٌ	رَاهِدٌ
Highwayman	قُطَّاعٌ	قَاطِعٌ	Visitor, pilgrim	زُرَّارٌ	زَائِرٌ
Leader	قُرَّادٌ	قَائِدٌ	Thief	سُرَّاقٌ	سَارِقٌ
Scribe	كُتَّابٌ	كَاتِبٌ	Traveller	سَيَّاحٌ	سَائِحٌ
Infidel	كُفَّارٌ	كَافِرٌ	Commentator	شُرَّاحٌ	شَارِحٌ

Members of			Priest	كُهَّان	كَاهِن
Parliament	نُؤَاب	نَائِب	Hermit	نُسَاك	نَاسِك
Heir	وَرَاث	وَارِث	Adviser	نُصَاح	نَاصِح
			Watchman	نُظَّار	نَاطِر

Caliph, suc-		19. فُعَلَاءُ			
cessor	خُلَفَاءُ	خَلِيفَة	Guilty.	أَثْمَاءُ	أَثِم
Fit, suited for	خُلَقَاءُ	خَلِيق	Polite,		
Intruder	دُخَلَاءُ	دَخِيل	learned	أُدْبَاءُ	أَدِيب
Chief	رُؤَسَاءُ	رُؤِيس	Prince	أُمَرَاءُ	أَمِير
Merciful	رُحَمَاءُ	رَحِيم	Faithful	أَمَنَاءُ	أَمِين
ompanion	رُفَقَاءُ	رَفِيق	Stingy	بُخَلَاءُ	بَخِيل
Watcher	رُقَبَاءُ	رَقِيب	Intelligent	بُصَرَاءُ	بَصِير
Chief	رُعَمَاءُ	رُعِيم	Stupid	بُلْدَاءُ	بَلِيد
Happy	سُعَدَاءُ	سَعِيد	Eloquent	بُلَغَاءُ	بَلِيغ
Ambassador	سُفَرَاءُ	سَفِير	Unlucky	تُعَسَاءُ	تَعِيس
Foolish	سُفَهَاءُ	سَفِيه	Coward	جُبْنَاءُ	جَبَان
Sickly	سُقَمَاءُ	سَقِيم	Worthy, fit	جُدْرَاءُ	جَدِير
Noble	شُرَفَاءُ	شَرِيف	Companion	جُلَسَاءُ	جَلِيس
Partner	شُرَكَاءُ	شَرِيك	Ignorant	جُهَلَاءُ	جَاهِل
Poet	شُعَرَاءُ	شَاعِر	Sorrowful	حُزَنَاءُ	حَزِين
Weak	ضُعَفَاءُ	ضَعِيف	Wise	حُكَمَاءُ	حَكِيم
Elegant	ظُرَفَاءُ	ظَرِيف	Wicked	خُبْنَاءُ	خَبِيث
Companion	عُشْرَاءُ	عَشِير	Orator	خُطَبَاءُ	خَطِيب

Anointed	مُسَكَّمَاء	مَسِيح	Mighty	عُظْمَاء	عَظِيم
Steady	مَكْنَاء	مَكِين	Intelligent	عُقْلَاء	عَاقِل
Intelligent	ذُجَبَاء	ذُجَيْب	Commissioner	عُمَّلَاء	عَمِيد
Jester, boon companion	ذَمَاء	ذَمِيم	Stranger	غُرَبَاء	غَرِيب
Guest	فُرْلَاء	فُرَيْد	Eloquent speaker	فُصَحَاء	فَصِيح
Adviser	نُصَحَاء	نُصِيح	Excellent	فُضَّلَاء	فَاضِل
Defender	نُصْرَاء	نُصِير	Poor	فُقْرَاء	فَقِير
Equal	نُظْرَاء	نُظِير	Ancient	قَدَمَاء	قَدِيم
Honourable	وُجَهَاء	وَجِيه	Comrade	قُرَنَاء	قَرِين
Meek	وُدَعَاء	وَدِيع	Great	كُبْرَاء	كَبِير
Minister	وُزْرَاء	وَزِير	Generous	كُرْمَاء	كَرِيم
Mediator	وُسَطَاء	وَسِيط	Surety	كُفْلَاء	كَفِيل
Humble	وَضَعَاء	وَضِيع	Base	لُومَاء	لَثِيم
			Kind, delicate	لُطَفَاء	لُطِيف

20. أَفْعَلَاء

Intimate			Innocent	أَبْرِيَاء	بَرِي
friend	أَخِلَاء	خَلِيل	Pious	أَنْقِيَاء	نَقِي
Adopted son	أَدْعِيَاء	دَعِي	Glorious	أَجْلَاء	جَلِيل
Guide	أَدِلَاء	دَلِيل	Beloved	أَحْبَاء	حَبِيب
Mean	أَدْنِيَاء	دَنِي	Sharp	أَحْدَاء	حَدِيد
Sagacious	أَذْكِيَاء	ذَكِي	Peculiar		
Submissive	أَذِلَاء	ذَلِيل	friend	أَخْصَاء	خَاص

Foolish	أَغْيِيَاءَ	غَيْبِي	Evil	أَرْدِيَاءَ	رِدِي
Rich	أَغْنِيَاءَ	غَنِي	Slave	أَرْقَاءَ	رَقِيق
Relative	أَقْرَبَاءَ	قَرِيب	Generous	أَسْخِيَاءَ	سَخِي
Powerful	أَقْوِيَاءَ	قَوِي	Stingy	أَشْحَاءَ	شَحِيح
Intelligent	أَلْبِيَاءَ	لَبِيب	Strong	أَشْدَّآءَ	شَدِيد
Prophet	أَنْبِيَاءَ	نَبِي	Miserable	أَشْقِيَاءَ	شَقِي
Relative by			Sound	أَصْحَاءَ	صَحِيح
marriage	أَنْسَبَاءَ	نَسِيب	Friend	أَصْدِقَاءَ	صَدِيق
Pure	أَنْقِيَاءَ	نَقِي	Sincere		
Friend	أَوْدَاءَ	وَدِيد	friend	أَصْفِيَاءَ	صَفِي
Testator,			Physician	أَطْبِيَاءَ	طَبِيب
executor	أَوْصِيَاءَ	وَصِي	Precious,		
Benefactor	أَوْلِيَاءَ	وَلِي	friend	أَعَزَّآءَ	عَزِيز
			Sick	أَعْلَاءَ	عَلِيل

21. فُعْلَانُ

Fore-arm,			Camels	بُعْرَانُ	بَعِير
cubit	ذُرْعَانُ	ذِرَاع	Town, country	بُلْدَانُ	بَلَد
Male	ذُكْرَانُ	ذَكَر	Wall, inclo-		
Shepherd	رُعْيَانُ	رَاع	sure	جُدْرَانُ	جِدَار
Loaf	رُغْفَانُ	رَغِيف	Lamb	حُمْلَانُ	حَمَل
Rider	رُكْبَانُ	رَاكِب	Gulf	خُلُجْبَانُ	خَلِيج
Monk	رُهْبَانُ	رَاهِب	Intimate		
Youth	شُبَّانُ	شَاب	friend	خُلَّانُ	خَلِيل

Clergyman	قُسَّان	قِسِيس	Boy	صَبِيَّان	صَبِيَّي
Stick	قُضْبَان	قَضِيْب	Cross	صُلْبَان	صَلِيْب
Flock	قُطْعَان	قَطِيْع	Back	ظَهْرَان	ظَهْر
Beehive	قُفْرَان	قَفِيْر	Blind	عُمِيَّان	أَعْمَى
Shirt	قُمَصَان	قَمِيْص	Pool	غُدْرَان	غَدِيْر
Hill	كُثْبَان	كُثِيْب	Horseman	فُرْسَان	فَارِس
			Weaned	فُضْلَان	فَصِيْل

22. فِعْلَان

Leg	سِيْقَان	سَاق	Brother		
Sparrow-			(friend)	إِخْوَان	أَخ
hawk	صِرْدَان	صِرْد	Crown	تِيْجَان	قَاج
Eagle	عِقْبَان	عُقَاب	Ox, bull	ئِيْرَان	ئَوْر
Wood, rod	عِيْدَان	عُوْد	Rat	جِرْدَان	جِرْد
Crow	غُرْبَان	غُرَاب	Neighbour	جِيْرَان	جَار
Gazelle	غِرْلَان	غَرَال	Whale	حِيْتَان	حُوْت
Lad	غُلْمَان	غُلَام	Wall	حِيْطَان	حَائِط
Mouse	فِيْرَان	فَأْر	Sheep	خِرْفَان	خَرُوْف
Youth	فِيْتِيَّان	فَتَى	Worm	دِيْدَان	دُوْد
Fire	نِيْرَان	نَار	Fly, flies	ذَبَّان	ذَبَاب

23. فَعَالَى

Pregnant	حَبَالَى	حُبْلَى	Widow,		
Sorrowful	حَزَانَى	حَزِيْن	widower	أَيَّامَى	أَيِّم

Virgin	عَدَارَى	عَدْرَاءُ	Law-suit	دَعَاوَى	دَعْوَى
Penitent	نَدَامَى	نَدَمَانٌ	Satisfied	شَبَاعَى	شَبَعَانٌ
Orphan	يَتَامَى	يَتِيمٌ	Pure	طَهَارَى	طَاهِرٌ

24. فَعَالِي

Unique, one by one	فُرَادَى	فَرْدٌ	Intoxi- cated	سُكَارَى	سُكْرَانٌ
Lazy	كُسَالَى	كَسْلَانٌ			

25. فَعَالِي

Chair	كُرَاسٍ	كُرْسِيٌّ	Land	أَرَاهِصٍ	أَرْضٌ
Night	لَيْالٍ	لَيْلٌ	People, family	أَهَالٍ	أَهْلٌ
Interior angle of the eye	مَاتِي	مَوْقٌ	Desert	صَحَارٍ	صَحْرَاءُ
			Bottle	قَنَانٍ	قَتِينَةٌ

26. فَعَالِي

Upper Room	عَلَالِي	عَلِيَّةٌ	Desert	بَرَارِي	بَرِّيَّةٌ
Chair	كُرَاسِي	كُرْسِيٌّ	Chameleon	حَرَابِي	حَرَبَاءُ
Fleet camels	مَهَارِي	مَهْرِيَّةٌ	Concubine	سَرَارِي	سَرِيَّةٌ
			Desert	صَحَارِي	صَحْرَاءُ

PLURAL OF PLURALS. **أَوْزَانُ مُنْتَهَى الْجُمُوعِ**

6 فَوَاعِلُ	1 فَعَالِلُ
7 فَوَاعِيلُ	2 فَعَالِيدُ
8 مَفَاعِلُ	3 أَفَاعِلُ
9 مَفَاعِيلُ	4 أَفَاعِيلُ
10 تَفَاعِيلُ	5 فَعَائِلُ

PLURAL OF PLURALS. **مُنْتَهَى الْجُمُوعِ**

1. فَعَالِلُ

Black		Hare	أَرَابِبُ	أَرَنْبُ
locust	جَنَادِبُ	Head veil	بَحَائِقُ	بُخْنُقُ
Stocking	جَوَارِبُ	Isthmus	بَرَازِخُ	بَرْزَخُ
Substance,		Bud	بَرَاعِمُ	بُرْعَمُ
jewel, pearl	جَوَاهِرُ	Veil	بَرَاعِيعُ	بُرْعِيعُ
Fish scales	حَرَاشِفُ	Dragoman,		
Colocynth	حَنَاطِلُ	interpreter	تَرَاجِمُ	تُرْجَمَانُ
Large Knife	خَنَاجِرُ	Fox	ثَعَالِبُ	ثُعْلَبُ
Silver coin	دَرَاهِمُ	Breast of		
Copy-book,		man	ثَنَادِي	ثُنْدُوَّةُ
register	دَفَاتِرُ	Wild calf	جَادِرُ	جُوْدُرُ
White silk.		Army	جَمَاعِلُ	جَمْحَفَلُ
cloth	دِمَاقِسُ	Brook, list	جَدَاوِلُ	جَدَوَلُ
Bracelet	دِمَالِجُ	Skull	جَمَاجِمُ	جُمُجَمَةٌ

Parasang,			Embellish-		
league	فَرَسِيح	فَرَسِيح	ment	زَخَارِف	زُخْرِف
Caravansary	فَنَادِق	فُنْدُق	Fins	زَعَانِف	زُعْفَنَة
Biretta	فَلَانِس	فَلَنْسُوَة	Tortoise	سَلَاخِف	سَلَخَفَاة
Consul	فَنَاصِل	فُنُضَل	Banner	سَنَاجِقِي	سَنَجَقِي
Bridge	فَنَاطِر	فَنَطْرَة	Party of men	شَرَاذِم	شَرْدَمَة
Hedgehog	قَنَافِد	قُنْفُد	Frog	ضَفَادِع	ضِفْدِع
Poultice,			Bitter thing,		
salve	مَرَاهِم	مَرَهَم	colocynth	عَلَاقِم	عَلَقَم
Tumult	مَعَامِع	مَعْمَعَة	Nightingale	عَنَادِل	عَنْدَلِيْب
Hoopoe	هَدَاهِد	هَدُهْد	Elements	عَنَاصِر	عُنْصُر
Evil			Spider	عَنَاكِب	عَنْكَبُوْت
thought	وَسَاوِس	وَسْوَاس	Darkness	غِيَاهَب	غَيْهَب

2. فَعَالِيْل

Circular			Jug	أَبَارِيْقِي	إِبْرِيْقِي
oven	قَنَافِيْر	تَنْوُر	Hackney	بَرَاذِيْن	بِرْدُوْن
The con-			Bribe	بَرَاطِيْل	بَرَطِيْل
stellation			Flea	بَرَاغِيْث	بُرْعُوْث
Dragon	تَنَانِيْن	تَنِيْن	Volcano	بَرَاكِيْن	بُرْكَان
Snake	ثُعَابِيْن	ثُعْبَان	Barrel	بَرَامِيْل	بَرْمِيْل
Root	جَرَاثِيْم	جُرْثُوْمَة	Proof	بَرَاهِيْن	بُرْهَان
Outer gar-			Garden	بَسَاتِيْن	بُسْتَان
ment	جَلَابِيْب	جَلْبَاب	Disciple	تَلَامِيْد	تَلِيْد

Bird	عَصَائِير	عُصْفُور	Crowd	جَمَاهِير	جُنُهور
Demon	عَفَارِيَت	عَفْرِيت	Elephant's		
Drug	عَقَائِير	عَقَّار	trunk	خَرَاتِيم	خُرُطُوم
Bunch of			Soft twig	خَرَاعِيب	خُرْعُوب
grapes	عَنَاقِيد	عُنُقُود	Anklet	خَلَاحِيد	خَلْدَخَال
Sieve	غَرَائِيل	غِرْبَال	Pig	خَنَازِير	خِنَزِير
Cartilage	غَضَارِيف	غُضْرُوف	Gold coin	دَنَائِير	دِينَار
Paradise	فَرَادِيس	فِرْدَوْس	Knife	سَكَائِين	سِكِّين
Paper	قَرَاتِيس	قِرْطَاس	Sultan	سَلَاتِين	سُلْطَان
Felt gloves	قَفَائِيز	قُقَاز	Window	شَبَابِيك	شُبَّاك
Lamp	قَنَادِيل	قِنْدِيل	Devil	شَيْطَانِين	شَيْطَان
Hundred-			Box	صَنَادِيقِي	صُنْدُوق
weight	قَنَاطِير	قَنْطَار	Well,		
Guitar.	قِيَانِير	قِيَنَار	cistern	صَهَارِيح	صِهْرِيح
Pamphlet	كِرَارِيس	كُرَاسَة	Turkish		
Hole, fis-			cap	طَرَابِيش	طَرَبُوش
sure	فَخَّارِيب	فُخْرُوب	Peacock	طَوَاوِيس	طَاوُوس

3. أَفَاعِل

Enigma	أَحَاج	أُحْجِيَّة	Thumb	أَبَاهِم	إِبْهَام
Middle of			Finger	أَصَابِع	إِصْبِع
the sole	أَحَامِص	أُحْمَاص	Finger tip	أَنَامِل	أُنْمَلَة
Poor widow	أَرَامِل	أَرْمَلَة	Stranger	أَبَاعِد	أَبْعَد
Name	(أَسَامِي) أَسَام	إِسْم	Foreigner	أَجَانِب	أَجْنَبِي

Scorpion	أَفَاعٍ	أَفْعَى	Bracelet	أَسَاوِر	سَوَارٍ
Relative	أَقْرَابٍ	أَقْرَبٍ	Smallest	أَصَاغِر	أَصْفَرٍ
Greatest	أَكْبَرٍ	أَكْبَرٍ	Nails	أَطَاوِر	أَطْفُرٍ
Most generous	أَكْرَمٍ	أَكْرَمٍ	Foreigner	أَعَاجِم	أَعْتَجِم
Goat	أَمَاعِزٍ	أُمْعُوزَةٍ	Song	أَغَانٍ	أُغْنِيَةٍ

4. أَفَاعِيلُ

Path,			Palace, arched		
method	أَسَالِيبُ	أُسْلُوبٌ	hall	أَرَادِينُ	إِيْوَانُ
Nails	أَطَاوِيرُ	أَطَاوِرُ	Vanity	أَبَاطِيلُ	أَبَاطِلُ
Song	أَغَانِي	أُغْنِيَةٌ	Enigma	أَحَاجِي	أُحْكِيَّةٌ
District	أَقَالِيمُ	إِقْلِيمٌ	Story	أَحَادِيثُ	أُحْدُوثَةٌ
Saying	أَقْوَالٌ	أَقْوَالٌ	See-saw	أَرَاجِيمُ	أُرْجُوحَةٌ
Falsehood	أَكَاذِيبُ	أُكْدُوبَةٌ	Poem	أَرَاجِيزُ	أُرْجُوزَةٌ
Crown	أَكَالِيلُ	إِكْلِيلٌ	Week	أَسَابِيعُ	أُسْبُوعٌ
Poem, decla-			Handwri-		
mation	أَنَاهِيدُ	أُنْشُودَةٌ	ting	أَسَاطِيرُ	أُسْطُورَةٌ

5. فَعَائِلُ

Cards	بَطَائِقُ	بِطَاقَةٌ	Throne	أَرَائِكُ	أَرِيكَةٌ
Lining of			Deer	أَيَائِدُ	إِيْدٌ
clothes	بَطَائِنُ	بِطَانَةٌ	Creature	بَرَايَا (بَرَائِي)	بَرِيَّةٌ
Amulet	فَتَائِمُ	فَتِيْمَةٌ	Good news,		
News-paper	جَرَائِدُ	جَرِيْدَةٌ	Gospel	بَشَائِرُ	بِشَارَةٌ

Curtain	سَتَائِر	سِتَارَةٌ	Crime	جَرَائِر	جَرِيْرَةٌ
Cloud	سَحَابٍ	سَحَابَةٌ	Crime	جَرَائِم	جَرِيْمَةٌ
Secret, heart	سَرَائِر	سَرِيْرَةٌ	Small		
Body of troops			garden	جَنَّائِن	جُنَيْْنَةٌ
	سَرَائِيَا (سَرَائِي)	سَرِيْرَةٌ	Trap, net	حَبَائِل	حِبَالَةٌ
Insult	شَتَائِم	شَتِيْمَةٌ	Fruit		
Nature	طَبَائِع	طَبِيْعَةٌ	garden	حَدَائِق	حَدِيْقَةٌ
Miracle	عَجَائِب	عَجِيْبَةٌ	Sheepfold	حَطَائِر	حَظِيْرَةٌ
Old Woman	عَجَائِر	عَجُوْر	Ditch	حَفَائِر	حَفِيْرَةٌ
Resolution	عَزَائِم	عَزِيْمَةٌ	Provision-		
Gift	عَطَائِيَا (عَطَائِي)	عَطِيَّة	bag	حَقَائِب	حَقِيْبَةٌ
Important			Reality	حَقَائِق	حَقِيْقَةٌ
affair	عَطَائِم	عَطِيْمَةٌ	Treasury	خَزَائِن	خِزَانَةٌ
Turban	عَمَائِم	عِمَامَةٌ	Loss	خَسَائِر	خِسَارَةٌ
Wonderful			Sin	خَطَائِيَا (خَطَائِي)	خَطِيْئَةٌ
event	غَرَائِب	غَرِيْبَةٌ	Bee-		
Instinct	غَرَائِز	غَرِيْزَةٌ	hive	خَلَائِيَا (خَلَائِي)	خَلِيْئَةٌ
Booty	غَنَائِم	غَنِيْمَةٌ	Minute	دَقَائِق	دَقِيْقَةٌ
Prey	فَرَائِص	فَرِيْصَةٌ	Victim	دَبَائِم	دَبِيْحَةٌ
Muscle	فَرَائِص	فَرِيْصَةٌ	Savings	دَحَائِر	دَحِيْرَةٌ
Precept	فَرَائِص	فَرِيْصَةٌ	Damage	رَزَائِيَا (رَزَائِي)	رَزِيْئَةٌ
Virtue,			Sub-		
merit	فَضَائِل	فَضِيْلَةٌ	jects	رَعَائِيَا (رَعَائِي)	رَعِيْئَةٌ

Defect, vice	نَقَائِصُ	نَقِيصَةٌ	Memory	قَرَائِمُ	قَرِيحَةٌ
Present			Necklace	قَلَانِدٌ	قَلَادَةٌ
	هَدَايَا (هَدَائِي)	هَدِيَّةٌ	Squadron	كَتَائِبٌ	كَتِيبَةٌ
Deposit	وَدَائِعٌ	وَدِيْعَةٌ	Church	كَنَائِسٌ	كَنِيسَةٌ
Pillow	وَسَائِدٌ	وِسَادَةٌ	Quiver	كَنَائِنٌ	كِنَانَةٌ
Means	وَسَائِطٌ	وَاسِطَةٌ	Nicety of		
Means	وَسَائِلٌ	وَسِيْلَةٌ	language	لَطَائِفٌ	لَطِيفَةٌ
Commandment			Roll	لَفَائِفٌ	لَفَانَةٌ
	وَصَايَا (وَصَائِي)	وَصِيَّةٌ	Death (مَنَائِي)	مَنَائِيًا	مَنِيَّةٌ
Event, fight	وَقَائِعٌ	وَقِيْعَةٌ	Result	نَتَائِجٌ	نَتِيجَةٌ
			Advice	نَصَائِحٌ	نَصِيحَةٌ

6. فَوَاعِلُ

Maid	جَوَارٍ	جَارِيَةٌ	Vessel	أَوَانٍ	أَنِيبَةٌ
Mosque	جَوَامِعُ	جَامِعٌ	Hastiness	بَوَادِرُ	بَادِرَةٌ
Side	جَوَانِبُ	جَانِبٌ	Man-of-war	بَوَارِجُ	بَارِجَةٌ
Prize	جَوَائِزُ	جَائِزَةٌ	Jar	بَوَاطٍ	بَاطِيَةٌ
Eye-brow	حَوَاجِبُ	حَاجِبٌ	Cause	بَوَاعِثُ	بَاعِثٌ
Accident	حَوَادِثُ	حَادِثَةٌ	Spice	تَوَابِلُ	تَابِلٌ
Senses	حَوَاسٍ	حَاسَةٌ	Fixed (star)	ثَوَابِتُ	ثَابِتٌ
Marginal			Penetrating		
notes	حَوَاشٍ	حَاشِيَةٌ	(mind)	ثَوَاقِبُ	ثَاقِبٌ
Hoof	حَوَافِرُ	حَافِرٌ	Second	ثَوَانٍ	ثَانِيَةٌ
Want	حَوَائِجُ	حَاجَةٌ	Bird of prey	جَوَارِحُ	جَارِحَةٌ

Storm	عَوَاصِف	عَاصِفَةٌ	Ring	خَوَاتِم	خَاتَم
Capital			Property	خَوَاص	خَاصَّة
(town)	عَوَاصِم	عَاصِمَةٌ	Beast	دَوَاب	دَابَّة
Kind feeling	عَوَاطِف	عَاطِفَةٌ	Misfortune	دَوَاه	دَاهِيَةٌ
Result	عَوَاتِب	عَاقِبَةٌ	Circle	دَوَائِر	دَائِرَةٌ
World	عَوَالِم	عَالَم	Lock of hair	دَوَائِب	دُرَابَةٌ
Grammatical			Hill	رَوَاب	رَابِيَةٌ
regent	عَوَامِل	عَامِل	Swift-run-		
Common			ning	سَوَائِح	سَابِغَةٌ
people	عَوَام	عَامَّة	Precedence	سَوَابِق	سَابِقَةٌ
Habit,			Streamlet	سَوَاقِي	سَاقِيَةٌ
custom	عَوَائِد	عَادَةٌ	Moustaches	شَوَارِب	شَارِب
Shoulder	عَوَاتِق	عَاتِق	Street	شَوَارِع	شَارِع
Secret	عَوَامِص	عَامِصَةٌ	Sea-shore	شَوَاطِئ	شَاطِئ
Fruit	فَوَاكِه	فَاكِهَةٌ	Proof	شَوَاهِد	شَاهِد
Profit	فَوَائِد	فَائِدَةٌ	Thunder-		
Front-part,			bolt	صَوَاعِق	صَاعِقَةٌ
foremost			Neighing	صَوَاهِد	صَاهِد
feathers	قَوَادِم	قَادِمَةٌ	Outskirt	صَوَاح	صَاحِيَةٌ
Boat	قَوَارِب	قَارِب	Seal, stamp	طَوَائِع	طَابِع
Rule, foun-			Divorced	طَوَالِق	طَالِق
ation	قَوَاعِد	قَاعِدَةٌ	Portion, rite	طَوَائِف	طَائِفَةٌ
Caravan	قَوَائِل	قَائِلَةٌ	Obstacle	عَوَارِض	عَارِضَةٌ

Distinguish-			Rhyme	قَوَافٍ	قَافِيَةٌ
ed	نَوَابِغٍ	نَابِغَةٌ	Mould	قَوَالِبٍ	قَالِبٌ
Region	نَوَاحٍ	نَاحِيَةٌ	Glittering	لَوَامِعٍ	لَامِعٌ
Curiosity	نَوَادِرٍ	نَادِرَةٌ	Cattle	مَوَاشٍ	مَاشِيَةٌ
Fore-lock	نَوَاصٍ	نَاصِيَةٌ	Table, food	مَوَائِدٍ	مَائِدَةٌ
Loophole	نَوَافِدٍ	نَافِذَةٌ	Harbour	مَوَانٍ	مِينَا
Misfortune	نَوَائِبٍ	نَائِبَةٌ			

7. فَوَاعِيلُ

Mill	طَوَاحِينٍ	طَاحُونٌ	Strait	بَوَاعِيزٍ	بُوغَازٍ
Lantern	فَوَائِيسٍ	فَانُوسٍ	Drain	بَوَالِيَعٍ	بَالُوَعَةٌ
Bottle	قَوَارِيرٍ	قَارُورَةٌ	Spy	جَوَاسِيسٍ	جَاسُوسٌ
Dictionary,			Sack	جَوَالِيِقٍ	جُوالِقٌ
ocean	قَوَامِيسٍ	قَامُوسٌ	Buffalo	جَوَامِيسٍ	جَامُوسٌ
Rule	قَوَانِينٍ	قَانُونٌ	Wheel	دَوَالِيِبٍ	دَوَلَابٌ
Law	قَوَامِيسٍ	قَامُوسٌ	Court, col- lection of poetry	دَوَاوِينٍ	دِيَوَانٌ

8. مَفَاعِلُ

Veil	مَازِرٍ	مِثْرَزَةٌ	Funeral	مَآئِمٍ	مَآئِمٌ
Food	مَآكِلٍ	مَأْكَلٌ	Noteworthy		
Dwelling	مَآوٍ	مَأْوَى	fact	مَآئِرٍ	مَآثِرَةٌ
Discussion	مَبَاحِثٍ	مَبْكَثٌ	Aim, desire	مَآرِبٍ	مَآرَبٌ

Anchor	مَرَايِس	مِرْسَاة	Censer	مَبَاخِر	مِبْدَخَرَة
Pastorage	مَرَايِع	مَرْعَى	Origin, prin-		
Bed	مَرَايِد	مَرْقَد	ciple	مَبَادِي	مَبْدَأ
Mosque	مَسَاجِد	مَسْجِد	File	مَبَارِد	مِبْرَد
Paper-ruler	مَسَاطِر	مِسْطَرَة	Beneficence	مَبَار	مِبْرَة
Dwelling	مَسَايِن	مَسْكَن	Water-course	مَبَجَار	مَبْجَرَى
Evil deed	مَسَاوِي	مَسَاءَة	Council	مَتَجَامِع	مَتَجَمَع
Difficulty	مَشَاق	مَشَقَّة	Ink-pot	مَتَخَابِر	مِخْبَرَة
Bed	مَضَاجِع	مَضْجَع	Orbit of		
Damage	مَضَار	مَضْرَة	the eye	مَتَخَايِر	مَتَخِجِر
Kitchen	مَطَابِخ	مَطْبَخ	Meeting		
Printing-			place	مَتَخَايِل	مَتَخِفِل
press	مَطَابِخ	مَطْبَعَة	Store	مَتَخَايِن	مَتَخْوِن
Mine	مَعَادِن	مَعْدِن	Claw	مَتَخَالِب	مِخْلَب
Exhibition	مَعَارِض	مَعْرِض	School	مَدَارِس	مَدْرَسَة
Battle	مَعَارِي	مَعْرَكَة	Burying-		
Manger	مَعَالِف	مَعْلِف	place	مَدَاوِن	مَدْفِن
Manufacture	مَعَامِل	مَعْمَل	Rite, sect	مَذَاهِب	مَذْهَب
Meaning	مَعَانِي	مَعْنَى	Mirror	مَرَاة	مِرَاة
Resort	مَعَاهِد	مَعْهَد	High rank	مَرَاتِب	مَرْتَبَة
Defect	مَعَايِب	مَعَاب	Dirge, elegy	مَرَاث	مَرثَاة
Plantation	مَعَارِس	مَعْرِس	Mercy	مَرَاحِم	مَرْحَمَة
Spindle	مَعَارِل	مَعْرَل	Anchorage	مَرَايِس	مَرْسَى

Goad	مَنَاحِيسَ	مِنْعَسَ	Cave	مَعَارِيرَ	مَعَارَةَ
Sieve	مَنَاحِلَ	مِنْعَلَ	Desert	مَعَارِزَ	مَعَارَةَ
Lodging	مَنَازِلَ	مَنَزِلَ	Cemetery	مَقَابِرَ	مَقْبَرَةَ
View	مَنَاطِرَ	مَنْظَرَ	Design, pur-		
Virtue	مَنَاقِبَ	مَنْقَبَةَ	pose	مَقَاصِدَ	مَقْصِدَ
Shoulder	مَنَاقِبَ	مَنْكِبَ	Frying-pan	مَقَالٍ	مَقْلَى
Watering-			Elementary		
place	مَنَاهِلَ	مَنْهَلَ	school	مَكَاتِبَ	مَكْتَبَ
Windward	مَهَابَ	مَهَبَ	Library	مَكَاتِبَ	مَكْتَبَةَ
Refuge	مَهَارِبَ	مَهْرَبَ	Gain	مَكَايِمَ	مَكْسَبَ
Place of			Broom	مَكَائِسَ	مَكْنَسَةَ
peril	مَهَالِكَ	مَهْلِكَ	Stratagem	مَكَايِدَ	مَكِيدَةَ
Time of			Delight	مَلَذَّةَ	مَلْدَةَ
meeting	مَوَاسِمَ	مَوْسِمَ	Theatre	مَلَاعِبَ	مَلْعَبَ
Place	مَوَاضِعَ	مَوْضِعَ	Spoon	مَلَاعِقَ	مَلْعَقَةَ
Gift	مَوَاهِبَ	مَوْهَبَةَ	Nostril	مَنَاحِرَ	مَنْخَرَ

9. مَفَاعِيلَ

Famous	مَشَاهِيرَ	مَشْهُورَ	1½ Dirhem	مَثَاقِيلَ	مَثْقَالَ
Torch	مَصَابِيحَ	مِصْبَاحَ	Wounded	مَجَارِيحَ	مَجْرُوحَ
Folding			Mad	مَجَابِينَ	مَجْنُونَ
door	مَصَارِيحَ	مِصْرَاعَ	Psalm	مَزَامِيرَ	مَزْمُورَ
Key	مَفَاتِيحَ	مِفْتَاحَ	Destitute	مَسَاكِينَ	مِسْكِينَ
Upper room	مَقَاصِيرَ	مَقْصُورَةَ	Nail	مَسَامِيرَ	مِسْمَارَ

Bird's bill	مَنَاقِير	مِنْقَار	Key	مَقَالِيد	مِقْلَان
Spur	مَهَامِير	مِهْمَاز	Cursed	مَلَاعِين	مَلْعُون
Compact	مَوَائِيق	مِيثَاق	Nose	مَنَاحِير	مِنْحَار
House			Veil	مَنَادِيل	مِنْدِيل
utensil	مَوَاعِين	مَاعُون	Saw	مَنَاشِير	مِنْشَار
Subject	مَوَاضِع	مَوْضُوع	Letters		
Born, off-			patent	مَنَاشِير	مَنْشُور
spring	مَوَالِيد	مَوْلُود	Balloon	مَنَاطِيد	مِنْطَاد
			Bellows	مَنَافِيح	مِنْفَاح

10. تَفَاعِيلُ

Commentary	تَفَاسِير	تَفْسِير	History	تَوَارِيخ	تَارِيح
Tradition	تَقَالِيد	تَقْلِيد	Edition	تَأَلِيف	تَأْلِيف
Image,			Misfortune	تَبَارِيح	تَبْرِيح
statue	تَمَائِيد	تِمْنَال	Composition	تَرَائِيب	تَرَكِيب
Crocodile	تَمَاسِيح	تِمْسَاح	Canticle	تَسَابِيح	تَسْبِيحَة
			Amulet	تَعَارِيد	تَعْرِيدَة

A 3 IS ADDED TO SOME MEASURES :

Sagacious			Satan	أَبَالِسَة	إِبْلِيس
man	جَهَابِدَة	جَهَبَد	Bishop	أَسَاقِفَة	أُسُقْف
Disciple	تَلَامِيذَة	تَلْيِيد	Veterinary		
Broker	سَمَاسِرَة	سِمْسَار	surgeon	بِيْطَاطِرَة	بِيْطَار
Chemist	صِيَادِلَة	صَيْدِلِي	Patriarch	بَطَارِقَة	بِطْرِيي

Satrap	مَرَاذِبَةٌ	مَرزُوبَان	Money-		
Bishop	مَطَارِنَةٌ	مَطْرَان	changer	صَيَارِفَةٌ	صَيْرِفِي
Angel	مَلَائِكَةٌ	مَلَائِك	Caesar	قَيَاصِرَةٌ	قَيَصْر
			Cardinal	كَرْدِيْنَالَةٌ	كَرْدِيْنَال

TRILITERAL VERBS ARRANGED
ACCORDING TO THEIR MEDIAL RADICAL IN THE
PRETERITE AND AORIST, WITH THEIR NOUNS
OF ACTION IN COMMON USE.

1 فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

2 فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

3 فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

4 فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

5 فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

6 فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

To be fulfilled	تَمَامًا	تَمَّ	To take shelter	إِرَاءًا	أَرَى
„ wander	تَيَهَّأْنَا	تَاءَ	„ cut (a pen)	بَرَّيَا	بَرَى
„ form, mix			„ seek	بَغِيَا	بَغَى
with water	جَبَلًا	جَبَلَ	„ weep	بَكَاءَ	بَكَى
„ exert one-			„ pass the		
self	جَدًّا	جَدَّ	night	مَبِينًا	بَاتَ
„ draw	جَدَّبَا	جَدَّبَ	„ sell	بَيْعًا	بَاعَ
„ run	جَرَّيَا	جَرَى	„ be distant	بَيْنُونَةً	بَانَ

To bury	دَفَنًا	دَفَنَ	To sit	جُلُوسًا	جَلَسَ
„ eulogise	رَثَاءَ	رَثَى	„ gather fruit	جَنَيْتًا	جَنَى
„ return	رُجُوعًا	رَجَعَ	„ impose	حَتَمًا	حَتَمَ
„ relate	رَوَايَةً	رَوَى	„ omit	حَدَفًا	حَدَفَ
„ increase	زِيَادَةً	زَانَ	„ deprive	حَرَمَانًا	حَرَمَ
„ err	زَيْغَانًا	زَاغَ	„ pack up	حَرَمًا	حَرَمَ
„ take cap- tive	سَبِيًّا	سَبَى	„ dig	حَفْرًا	حَفَرَ
„ steal	سَرِقَةً	سَرَقَ	„ swear	حَلِفًا	حَلَفَ
„ circulate			„ shave	حِلَاقَةً	حَلَقَ
(blood)	سَرِيَانًا	سَرَى	„ carry	حَمَلًا	حَمَلَ
„ shed blood	سَفَكَ	سَفَكَ	„ protect	حِمَايَةً	حَمَى
„ give to drink	سَقِيًّا	سَقَى	„ surround	حَيْوُوتًا	حَاقَ
„ travel	سِيَاحَةً	سَاحَ	„ weave	حِيَاكَةً	حَاكَ
„ march	سَيْرًا	سَارَ	„ be in season	حَيْنُونَةً	حَانَ
„ flow	سَيْلَانًا	سَالَ	„ kneel	خُرُورًا	خَرَّ
„ revile	شَتْمًا	شَتَمَ	„ vanish be eclipsed	خَسْفًا	خَسَفَ
„ buy	شِرَاءً	شَرَى	„ subdue	خَفْضًا	خَفَّضَ
„ be trans- parent	شُفُوفًا	شَفَّ	„ mix	خَلْطًا	خَلَطَ
„ roast	شَيًّا	شَوَى	„ fail	خَيْبَةً	خَابَ
„ become grey	شَيْبًا	شَابَ	„ sew	خِيَاطَةً	خَاطَ
			„ know	دِرَايَةً	دَرَى

To rebel	عَصِيَانًا	عَصَى	To become		
» incline			old	شَيْخُوخَةً	شَاخَ
towards,			» besound,		
join to	عَطَفًا	عَطَفَ	right	صِحَّةً	صَحَّ
» tie	عَقْدًا	عَقَدَ	» dismiss,		
» persevere	عَكْفًا	عَكَفَ	spend	صَرَفًا	صَرَفَ
» feed cattle	عَلَفًا	عَلَفَ	» cry out,		
» be faulty	عَيْبًا	عَابَ	crow	صِيَاحًا	صَاحَ
» live	مَعِيشَةً	عَاشَ	» become	صَيْرُورَةً	صَارَ
» plant	غَرَسًا	غَرَسَ	» make a		
» spin	غَزَلًا	غَزَلَ	noise	صَجِيجًا	صَجَّ
» wash	غَسَلًا	غَسَلَ	» beat	صَرَبًا	صَرَبَ
» forgive	غُفْرَانًا	غَفَرَ	» be lost	صَيَاعًا	صَامَ
» conquer	غَلَبَةً	غَلَبَ	» narrow	صَيْقًا	صَاقَ
» boil	غَلِيَانًا	غَلَى	» leap	طَفُورًا	طَفَرَ
» be absent	غَيْبًا	غَابَ	» fold	طَيًّا	طَوَى
» seduce	فِتْنَةً	فَتَنَ	» be agree-		
» flee	فِرَارًا	فَرَّ	able	طِيْبًا	طَابَ
enact, sup-			» fly	طَيْرَانًا	طَارَ
pose	فَرَضًا	فَرَضَ	» happen	عَرَضًا	عَرَضَ
» bleed	فَصْدًا	فَصَدَ	» know	مَعْرِفَةً	عَرَفَ
» separate	فَصْلًا	فَصَلَ	» resolve	عَزْمًا	عَزَمَ
» overflow	فَيْضَانًا	فَاضَ	» prevent	عِصْمَةً	عَصَمَ

To incline	مَيْلَانَا	مَالَ	To grasp	قَبِضًا	قَبِصَ
» abandon	نَبَدًا	نَبَدَ	» throw,		
» throb	نَبْضًا	نَبِضَ	vomit	فَدْفَا	قَدَفَ
» take away	نَزَعًا	نَزَعَ	» join	قَرْنَا	قَرَنَ
» descend	نَزُولًا	نَزَلَ	» gnaw	قَرَمًا	قَرِصَ
» attribute	نِسْبَةً	نَسَبَ	» purpose	قَصْدًا	قَصَدَ
» winnow,			» decide, die,		
scatter	نَسَفًا	نَسَفَ	fulfil	قَضَاءً	قَضَى
» speak	نُطْقًا	نَطَقَ	» jump	قَفْرًا	قَفَرَ
» prohibit,			» fry	قَلِيًّا	قَلَى
attain	نَهْيًا	نَهَى	» measure	قِيَاسًا	قَاسَ
» intend	نِيَّةً	نَوَى	» lie	كَدِبًا	كَدَبَ
» shout	هَتَافًا	هَتَفَ	» gain	كَسْبًا	كَسَبَ
» put to			» break	كَسْرًا	كَسَرَ
flight	هَرِيمَةً	هَرَمَ	» uncover	كَشْفًا	كَشَفَ
» break,			» suffice	كَفَايَةً	كَفَى
bruise	هَشَمًا	هَشَمَ	» be weary	كَلًّا	كَلَّ
» digest	هَضْمًا	هَضَمَ	» slap	لَطْمًا	لَطَمَ
» perish	هَلَاكًا	هَلَكَ	» touch	لَمَسًا	لَمَسَ
» be agi-			» be fitting	لِيَاقَةً	لَانَ
tated (sea)	هَيَاجًا	هَاجَ	» » tender,		
» love pas-			kind	لَيْنًا	لَانَ
sionately	هَيَامًا	هَامَ	» possess	مُلْكًا	مَلَكَ

To arrive, join	صَلَّةٌ	وَصَلَ	To bury alive	وَأَدَا	وَأَدَّ
„ promise	عِدَّةٌ	وَعَدَ	„ leap	وَتَوَبَّأَ	وَتَبَّأَ
„ exhort	عِظَّةٌ	وَعَظَّ	„ trust	ثِقَّةٌ	وَتَقَّى
„ come	وَقُودًا	وَقَدَّ	„ be neces-		
„ fulfil a			sary	وَجُوبًا	وَجَبَّ
compact	وَقِيًّا	وَقَّى	„ find	وَجَدَانَا	وَجَدَّ
„ burn	وَقُودًا	وَقَدَّ	„ come	وَزُودًا	وَزَدَّ
„ stand	وَقُونًا	وَقَفَّ	„ weigh	وَزْنَا	وَزَنَّ
„ guard	وَقَايَةً	وَقَّى	„ load	وَسَقًا	وَسَقَّى
„ shed tears	وَكَفًّا	وَكَفَّ	„ brand	سِمَةً	وَسَمَّ
„ entrust	وَكَلًّا	وَكَلَّ	„ calum-		
„ beget	وَلَادَةً	وَلَدَّ	niate	وَشَايَةً	وَشَى
„ be weak	وَهِيًّا	وَهَى	„ describe	صِفَةً	وَصَفَّ

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

To spread out	بَسَطًا	بَسَطَ	To take	أَخَذًا	أَخَذَ
„ assault	بَطْشًا	بَطَشَ	„ eat	أَكَلًا	أَكَلَ
„ be vain	بُطْلًا	بَطَّلَ	„ command	أَمْرًا	أَمَرَ
„ attain	بُلُوغًا	بَلَغَ	„ direct one's		
„ wet	بَلًّا	بَدَّ	steps	أَمًّا	أَمَّ
„ recite, read	تِلَاوَةً	تَلَا	„ return	إِيَابًا	أَبَّ
„ repent	تَوْبَةً	تَابَ	„ publish	بَثًّا	بَثَّ
„ stand firm	ثُبُوتًا	ثَبَّتَ	„ give freely	بَدْلًا	بَدَّلَ
„ pierce	ثَقْبًا	ثَقَّبَ	„ appear	بُرُورًا	بَرَّرَ

To envy	حَسَدًا	حَسَدَ	To rise, (dust,		
„ assemble	حَشَرًا	حَشَرَ	war), be		
„ reap	حَصَدًا	حَصَدَ	roused	ثَوْرَانَا	ثَارَ
„ be present	حُضُورًا	حَضَرَ	„ set a frac-		
„ put, fall in			ture	جَبْرًا	جَبَرَ
price	حَطًّا	حَطَّ	„ drag	جَرًّا	جَرَّ
„ rub	حَكًّا	حَكَّ	„ shear	جَزًّا	جَزَّ
„ dream	حُلْمًا	حَلَمَ	„ touch, feel	جَسًّا	جَسَّ
„ be changed	حَوَلًا	حَالَ	„ polish,		
„ betray	حِدْلَانًا	حَدَلَ	emigrate	جَلَاءً	جَلَا
„ pierce, tra-			„ be liberal,		
verse	حَرْقًا	حَرَقَ	excellent	جُودًا	جَادَ
„ trace, write	حَطًّا	حَطَّ	„ oppress	جَوْرًا	جَارَ
„ step	حَطْوًا	حَطَا	„ pass, be		
„ create	خَلْقًا	خَلَقَ	lawful	جَوَازًا	جَازَ
„ tan	دَبْعًا	دَبَعَّ	„ hunger	جُوعًا	جَاعَ
„ enter	دُخُولًا	دَخَلَ	„ wander	جَوْلَانًا	جَالَ
„ study	دَرْسًا	دَرَسَ	„ urge	حَثًّا	حَثَّ
„ call	دُعَاءً	دَعَا	„ veil	حَبْجَبًا	حَبَجَبَ
„ knock, pound	دَقًّا	دَقَّ	„ make a		
„ guide	دَلَالَةً	دَلَّ	pilgrimage	حَبَجَجًا	حَجَّجَ
„ approach	دُنُورًا	دَنَا	„ hinder,		
„ revolve	دَوْرَانًا	دَارَ	sequester	حَبَجَزًا	حَبَجَزَ
„ dilute	دَوْفًا	دَافَ	„ happen	حُدُوثًا	حَدَثَ
„ continue	دَوَامًا	دَامَ	„ guard	حِرَاسَةً	حَرَسَ

To be quiet	سَكْرَتًا	سَكَتَ	To melt	ذَوَّبَانَا	ذَابَ
„ dwell	سَكَنِي	سَكَنَ	„ quake	رَجَفَانَا	رَجَفَ
„ boil	سَلَقَا	سَلَقَ	„ stone	رَجَمَا	رَجَمَ
„ behave,			„ hope	رَجَاءَ	رَجَا
go along	سَلُّوْنَا	سَلَّكَ	„ restore	رَدَّأَا	رَدَّ
„ enact,			„ disapprove	رَدَّلَا	رَدَّلَ
sharpen	سَنَا	سَنَّ	„ prescribe,		
„ grieve, be			sketch	رَسَّنَا	رَسَمَ
evil	سُوءَا	سَاءَ	„ sprinkle	رَشَّأَا	رَشَّ
„ be chief	سِيَادَةً	سَادَ	„ refuse	رَفَضَا	رَفَضَ
„ drive	سَرُّوْنَا	سَارَى	„ dance	رَقَصَا	رَقَصَ
„ revile	شَتَمَا	شَتَمَ	„ run	رَكَضَا	رَكَضَ
„ perceive	شُعُورًا	شَعَرَ	„ desire		
„ split	شَقَّأَا	شَقَى	strongly	مَرَامًا	رَامَ
„ doubt	شَكَّأَا	شَكَ	„ interdict	زَجَّرَا	زَجَرَ
„ complain	شِكَايَةً	شَكَأَا	„ pass away	زَوَلْنَا	زَالَ
„ smell	شَمَّأَا	شَمَّ	„ precede,		
„ pour	صَبَّأَا	صَبَّ	outstrip	سَبَقْنَا	سَبَقَ
„ dye, baptize	صَبَّغْنَا	صَبَّغَ	„ veil	سَتَّرَا	سَتَرَ
„ start	صَدُّورًا	صَدَّرَ	„ prostrate		
„ tell the			oneself	سَجَّدْنَا	سَجَدَ
truth	صِدْقًا	صَدَّقَ	„ please,		
„ polish	صَقَّلَا	صَقَّلَ	rejoice	سُرُّورًا	سَّرَّ
„ be silent	صَمَّتَا	صَمَّتَ	„ assail	سَطَّرُوْنَا	سَطَّأَا
„ fast	صِيَامًا	صَامَ	„ pour	سَكَّبَا	سَكَّبَ

To return	عَوَدًا	عَادَ	To preserve	صِيَانَةً	صَانَ
„ feed	عِيَالَةً	عَالَ	„ injure	فَصَّرًا	فَصَّرَ
„ float	عَوْمًا	عَامَ	„ dress a		
„ act trea-			wound	فَصَمَدًا	فَصَمَدَ
cherously	غَدَرًا	غَدَرَ	„ drive away	طَرَدًا	طَرَدَ
„ disappear,			„ knock, come		
set (sun)	غُرُوبًا	غَرَبَ	by night	طَرَقًا	طَرَقَ
„ deceive	غُرُورًا	غَرَّرَ	„ ask	طَلَبًا	طَلَبَ
„ be languid,			„ appear,		
lukewarm	فُتُورًا	فَتَّرَ	rise	طَلَعًا	طَلَعَ
„ spread	فَرَشًا	فَرَشَ	„ walk		
„ be empty	فَرَاغًا	فَرَّغَ	around	طَوَّفَانًا	طَافَ
„ „ corrupt	فَسَادًا	فَسَدَ	„ suppose,		
„ loose	فَكًّا	فَكَ	suspect	ظَنَّ	ظَنَّ
„ miss, elapse	فَوْتًا	فَاتَ	„ worship	عِبَادَةً	عَبَدَ
„ diffuse			„ cross	عَبَّرًا	عَبَّرَ
(perfume)	فَوَحَانًا	فَاحَ	„ be proud	عُتُوًّا	عَتَا
„ boil over	فَوْرَانًا	فَارَ	„ stumble	عُثُورًا	عَثَرَ
„ win	فَوْزًا	فَازَ	„ count	عَدًّا	عَدَّ
„ surpass	فَوْقًا	فَاقَ	„ run	عَدَوًا	عَدَا
„ kill	قَتْلًا	قَتَلَ	„ help	عَضَدًا	عَضَدَ
„ reside	قُطُوبًا	قَطَنَ	„ sneeze	عُطَّاسًا	عَطَّسَ
„ sit	قُعُودًا	قَعَدَ	„ pardon	عَفْوًا	عَفَا
„ lead	قِيَادَةً	قَادَ	„ inhabit,		
„ say	قَوْلًا	قَالَ	live long	عُمْرًا	عَمَّرَ

To grant	مَنَّا	مَنَّ	To rise	قِيَامًا	قَامَ
„ die	مَوْتًا	مَاتَ	„ write	كِتَابَةً	كَتَبَ
„ grow	نَبَاتًا	نَبَتَ	„ conceal	كَيْمَانًا	كَتَمَ
„ sift	نَخْلًا	نَخَلَ	„ toil	كَدًّا	كَدَّ
„ bewail, call	نَدْبًا	نَدَبَ	„ clothe,	كَسَوًا	كَسَا
„ spread, saw	نَشْرًا	نَشَرَ	„ stay, refrain		
„ assist, give			from	كَفًّا	كَفَّ
victory	نَصْرًا	نَصَرَ	„ lurk	كُمُونًا	كَمَنَ
„ look	نَظْرًا	نَظَرَ	„ be	كِيَانًا	كَانَ
„ blow	نَفْحًا	نَفَحَ	„ roll, wrap	لَفًّا	لَفَّ
„ penetrate	نُفُودًا	نَفَدَ	„ gather	لَمًّا	لَمَّ
„ bore	نَقَبًا	نَقَبَ	„ amuse	لَهْوًا	لَهَى
„ chisel	نَقْشًا	نَقَشَ	„ spit	مَتَجًّا	مَتَجَّ
„ decrease	نُقْصَانًا	نَقَصَ	„ efface	مَحْوًا	مَحَا
„ fill the			„ cleave the		
place of	نِيَابَةً	نَابَ	water(ship)	مَخْرًا	مَخَرَ
„ lament	نَوْحًا	نَاحَ	„ spread	مَدًّا	مَدَّ
„ abandon	هَجْرًا	هَجَرَ	„ pass	مَرًّا	مَرَّ
„ flee	هَرَبًا	هَرَبَ	„ mix	مَرْجًا	مَرَجَّ
„ rain fast	هَطْلًا	هَطَلَ	„ chew	مَضْغًا	مَضَغَ
„ affright	هَرُولًا	هَالَ	„ rain	مَطْرًا	مَطَرَ
„ be easy,			„ delay	مَطْلًا	مَطَّلَ
base	هَرُونًا	هَانَ	„ abhor	مَقْتًا	مَقَّتَ
			„ circumvent	مَكْرًا	مَكَرَ

فَعِلٌ يَفْعَلُ

To be hot	حُمُوا	حَمِيَ	To permit	إِذْنَا	أَذِنَ
„ „ enraged	حَنَقًا	حَنَقَ	„ be sleepless	أَرَقًا	أَرَقَ
„ live	حَيَاةً	حَيِيَ	„ approach	أَزَفًا	أَزَفَ
„ be ashamed	حَجَلًا	حَجَلَ	„ regret	أَسَفًا	أَسَفَ
„ lose	خُسْرَانًا	خَسِرَ	„ be ac-		
„ be afraid	خَشِيَةً	خَشِيَ	customed	أَلْفًا	أَلَفَ
„ snatch	خَطْفًا	خَطَفَ	„ be secure	أَمْنًا	أَمِنَ
„ fear	خَوْفًا	خَافَ	„ „ innocent	بِرَاءَةً	بَرِيَ
„ be amazed	دُهُولًا	دَهَلَ	„ depart	بَرَحًا	بَرَحَ
„ suck	رَضَاعَةً	رَضِعَ	„ be ugly	بَشَاعَةً	بَشِعَ
„ desire	رَغْبَةً	رَغِبَ	„ remain	بَقَاءً	بَقِيَ
„ ascend gra-			„ be worn out	بَلَاءً	بَلِيَ
dually	زُفْيًا	زَفِيَ	„ follow	تَبَاعًا	تَبِعَ
„ be safe	سَلَامًا	سَلِمَ	„ trade	تِجَارَةً	تَجَرَ
„ hear	سَمِعًا	سَمِعَ	„ be tired	تَعَبًا	تَعِبَ
„ keep awake			„ „ spoilt,		
at night	سَهْرًا	سَهَرَ	perish	تَلَفًا	تَلَفَ
„ be satisfied	شِبَعًا	شَبِعَ	„ get drunk	ثَمَلًا	ثَمِلَ
„ witness	شَهَادَةً	شَهِدَ	„ be grieved	حُزْنًا	حَزِنَ
„ ascend	صُعُودًا	صَعِدَ	„ keep, learn		
„ be annoyed	ضَجْرًا	ضَجِرَ	by heart	حِفْظًا	حَفِظَ
„ laugh	ضَحِكًا	ضَحِكَ	„ praise	حَمْدًا	حَمِدَ

To be restless,

anxious	تَلَقَّا	تَلَقَّ
„ despair	قُنُوطًا	قَبِطَ
„ be content		
with	قِنَاعَةً	قَبِعَ
„ be strong	قُوَّةً	قَوِيَ
„ become old	كِبَرًا	كَبِرَ
„ dislike	كِرَاهِيَةً	كَرِهَ
„ be lazy	كَسَلًا	كَسِلَ
„ be complete,		
perfect	كَمَالًا	كَمِلَ
„ abide	لَبْنًا	لَبِثَ
„ insist		
upon	لَبَجَاجَةً	لَجَجَ
„ lick	لَحْسًا	لَحَسَ
„ overtake	لَحَاقًا	لَحِقَ
„ be neces-		
sary	لُزُومًا	لَزِمَ
„ stick	لُصُوقًا	لَصِقَ
„ play	لَعِبًا	لَعِبَ
„ meet, find	لُقْيَانًا	لَقِيَ
„ gulp	لَهْمًا	لَهَمَ
„ be sick	مَرَضًا	مَرَضَ

To gain, con-

quer	ظَفَرًا	ظَفِرَ
„ be thirsty	ظَبْمًا	ظَبِمَ
„ wonder	عُجْبًا	عَجِبَ
„ lack	عُدْمًا	عَدِمَ
„ sweat	عَرَقًا	عَرَقَ
„ bite	عَضًّا	عَضَّ
„ perish	عَطْبًا	عَطِبَ
„ thirst	عَطْشًا	عَطِشَ
„ know	عِلْمًا	عَلِمَ
„ work	عَمَلًا	عَمِلَ
„ be drowned	غَرَقًا	غَرِقَ
„ pay a fine		
or tax	غَرَامَةً	غَرِمَ
„ cover	غِشَايَةً	غَشِيَ
„ be angry	غَضَبًا	غَضِبَ
„ slip, err	غَلَطًا	غَلِطَ
„ take booty	غُنْمًا	غَنِمَ
„ rejoice	فَرَحًا	فَرِحَ
„ finish, be		
empty	فَرَاغًا	فَرِغَ
„ pass away	فَنَاءً	فَنِيَ
„ understand	فَهْمًا	فَهِمَ

To desire, love	هَوَى	هَوِيَ	To touch	مَسَّ	مَسَّ
» reverence,			» be wearied		
fear	مَهَابَةً	هَابَ	of	مَلَأَ	مَلَّ
» sink into			» repent	نَدِمَا	نَدِمَ
mire	وَحَلًا	وَحِلَّ	» forget	نَسِيَانًا	نَسِيَ
» contain	سَعَةً	وَسِعَ	» stick in	نُشُوبًا	نَشِبَ
» tread	وَطًا	وَطَى	» be dry	نَشَفًا	نَشِفَ
» despair	يَأْسًا	يَمَسَّ	» obtain	نَيْلًا	نَالَ
» be dry	يُبْسًا	يَبَسَ	» sleep	نَوْمًا	نَامَ
» » awake	يَقِظَةً	يَقِظَ	» be decrepit	هَرَمًا	هَرَمَ
			» perish	هَلَاكًا	هَلِكَ

فَعْلٌ يَفْعَلُ

To be humble	خُشُوعًا	خَشَعَ	To search	بَحَثًا	بَحَثَ
» submit	خُضُوعًا	خَضَعَ	» begin	بَدَاءَةً	بَدَأَ
» strip, pull			» send, raise		
off	خَلَعًا	خَلَعَ	the dead	بَعَثًا	بَعَثَ
» refute, annul	دَحْضًا	دَحَضَ	» deny	جَحْوَدًا	جَحَدَ
» push, repel	دَفْعًا	دَفَعَ	» wound	جَرْحًا	جَرَحَ
» slaughter	دَبْحًا	دَبَحَ	» put begin	جَعَلًا	جَعَلَ
» store	دُخْرًا	دَخَرَ	» gather	جَمْعًا	جَمَعَ
» go	دَهَابًا	دَهَبَ	» speak		
» see	رُؤْيَةً	رَأَى	openly	جَهْرًا	جَهَرَ
» outweigh	رُجْحَانًا	رَجَمَ	» deceive	خِدَاعًا	خَدَعَ

To examine فَخَصَا	فَخَصَّ	To depart رَجِيلاً	رَحَدَ
„ strike fire,		„ leak,	
slander قَدَحًا	قَدَحَ	sweat رَشَعًا	رَشَعَ
„ read قِرَاءَةً	قَرَأَ	„ lift up رَفَعًا	رَفَعَ
„ knock قَرَعًا	قَرَعَ	„ kneel رُكُوعًا	رُكِعَ
„ cut قَطَعًا	قَطَعَ	„ creep رَحْفًا	رَحَفَ
„ subdue,		„ sow زَرَعًا	زَرَعَ
conquer قَهَرًا	قَهَرَ	„ swim سِبَاحَةً	سَبَحَ
„ check a		„ pasture سُرُوحًا	سَرَحَ
horse كَبَحًا	كَبَحَ	„ radiate,	
„ err gram-		spread سَطُوعًا	سَطَعَ
matically لَحَنًا	لَحَنَ	„ permit سَبَّاحًا	سَبَّحَ
„ burn لَدَعًا	لَدَعَ	„ mediate شِفَاعَةً	شَفَعَ
„ sting لَسَعًا	لَسَعَ	„ throw	
„ curse لَعَنًا	لَعَنَ	down صَرَعًا	صَرَعَ
„ glance لَبَحًا	لَبَحَ	„ pardon صَفَحًا	صَفَحَ
„ shine لَمَعَانًا	لَمَعَ	„ make صُنَعًا	صَنَعَ
„ praise مَدَحًا	مَدَحَ	„ melt صَهَرًا	صَهَرَ
„ anoint,		„ grind طَحَنًا	طَحَنَ
wipe مَسَحًا	مَسَحَ	„ cast طَرَحًا	طَرَحَ
„ disfigure مَسَحًا	مَسَحَ	„ pierce طَعَنًا	طَعَنَ
„ fill مَلَأَ	مَلَأَ	„ overflow طَفُوحًا	طَفَحَ
„ grant مَنَحًا	مَنَحَ	„ appear ظَهَرًا	ظَهَرَ
„ forbid مَنَعًا	مَنَعَ	„ open فَتَحًا	فَتَحَ

To pillage	نَهَبَا	نَهَبَ	To be distant	نَأَى	نَأَى
„ flow	نَهَرَا	نَهَرَ	„ succeed	نَجَّاحًا	نَجَّمَ
„ rise	نَهَضَا	نَهَضَ	„ hew	نَحَّاتَةً	نَحَّتْ
„ hurry, flow			„ slay	نَحَّرَا	نَحَّرَ
fast	هَرَعَا	هَرَعَ	„ grow up	نَشَأَةً	نَشَأَ
„ place	وَضَعَا	وَضَعَ	„ advise	نُصِّحَا	نَصَّحَ
„ lap	وَلَّغَا	وَلَّغَ	„ sprinkle	نَضَّحَا	نَضَّحَ
„ grant	هَبَّ	وَهَبَ	„ croak	نَعَيْقًا	نَعَّقَ
			„ marry	نَكَحَا	نَكَحَ

فَعْلٌ يَفْعَلُ

To be elegant	بَهَّجَةً	بَهَّجَ	To be well educated,		
„ „ heavy	ثَقَلَا	ثَقَلَ	refined	أَدَبًا	أَدَبَ
„ „ cowardly	جَبَّنَا	جَبَّنَ	„ be strong,		
„ „ cou-			brave	بَأْسًا	بَوَّسَ
rageous	جُرَّأَةً	جَرَّوْ	„ be avari-		
„ harden,			cious	بُخْلًا	بَخَّلَ
freeze	جَمُدَا	جَمَدَ	„ excel in		
„ be young,			knowledge	بِرَاعَةً	بَرَّعَ
fresh	حَدَّائَةً	حَدَّتْ	„ be simple	بَسَاطَةً	بَسَطَ
„ be resolute	حَرَامَةً	حَرَمَ	„ see	بَصْرًا	بَصَّرَ
„ „ of noble			„ be slow	بُطْأًا	بَطَّرَ
birth	حَسَبًا	حَسَبَ	„ „ gallant	بَطَّالَةً	بَطَّلَ
„ be beau-			„ „ distant	بُعْدًا	بَعَّدَ
tiful	حُسْنًا	حَسَّنَ	„ „ stupid	بَلَادَةً	بَلَّدَ

To be small	صَغْرًا	صَغُرَ	To be impreg-		
„ „ hard	صَلَابَةً	صَلَبَ	nable	حَصَانَةً	حَصِنَ
„ suit, be			„ be forbear-		
good	صَلَابِيَةً	صَلِمَ	ing	حِلْمًا	حَلِمَ
„ be weak	ضَعْفًا	ضَعِفَ	„ be corrupt	خُبْنًا	خَبِنَ
„ „ pure,			„ dote	خِرَافَةً	خَرَفَ
chaste	طَهَارَةً	طَهَّرَ	„ be rough	خُسْرُونََةً	خَشِنَ
„ be just	عَدْلًا	عَدَلَ	„ „ gentle	دَمَائَةً	دَمَتَ
„ „ sweet	عُدْوَبَةً	عَدَبَ	„ fade	دُبُولًا	دَبَلَ
„ „ difficult	عُسْرًا	عَسَرَ	„ be wide	رَحْبًا	رَحَبَ
„ „ great	عَظَمَةً	عَظَمَ	„ „ sedate	رِصَانَةً	رِصِنَ
„ treat			„ „ moist,		
harshly	عَنْفًا	عَنْفَ	damp	رُطُوبَةً	رَعَلَبَ
„ be strange	عَرَابَةً	عَرَبَ	„ be ugly	سَمَاجَةً	سَمَجَ
„ „ thick,			„ „ agree-		
rough	عُلْظَةً	عَلِظَ	able, ge-		
„ be great	فَخَامَةً	فَخِمَ	nerous	سَمَاحَةً	سَمِحَ
„ „ skilful	فَرَاهَةً	فَرِهَ	„ be easy	سُهُولَةً	سَهَّلَ
„ „ wide	فَسَاحَةً	فَسِمَ	„ „ cou-		
„ „ elo-			rageous	شَجَاعَةً	شَجِعَ
quent	فَصَاحَةً	فَصِحَ	„ be noble	شَرَفًا	شَرَفَ
„ be excel-			„ „ quick		
lent	فَضْلًا	فَضَلَ	witted	شَهَامَةً	شَهَمَ
„ be ugly	قُبْحًا	قَبِحَ	„ be diffi-		
„ „ holy	قُدَاسَةً	قُدِسَ	cult	ضَعُوبَةً	ضَعِبَ

To be renowned	نَبَاهَةٌ	نَبَهَ	To be old,	قَدَمًا	قَدِمَ
„ „ of noble			prior	قَرَبًا	قَرِبَ
birth	نَجَابَةٌ	نَجَبَ	„ be near	قَصْرًا	قَصُرَ
„ be clean	نُظَافَةٌ	نَظَفَ	„ „ short	كُبْرًا	كَبُرَ
„ „ smooth	نُعُومَةٌ	نَعَمَ	„ „ tall	كَثْرَةً	كَثُرَ
„ „ brief	وَجَازَةٌ	وَجَزَ	„ „ plentiful	كِرْمًا	كَرِمَ
„ „ respect-			„ „ generous	كَمَالًا	كَمَلَ
ed	وَجَاهَةٌ	وَجِهَ	„ „ perfect		
„ be meek	وَدَاعَةٌ	وَدَعَ	„ arrive at	كُهُولَةً	كَهَلَ
„ „ pious	وَرَاعَةٌ	وَرَعَ	maturity	لُومًا	لُومَ
„ „ wide	وُسْعًا	وَسَعَ	„ be mean	لَطَافَةً	لَطَفَ
„ „ hand-			„ „ gracious	مَتَانَةً	مَتَنَ
some	وَسَامَةٌ	وَسَمَ	„ „ strong	مَحَالَةً	مَحَلَّ
„ be humble	ضَعْفَةٌ	وَضَعَّ	„ „ barren	مُرُوَّةً	مَرَّ
„ „ plentiful	وَفَارَةٌ	وَفَرَ	„ „ manly	مُلُوحَةً	مَلَحَ
„ become an			„ „ salty	مَلَاحَةً	مَلَحَ
orphan	يَتِيمًا	يَتَمَّ	„ „ pretty	مَنَاعَةً	مَنَعَ
„ be easy	يُسْرًا	يَسَرَ	„ „inaccessible		

فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

To swell	وَرَمًا	وَرَمَ	To count	حُسْبَانًا	حَسِبَ
„ come after	وَلَايَةً	وَلِيَ	„ live in com-		
„ despair	يَأْسًا	يَيْسَ	fort	نِعْمَةً	نَعِمَ
„ wither	يُبْسًا	يَيْسَ	„ trust	ثِقَةً	وَثِقَ
			„ inherit	وَرَاثَةً	وَرِثَ

THE END.

THE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, SANTA CRUZ

This book is due on the last **DATE** stamped below.
To renew by phone, call **459-2756**
Books not returned or renewed within 14 days
after due date are subject to billing.

OCT 27 1995 REC'D

NOV 08 1995 REC'D

FEB 15 '01

FEB 20 2001 REC'D

FEB 26 2001 REC'D

JUL 19 2002

JUL 18 2002 REC'D

Series 2373



3 2106 01219 7379



